A Textbook of Services Marketing

Sajeevan Rao Arigela
Dr. Somprabh Dubey
Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

A Textbook of Services Marketing

Sajeevan Rao Arigela
Dr. Somprabh Dubey
Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

A Textbook of Services Marketing

Sajeevan Rao Arigela
Dr. Somprabh Dubey
Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Dominant
Publishers & Distributors Pvt Ltd
New Delhi, INDIA

Knowledge is Our Business

A TEXTBOOK OF SERVICES MARKETING

By Sajeevan Rao Arigela, Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

This edition published by Dominant Publishers And Distributors (P) Ltd
4378/4-B, Murarilal Street, Ansari Road, Daryaganj,
New Delhi-110002.

ISBN: 978-93-80642-61-1

Edition: 2022 (Revised)

©Reserved.

This publication may not be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publishers.

Dominant
Publishers & Distributors Pvt Ltd

Registered Office: 4378/4-B, Murari Lal Street, Ansari Road,
Daryaganj, New Delhi - 110002.
Ph. +91-11-23281685, 41043100, Fax: +91-11-23270680

Production Office: "Dominant House", G - 316, Sector - 63, Noida,
National Capital Region - 201301.
Ph. 0120-4270027, 4273334

e-mail: dominantbooks@gmail.com
info@dominantbooks.com

w w w . d o m i n a n t b o o k s . c o m

CONTENTS

Chapter 1. An Overview of Marketing Importance..1
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 2. A Comprehensive Review of Porter's Value Chain..10
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 3. Classification of Marketing Orientation: A Review Study..19
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 4. Exploring the Secure Dominance of Growth Markets..27
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 5. Investigating the Positioning and Perception for Company..35
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 6. Consumer Behaviour: Captive Product Pricing..44
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 7. Exploring the Components of Integrated Marketing Communications..53
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 8. Significance of Marketing Strategic: An Overview..62
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 9. Exploring the Process of Developing Marketing Plan..71
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 10. Marketing Environment Analysis and MIS..79
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 11. Industry Attractiveness and Marketing Research..89
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 12. Fundamental Aspect of Successful Marketing: Connecting with Customers..98
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 13. Understanding the Importance of Customer Satisfaction..107
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 14. Fundamental Challenge Faced by Businesses: Dealing with Competition..116
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 15. Competitive Strategies for Market Challengers..124
—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 16. Significance of Brand Elements in Marketing Plan..132
— Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 17. Strategic Process: New Product Development 141

—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 18. Significance of Pricing Strategies in Driving Business Profitability 149

—Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar

Chapter 19. Exploring Various Types of Marketing Intermediaries 157

—Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Dr. Abhishek Kumar

Chapter 20. Understanding the Essence of Business Communication 166

— Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Dr. Abhishek Kumar

Chapter 21. Advertising Goals for Measured Advertising Results Model 174

—Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Dr. Abhishek Kumar

Chapter 22. Essential Components of Public Relation and Publicity 183

— Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Dr. Abhishek Kumar

Chapter 23. New Consumer and Company Capabilities: A Review Study 192

—Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Dr. Abhishek Kumar

Chapter 24. An Overview of Strategic Marketing Planning 201

— Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Dr. Abhishek Kumar

Chapter 25. Analysis of the Markets Served for Business Strategy 209

—Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Dr. Abhishek Kumar

CHAPTER 1
AN OVERVIEW OF MARKETING IMPORTANCE

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Marketing is a fundamental business strategy aimed at promoting products, services, or ideas to target audiences in order to drive sales, create brand awareness, and foster customer loyalty. This abstract provides an overview of marketing as a dynamic and ever-evolving discipline. It explores various marketing concepts, strategies, and tools employed by businesses to achieve their objectives. The abstract also highlights the importance of consumer behavior analysis, market research, and digital marketing in the contemporary business landscape. Furthermore, it delves into the ethical implications of marketing practices, emphasizing the need for responsible and transparent marketing approaches. Overall, this abstract shed light on the pivotal role marketing plays in shaping the success and growth of organizations in today's competitive global marketplace.

KEYWORDS:

Advertising, Brand, Competition, Customer, Digital Marketing, Email Marketing, Market Research.

INTRODUCTION

Contrary to popular belief, it is much more than the pompous phrase for advertising and promotion. The majority of individuals are exposed to marketing primarily via advertising and promotion, so in many respects this notion is realistic. However, the word "marketing" really encompasses a wide range of activities, including everything from corporate culture and positioning to market research, new business and product development, advertising and promotion, public relations, and maybe even all of the operations related to sales and customer service. It is a methodical effort to satiate consumer demand by creating products and services that people will purchase. The cutting edge of human nature and the adaptability of technology meet here. Companies that focus on marketing enlighten us about demands we weren't aware we had and provide us with solutions we didn't know were possible[1], [2].

Marketing's three tiers

Almost every marketing textbook has a unique meaning for the word "marketing." The American Marketing Association uses the following definition: "The process of planning and executing the conception, pricing, promotion, and distribution of ideas, goods, and services to create exchanges that satisfy individual and organizational objectives[3], [4].The better definitions are those that place a strong emphasis on customer orientation and meeting customer needs. According to Philip Kotler, "Marketing is the social process by which individuals and groups obtain what they need and want through creating and exchanging products and value with others.According to the Chartered Institute of Marketing, marketing is the management process that recognizes, foresees, and profitably addresses consumer needs. In a January 1991 issue of the Harvard Business Review, Regis McKenna wrote an essay titled "Marketing Is Everything." According to the author of the essay, "Marketing today is not a function; it is a way of doing business." In fact, we now refer to marketing as a corporate philosophy, which is the highest degree of marketing. Marketing is thus essential.

Essentially, it's the procedure a business uses to select what, when, and how it will market its products. The second level of marketing is marketing as strategy, which leads us to this point. This comprises designing a marketing strategy to grow the firm and comprehending the environment in which it operates, including consumers, other businesses, laws, and regulations. The second layer, known as positioning, deals with market segmentation, choosing which clients to target, and choosing the messaging you want your targets to associate with you. STP is not alone at this level, however; it is strongly related to the idea of branding, which is more than simply names and logos. Branding is a connection between the characteristics consumers identify with a brand and how the brand owner wants the consumer to perceive the brand: the brand identity. Today, brands are all about image, or more accurately, its perception. A brand's identity develops through time, or as a result of poorly handled marketing or sociological changes in markets, obtaining new qualities in the eyes of the customer[5], [6].

Not all of these will be advantageous from the brand owner's point of view, so they will try to close the gap between the brand image and the brand identity by trying to change the customers' perceptions of the brand (brand image), so that it is more in line with the desired brand identity; occasionally, this will require a brand re-launch. The name that is chosen is a crucial component of branding. Effective brand names link the brand's personality as perceived by the target audience with the actual product or service; hence, they should be based on accurate segmentation and targeting and on-target with the brand demographic. Thus, STP plus branding, which is discussed in level four, may be used to summarize level two of marketing[7], [8].The third level of marketing is concerned with the day-to-day operational management of marketing; it includes the management of the Marketing Mix and the internal business procedures that aid in the production and customer delivery of the company's goods and services. Needs, utility, exchange relationships, and demand[9], [10].

Importance of Marketing

The core tenet of marketing is that businesses thrive and survive by satisfying the needs and desires of their clients. The Marketing Concept, which we saw earlier is at its highest level a philosophy and business attitude about aligning a company's capabilities with consumers' demands, is the name given to this crucial viewpoint. It encompasses both strategic and tactical marketing inside the organizational structure, and it occurs in what is referred to as the marketing environment. A company that is really focused on marketing has internal structures that support the Marketing Concept as a way of thinking and doing business. transforming a difficulty into a learning curve. A top performer's day at work is like any other.Accenture Your hardest exam yet is booting camp.

Choose Accenture if you want a profession where you can make a difference every day thanks to the range of chances and challenges. a setting where you may reach your full potential and advance your career while working with outstanding coworkers. The only location where you may benefit from our unmatched expertise while assisting our customers throughout the world in achieving high performance. If this describes your ideal workday, Accenture is the place for you. Boot Camp is where it all begins. Your intellect will be stimulated and your professional possibilities will be improved by these 48 hours. You will socialize with other students, eminent Accenture Consultants, and distinguished visitors. Two exciting days jam-packed with activities and intellectual challenges to help you learn what it actually takes to be a great performer in business. We can't tell you everything about Boot

Camp, but be prepared for an intensive, fast-paced learning environment. It could be the hardest exam you've ever taken, but that's precisely what will make it the largest chance for you.

DISCUSSION

Marketing initiatives are not carried out by businesses alone. They experience risks from rivals as well as changes to the macroenvironment's political, economic, social, and technical facets. When a company strives to match its skills with the requirements and desires of its target clients, all of these factors must be taken into consideration. An organization that embraces the marketing idea recognizes that its success depends on meeting the demands of prospective consumers as the foundation of its operations. We should thus specify what we mean by wants and needs rather than merely using such phrases broadly in order to better understand clients, which is something that students aspiring to become better marketers must accomplish. A five level pyramid is used to represent Maslow's hierarchy of requirements. The lowest level is linked to physiological requirements, while the highest level is linked to desires for self-actualization, particularly those related to identity and purpose. Only once the lowest demands in the pyramid are satisfied do the higher wants in this hierarchy become apparent. When someone advances to the next level, their demands at the previous level are no longer given priority. The person will temporarily re-prioritize those wants by concentrating attention on the unmet demands if a lower level of needs is no longer being addressed, but they won't permanently relapse to that level.

Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs

Basic human needs include those for food, shelter, love, respect, and self-improvement. In fact, many of you should see a connection between this and Abraham Maslow's work on the hierarchy of needs, which uses needs-based motivation to explain human behavior. However, human society and marketers have developed a wide variety of means to satiate these fundamental requirements. In fact, many of these demands are derived from human biology and the structure of social connections. All people are unique and have varied demands depending on their age, sex, social standing, employment, and other factors. Customers' demands are consequently quite diverse since each person's range of wants is likely to be different. As a result, consumer desires are considerably more detailed and go beyond the fundamental to encompass aspirational ideals as well as the fulfilment of needs. Consumer wants are formed by social and cultural factors, the media, and company marketing initiatives. Customer requirements are thus wide, while customer wishes are often extremely specific. Take this as an illustration: Consumers must eat when they are hungry. There will be a huge range in what they want to eat and the setting. Some people find that dining at McDonald's meets their urge to satisfy their hunger, while others would never consider going to a fast-food establishment of any kind. Some people are OK with a microwaved prepared dinner, while others will only eat food that has been freshly prepared with organic products. There are also others who won't be pleased until their meal is presented with a nice Chablis or Claret, is served with silver service by servers dressed in swanky attire, or must be ordered from menus in French.

Since there are so many different desires and requirements, it is necessary to carefully consider how and what might fulfill these demands in order for a range of "solutions" to be established in any market. This method will be covered in more detail in Section 1.3.2 when we look at Porter's Five Forces model. This introduces the idea of demand, another crucial idea. There is a market of consumers who want the product or service and have the means to pay for it. Demand is the desire for a certain good or service that is backed by the ability and willingness to pay for it. For instance, many buyers worldwide want Ferrari cars, but only a small percentage are able and ready to make the purchase. The idea of demand is fundamental to marketing and is the focus of much marketing research. Product managers and planners in many businesses spend their time attempting to predict patterns of demand and how they change as new goods and services enter the market and consumers' needs and preferences change. In marketing, a market is really defined as a collection of prospective consumers with a common need that may be met via an exchange relationship to the satisfaction of both the provider and the potential customers. Looking at this, you should be able to see how well the marketing notion is combined with more conventional ideas like trade, usefulness, needs, and desires.In order to evaluate a market's potential, a company's marketers thoroughly examine consumers' and companies' demands. People having the means to buy, the desire to buy, and the authority to make purchases make up a market.

Advertise a Target

a group of individuals who are targeted by an organization's marketing efforts in order to meet their special wants and preferences. There are many different types of customer demands and wishes, and no one company has the ability to provide them all. In order to generate professional demand, businesses must not only provide goods that customers desire but also make them accessible to enough people. Customers' requirements and the social standing that influences them are not inventions of businesses. People are not made hungry or thirsty by Burger King or KFC, Budweiser, or Coca-Cola.

It should be clear from what we've seen so far that marketing, which includes two or more people transferring something of value with each other, basically entails an exchange process as well. When dining out, you pay money for the food and service. For the use of the hotel room and services when we visit another city and stay there, we must exchange cash or, more often, credit obtained through the use of a credit card. In these instances, the meal and the hotel's and restaurant's services are goods that were given to us in return for cash or credit. Therefore, understanding the trade process is necessary for understanding marketing;

There must be two persons involved, each having unmet requirements or desires. Of course, the vendor might profit from this desire. Everybody must have something to contribute. In voluntary "exchange" partnerships used in marketing, both parties must be willing. Therefore, a customer who spends £1.00 on a soft drink from a vending machine must appreciate the drink, which is offered at that time and location, more than the money. Instead, the merchant must place a higher value on the money. There must be communication between the parties. This might be done through an infomercial, a retail display, or an eBay listing. When two or more people trade something of value for a benefit, an exchange process is taking place.

Marketing helps the seller's company succeed by satisfying the buyer's desire for a certain product. A society's general level of life may continue to rise thanks to marketing. As a result, it is clear that marketing has a beneficial impact on an economy and aids in meeting demands by connecting suppliers and customers, which streamlines the exchange transaction. This is true for both commercial enterprises and charitable organizations. A gift is given to a charity, and in return the donor receives the satisfaction of helping others. Marketing is a facilitator of the exchange by producing utility, therefore marketing is effective at all three levels because it may improve the value of this self-gratification in the perspective of the donor by, for example, making them feel like they are making more of a difference.

Economics has a notion called utility that is connected to marketing. The relative enjoyment from, or desirability of, consuming different commodities and services is measured by utility. Given this metric, it is possible to discuss changing utility in meaningful terms and to interpret economic behavior in terms of efforts to improve utility. The cornerstone of the exchange process is made up of the product and/or service and its promotion, which together provide a utility.

In marketing, utility is defined as a product or service's capacity to meet needs. According to Richard Buskirk, marketing is an activity that generates value from location, time, and ownership;

1. Shape utility, or turning raw resources into completed goods, is the usefulness of a product as a consequence of its shape. Form utility is produced through product planning and development operations.
2. Making a product accessible when customers wish to buy it is known as time utility. After manufacturing, items are kept in storage by the producer, wholesalers, merchants, etc. until a demand is generated for the product, at which point they are made accessible to the client when required or desired.
3. Position utility is the act of placing a product at a position that is convenient for clients. Place utility is also the movement of products via various routes of distribution from producer to consumer, from the place of plenty to the place or places where they are required.
4. The orderly transfer of legal title to the product or services from the seller to the buyer during a sales transaction is referred to as ownership utility.

Until someone else needs them, goods may be lying in a secure condition with the producer, the maker, or their representatives. The act of providing a thing or service when, where, and by procedures that make possession simple, such as price/distribution/purchasing conditions, develops the form utility of the object or service, while time, location, and ownership utility are generated by the marketing function. Remember the statement made above about how companies attempt to generate demand? The four methods listed are ways of raising the usefulness of the product or service. Therefore, if the utility is higher, there will be more demand for it, which might lead to a more profitable company. Therefore, marketing entails getting products to makers in the form that is needed at the time that is needed, to the location where they will be utilized, and to the people who will use them for different reasons. The operations that produce utility and assist the exchange process are referred to as marketing functions and comprise.

1. Purchasing or renting

2. Purchasing or renting

3. Transporting

4. Storing

5. Grading or standardizing

6. Financing

7. Taking risks

8. Collecting information

It is important to note that the idea of utility will be discussed later in relation to the Marketing Mix, the value chain, and the marketing of commodities vs services.

Theoretical underpinnings of competitiveness

It's crucial to make a distinction between strategy models and strategy frameworks in this context. To better understand industrial organizations, economic theory has developed strategy models. Models, however, are challenging to adapt to particular business circumstances, thus qualitative frameworks have been constructed with the express purpose of better guiding business practice.

Competitive Advantages in Generic Strategy

Deciding where you want your organization to go and how to get there are the two main components of strategy. In fact, creating a strategy is like planning a voyage; once you know where you want to go and where to start, you can decide how to get there based on your available resources and timeframes. The purpose of a business's strategic plan is to outline where the company is going, where it is now, and what resources it will usewhen, how, and with what anticipated outcomesto get there. Understanding competitive advantage and the methods by which it is developed and conveyed to the target audience is the foundation for a more thorough description. The majority of business strategies have as their goals the ability of a company to produce value for its customers that is greater than the expense of doing so. Value is determined by how much customers are willing to pay, and greater value results from giving lower pricing than rivals for comparable benefits or from delivering special advantages that more than make up for a higher price. Competitive advantage may be divided into two categories: cost leadership and distinctiveness.

Porter's Generic Strategies

The competitive advantage and competitive scope a corporation chooses determines its relative position within a certain industry. Competitive breadth makes a distinction between businesses that target large industry sectors and businesses that concentrate on a specific area. Generic plans are helpful because they define strategic positions in the most fundamental and inclusive manner. According to Porter, a corporation must decide on the nature and extent of its competitive edge in order to achieve competitive advantage. Each generic approach has a unique set of dangers, but trying to be "all things to all people" can only lead to mediocrity and becoming "stuck in the middle".

Treacy and Wiersema's alternative paradigm assumes that businesses would generally choose to focus on one of the three "value disciplines" of product leadership, operational excellence, or customer intimacy. This framework is more in line with more sophisticated marketing ideas created around a service-dominant marketing strategy. Strategy frameworks may be thought of as having two parts: internal analysis and external analysis. The external analysis is based on an understanding of the economics of industry structure and how a corporation might succeed in that structure via competitive advantage. It focuses on the markets in which a firm should participate and what matters when it does. The core externally based framework is made out of Porter's Five Forces and Value Chain ideas. Strategic investments and choices are influenced by the outside perspective. Internal analysis, like core competency, for instance, is more focused on particular company processes and choices than it is on the structure of the industry. It places emphasis on how a business should compete.

The internal perspective is more suited for the company's strategic planning and goal-setting. When it comes to the macro- and micro-environments addressed in Three, these ideas are strongly related to those of environmental scanning. Although Porter's emphasis on industrial structure is a potent tool for examining competitive advantage in and of itself, it has come under fire for being overly static in a world where social and technical change increasingly dominate. The internal analysis places a strong emphasis on developing a business's capabilities, resources, and decision-making so that it may prosper in a changing environment. This is closely related to Porter's value chain idea and to the resource-based perspective of the firm that will be described later in this article. However, neither framework is adequate to determine a firm's strategy on its own. The situation is primarily framed and informed by both internal and external perceptions. The business's real strategy will need to handle concerns with funding, product and market, people and organization, as well as the unique hurdles that a company must overcome. While some of these strategic choices are based on specific events, others remain the focus of recurring strategic evaluations.

Edge Over Rivals

Michael Porter's concepts of competitive strategy are based on industry structure and placement within the industry. The core concept of Porter's theory of competitive advantage is encapsulated in the "Five Forces" graphic. Any industry's regulations for competitiveness are determined by the Five Forces. A detailed grasp of the market dynamics that influence an industry's attractiveness is a prerequisite for developing a competitive strategy. The ultimate goal of competitive strategy, according to Porter, is to adapt to and, ideally, modify those rules in the firm's behavior. Industries' profitability is determined by the five factors, and some may be more appealing than others. How much value businesses can provide for their customers and how much of this value will be absorbed or taken by competitors are the key factors in determining profitability.

Who will derive value is determined by industry structure. However, a corporation may use its own tactics to have an impact on the five factors, thus it is not completely at the mercy of the industrial structure. The five forces framework identifies what is crucial and guides managers toward those elements that will provide them a long-term competitive edge. A word of caution when applying this in practice: simply creating a long list of forces in the competitive environment will not result in meaningful results. Instead, successful application of this tool necessitates careful consideration and identification of the few primary driving forces that truly define the industry. In some ways, it's ideal to utilize the Five factors structure as a starting point checklist and a reminder of the many potential sources that may be those few driving factors.

Creating a Competitive Advantage

At its most basic level, businesses build competitive advantage by identifying and introducing new, more effective methods to compete in a market. This is an act of innovation, not invention, since innovations are produced from a grasp of market demands, while inventions are often abstractions that are developed from an idea with no underlying understanding of the market. The invention strategy is similar to old-style product pushing, whereas the innovation approach is similar to the current marketing notion. In terms of competition theory, innovation is a sounder strategy since it transfers the competitive advantage when competitors either fail to recognize the new method of competing or are unable or unwilling to adapt, and it does so more quickly because it is based on actual market demands. The following are the most frequent factors that lead to innovations that change competitive advantage.

1. Emerging technologies
2. Demands of new or potential buyers
3. The emergence of a new industrial sector
4. Alterations in input prices or availability
5. Government rules that have changed.

Early adopters may, in fact, benefit greatly from adopting innovations, especially in sectors with considerable economies of scale or where consumers are more likely to switch providers. When creating and presenting new goods, innovation must also take into account customer adoption patterns as described by Everett Rogers in his book Diffusion of Innovations. Rogers was not the first to notice this; in 1890, the sociologist Gabreil Tarde wrote about it, and Friedrich Ratzel and Leo Frobenius also added their perspectives. However, Rogers was the one who first combined a number of blueprints to create a framework for the acceptance of new concepts, services, and products that included the following phases in order of appearance;

1. Finding out about the new product
2. Looking for information about it
3. Forming positive sentiments regarding it
4. Putting it to the test either directly or indirectly
5. Having success in the trial
6. Establishing a regular use or repurchase trend for the product.

This does, in fact, reflect the time's views on communications in general. In addition, Rogers considered how quickly a new concept, product, or service is adopted by consumers and how much of the market it ultimately penetrates. By reflecting the many sorts of "adopter characteristic" types onto the target market, Rogers essentially created a generic segmentation that can be used to model and comprehend the introduction of a new product, service, or concept. But what more can the company do, but follow market trends? At the execution level of a strategy, competitive advantage arises from the way businesses carry out discrete operations – coming up with novel methods to carry out tasks, using novel approaches, novel technology, or novel inputs. To keep copycats at bay, the "fit" of various strategic efforts is also crucial. We can better understand how activities create competitive advantage by using Porter's "Value Chain" and "Activity Mapping" ideas. The value chain is a methodical technique to look at every action a company does and how they connect. It carefully examines each of the company's operations for sources of benefit. To understand cost behavior and current and prospective sources of distinction, a firm's value chain maps out its strategically important operations. Fundamentally, differentiation comes from how a company's product, related services, and other operations influence the actions of its customers. The buyer value is a result of every activity throughout the value chain, and the gap between buyer value and producer cost is determined by the chain's total costs.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Marketing is a dynamic, multidimensional subject that continues to be crucial to the success and expansion of businesses. In the constantly shifting environment of the global market, marketing must embrace creative methods, adjust to changing customer habits, and preserve ethical standards. Businesses may create lasting relationships with clients, foster enduring brand loyalty, and gain a competitive advantage in the market by consistently enhancing and developing marketing strategies. The importance of ethical issues increases as marketing develops further. Responsible marketing strategies that put openness, truthfulness, and respect for customers first not only encourage brand loyalty but also advance society welfare as a whole. Maintaining credibility and building confidence with clients requires staying away from deceptive advertising and manipulative strategies.

REFERENCES:

[1] G. M. Eckhardt, M. B. Houston, B. Jiang, C. Lamberton, A. Rindfleisch, and G. Zervas, “Marketing in the Sharing Economy,” *J. Mark.*, 2019, doi: 10.1177/0022242919861929.

[2] R. Langan, S. Cowley, and C. Nguyen, "The State of Digital Marketing in Academia: An Examination of Marketing Curriculum's Response to Digital Disruption," *J. Mark. Educ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1177/0273475318823849.

[3] K. Jarek and G. Mazurek, "Marketing and artificial intelligence," *Cent. Eur. Bus. Rev.*, 2019, doi: 10.18267/j.cebr.213.

[4] F. Diez-Martin, A. Blanco-Gonzalez, and C. Prado-Roman, "Research challenges in digital marketing: Sustainability," *Sustain.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/su11102839.

[5] R. Smith, B. Kelly, H. Yeatman, and E. Boyland, "Food marketing influences children's attitudes, preferences and consumption: A systematic critical review," *Nutrients*. 2019. doi: 10.3390/nu11040875.

[6] T. Gillpatrick, "The digital transformation of marketing: Impact on marketing practice & markets," *ECONOMICS*, 2019, doi: 10.2478/eoik-2019-0023.

[7] M. Potvin Kent, E. Pauzé, E. A. Roy, N. de Billy, and C. Czoli, "Children and adolescents' exposure to food and beverage marketing in social media apps," *Pediatr. Obes.*, 2019, doi: 10.1111/ijpo.12508.

[8] A. Di Gregorio, I. Maggioni, C. Mauri, and A. Mazzucchelli, "Employability skills for future marketing professionals," *Eur. Manag. J.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.emj.2019.03.004.

[9] A. J. Rohm, M. Stefl, and J. Saint Clair, "Time for a Marketing Curriculum Overhaul: Developing a Digital-First Approach," *J. Mark. Educ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1177/0273475318798086.

[10] O. Ungerman and J. Dědková, "Marketing innovations in Industry 4.0 and their impacts on current enterprises," *Appl. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/app9183685.

CHAPTER 2
A COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW OF PORTER'S VALUE CHAIN

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Porter's Value Chain is a seminal framework developed by Michael Porter to analyze a company's internal activities and identify opportunities for competitive advantage. This abstract provides an overview of Porter's Value Chain and its significance in strategic management. The framework divides a firm's operations into primary and support activities, examining how each activity contributes to the creation of value for customers. By understanding the value chain, businesses can optimize their operations, reduce costs, and enhance product or service differentiation. This abstract also explores the applicability of the Value Chain in various industries and its role in sustainable business practices. Furthermore, it highlights the integration of technology and innovation to augment the Value Chain's effectiveness in the rapidly evolving global market.

KEYWORDS:

Firm Infrastructure, Human Resource Management, Inbound Logistics, Operations.

INTRODUCTION

The value-chain idea is now often used to describe whole supply chains and distribution networks, going beyond the scope of individual businesses. In fact, this concept also reflects the fact that, according to marketing theory, "Place" refers to much more than just the location of a good or service's sale and also includes all the distributive and process aspects of a business, which is one reason why logistics has grown to be so crucial in most retail businesses. This concept reflects the fact that delivery of a mix of goods and services to the end customer will mobilize various economic factors, each managing its own value chain[1], [2].

An extended value chain, often of global scope, is produced by the coordinated industry-wide interactions of various local value chains. Porter refers to this more extensive network of related value chains as the "value system." Value systems comprise the supply chains of a business, the firm itself, its distribution networks, and its customers. Many management strategists now pursue the new tack of capturing the value created throughout the chain. To save transportation costs, a vehicle manufacturer, for instance, can mandate that its auto parts suppliers be situated close to its assembly facility. The enterprises may attempt to avoid the intermediaries by adopting new business models or in other ways make changes to its value system by taking use of the upstream and downstream information moving through the value chain. Depending on the beginning point of the firm inside the value chain, this was referred to as vertical, backwards, or forwards integration in terms of strategic management[3], [4].

By doing these strategically significant tasks more efficiently or effectively than its rivals, a corporation acquires a competitive edge[5], [6]. The value chain framework stresses that competitive advantage may emerge from anywhere along the value chain, not simply from excellent goods or services, which is one of the reasons it is useful. Additionally, it's critical to comprehend how a company fits into the value system as a whole, which also includes the value chains of its suppliers, distributors, and customers. Porter expands on his concepts of general strategy and the value chain with the notion of activity mapping in order to provide a more thorough explanation of how strategies are implemented. In order to maintain a competitive edge, the firm's value chain must be handled as a system rather than as a collection of discrete components[7].

The marketing strategy selected affects positioning decisions, which in turn affect the actions that a firm will carry out and how each activity will be carried out, as well as how they will interact with one another. This is essential since deciding to carry out tasks in a unique way or in a way that differs from competitors is the core of strategy implementation. The whole should be bigger than the pieces, and an organization should be more than the sum of its components. The value chain of a company is a network of interconnected, interdependent operations. Linkages happen when the way one action is carried out influences the expense or efficiency of another activity. Links provide trade-offs that need coordination and optimization, and these links are crucial for being adaptable and responsive to changing business situations[8], [9].

Porter outlines three options for strategic positions that affect how a firm's operations are organized. Variety-based positioning is focused on manufacturing just a portion of an industry's goods or services; it entails selecting a variety of goods or services rather than a specific consumer group. When a corporation can create specific goods or services utilizing unique sets of activities, needs-based positioning makes commercial sense; this is akin to the conventional targeting of client groups using the STP process. When different client groups have different demands and a certain set of activities may best meet those needs, this can be employed. In many ways, this is Porter's focus strategy, also known as access-based positioning, which involves segmenting the market based on customers who share the same needs but require different arrangements of activities to reach them.

In these situations, the manner in which the various customer segments are served differs, for example, a website and a store may sell the same goods but cater to different clientele based on access. The main contribution of Porter's "activity mapping" is to clarify how various tactics or viewpoints might be put into effect. He asserts that the combination of activities into a consistent fit with one another is the secret to effective plan execution. Therefore, a company's strategic stance is included inside a series of specific actions created to achieve it. The activities are closely related to one another, as shown by a kind of relevance diagram. Fit eliminates rivals by forging a "chain that is as strong as its strongest link." Competitors must match each action if competitive advantage arises from the system of activities as a whole in order to reap the rewards of the system as a whole.

Porter identifies three requirements for the persistence of a competitive advantage: Hierarchy of source: Lower-order advantages, like cheap labor costs, are often simple to copy, but higher-order advantages, such proprietary technology, brand recognition, or customer connections, need ongoing, cumulative investment and are more difficult to copy. In fact, the last several decades provide evidence of the recurrent migration of companies with cheap labor costs from one nation to another. The cheap labor costs attract foreign investment, which raises salaries and ultimately undermines the low labor costs. As a consequence, socioeconomic circumstances improve, and the foreign investors move on to the next low wage sector to exploit.

Number of unique sources

Constant updating and upgrading are necessary for a company to be "running scared," producing new advantages at least as quickly as rivals copy old ones. Given the effect of technology in the broadest sense, proponents of this framework underline the need of a dynamic strategy in today's more dynamic business climate. It is difficult to claim that our current business environment is anything like that of the 1990s, much alone prior periods. Such industrial structure-based "war of position" methods only succeeds when markets, regions, goods, and consumer demands are well defined and long-lasting, which is debatably no longer the norm. Indeed, as markets diversify and multiply, product life cycles quicken as well, making it harder to dominate any specific market sector and, as a result of the fragmentation, less valuable. In such a setting, the dynamics of a company's behavior, rather than the structure of its goods and markets, constitute the core of strategy. A successful firm will swiftly enter and exit markets, products, and perhaps even business divisions. But behind it all, the business has a set of core characteristics or qualities that set it apart from rivals and are hard to duplicate. These fundamental capabilities, together with ongoing strategic investment in them, determine the company's long-term dynamics and potential.

DISCUSSION

Competencies and Capabilities

According to Prahalad and Hamel, core competences are the collective learning of the company, particularly the coordination of various production abilities and the integration of many technological streams. These abilities support a company's multiple product lines and account for how simple it is for successful rivals to join new, apparently unrelated companies. According to Prahalad and Hamel, three assessments may be used to determine core competencies:

1. Potentially provide access to a range of markets
2. Contributes significantly to end user value
3. Difficult for rivals to duplicate

This closely relates to Porter's value chain model's support activities section. Although they define capabilities more broadly to include the full value chain rather than simply particular technical and manufacturing know-how, Stalk, Evans, and Schulman do indeed speak about capabilities in a similar manner. In that it helps to concentrate on strategy as having four important parts, this is currently considered as a more practical concept for establishing strategy. This framework's key insight is that competitive advantage stems from capabilities, hence enterprises should be structured as portfolios of competences rather than portfolios of businesses. Because it unduly limits the returns to scale throughout the organization, structuring a corporation into independent strategic business units based on markets or products might impair the capacity to utilize and build expertise. Communication, engagement, and a strong commitment to cooperating across organizational boundaries are core competencies. The classic organizational philosophy has been drastically altered by this.

Core goods should be the tangible representation of one or more core competencies, and product portfolios should be built around core competencies. Core competencies so provide both concentration and diversity. Companies should aim to increase their global manufacturing share of core goods if they want to maintain leadership in their designated core competency areas. The rate at which competences may be expanded and improved is in part determined by this.The costs of losing a core competency may only be partially predicted in advance since the embedded abilities are not something that can be easily "rented in" by outsourcing or simply purchased back. Instead, they are developed via a process of continual improvement. For instance, Wal-Mart has made significant investments in its logistical infrastructure in both America and Europe. These strategic expenditures allowed the business to maintain a laser-like focus on the requirements of its clients. While Wal-Mart was enhancing core competences, K-Mart outsourced whenever it was more affordable, making it less able to respond to the changing demands of its consumers. There is general agreement about the drawbacks of limiting product development to fields where core skills or core rigidities already exist. With each new big development project they undertake, good firms may aim to progressively strengthen their capabilities by adding one or two additional core competences.

Resource-Based Perspective of the Company

The RBV framework, which blends the internal and external viewpoints on strategy, is a relatively new creation. Companies' collections of tangible and intangible assets and capabilitieswhat RBV refers to as resourcesare highly distinct, much like the frameworks of core competency and skills. The possession of a valued resource is ultimately responsible for competitive advantage. In a broader sense, resources might be either material, intangible, or organizational. The reason why no two businesses have the same resources is because they don't have the same level of experience, the same assets and talents, or the same organizational culture. Additionally, unlike the frameworks for core competencies and skills, the value of widely defined resources is decided by the interaction of market forces; this has close relations to Porter's Five Forces, which were previously discussed. A resource must pass many external market tests of its worth before it can serve as the foundation of a successful strategy. Collins and Montgomery provide a set of five assessments for a useful tool.

1. Rents occur due to the heterogeneity of resources. The idea that different businesses have different resource packages and capacities is a fundamental one. This distinction shows up in two different ways. First, in competitive marketplaces, companies with better resources might generate Ricardian rents because they outperform rivals in terms of productivity. The important thing is that the better resource is still scarce, or somehow confined. Second, by purposefully limiting production, businesses with market dominance may generate monopoly profits from their resources. Monopoly models may exhibit heterogeneity due to, among other things, distinct goods, intra-industry mobility obstacles, or first-mover advantages.
2. Ex-post competition restrictions result in persistent rents. There must be factors that reduce competition for rents once a business achieves a better position and earns rentals.
3. Rents are maintained inside the company because to imperfect mobility. If resources cannot be exchanged, they are not completely mobile and cannot be bid away from their employer, ensuring that competitive advantage is maintained.
4. Ex-ante restrictions on competition result in uncompensated rents. There must be little competition for the job before the business can develop its superior position. Otherwise, the transportation expense would be more than the value of the resource or item. RBV Managers should base their strategy on resources that meet the aforementioned standards. When deciding what valuable resources are, businesses should consider both external industry conditions and their own internal capabilities. In essence, this means conducting an audit of both macro and microenvironments, but using a different model that takes into account the fact that resources can originate from anywhere along the value chain and take the form of tangible assets, intangible assets, or routines.

Continuous resource improvement and upgrading are necessary to thrive due to the dynamic nature of the business environment and the quickly shifting needs of customers. In fact, this thrusts the need for ambiguity management skills into the spotlight, reinforcing some of the lessons from Peters & Waterman and Waterman. As a result, while choosing which resources to invest in, organizations must take industry structure and dynamics into account. It's also simple to fall into the trap of prioritizing divisional earnings above resource investment in firms with a divisional structure. To make the most of its resources and avoid entering areas where it lacks a resource edge, good strategy necessitates ongoing reevaluation of the company's scope. RBV can provide information on the advantages and hazards of diversification tactics.

Alternative Frameworks: Hyper competition and Evolutionary Change

Several analyses of international industries were conducted during the end of the 1990s by a range of academic and consulting organizations. One of the key findings in almost every study was that companies with managers who used innovative approaches to strategic thinking and action had higher chances of success than those with managers who used traditional approaches to strategy, collaboration, organization, and business processes. Although the study included some information on the novel techniques, there was no basis for generalizing the results to other sectors or for managers and academics to use to put the findings into perspective. As a consequence, managing change has come to be seen as the primary strategic task in strategy literature. According to the legend, change is the defining characteristic of modern business, and successful companies will be those who deal with change the bestnot only those that are skilled at foreseeing the future. Managers simply cannot plan successfully when the path of change is too unpredictable. An attitude towards coping with change successfully and continually would be a welcome addition to a strategy based on industry analysis, core competencies, and planning when industries are changing quickly and unpredictable.

Evolutionary Alteration

Eisenhardt & Brown's Competing on the Edge promotes a strategy based on "competing on the edge," which they define as fusing aspects of complexity theory with evolutionary theory. Theories that relate economic or corporate development to biological evolution may be immensely rewarding because they explain how things function in the actual world, when analysis and planning are often in short supply. Additionally, they contend that flexible, experimental, and learning-based tactics may be even more crucial than careful analysis and preparation. Businesses create a "semi-coherent strategic direction" according to Eisenhardt & Brown's framework. To effectively grow and adapt to their unpredictable environment, they must achieve and maintain the ideal balance between order and chaos. This is similar to what many older strategic literatures refer to as "emergent strategy" in many ways. A company develops a flexible structure and a steady stream of competitive advantages by competing at the "edge of chaos," which constitutes the "semi-coherent" course. Businesses are not hampered by excessive planning or centralized management, but they do have enough structure to allow for the organization of change. They encourage an entrepreneurial and market-oriented company mindset by structuring themselves in this manner.

They effectively "evolve" because they actively pursue a range of strategies, responding to the pressure of changing consumer demands. While doing so, they sometimes make errors and aggressively reinvent their companies by looking for new growth prospects. There is no doubting that this tactic works despite being unpredictable, unregulated, and ineffective. It's critical to remember that businesses must not only effectively respond to change, but also effectively anticipate and initiate change. Change is time-paced, or initiated by the passage of time rather than by events, in successful firms. In Built to Last, Collins and Porras describe the practices of 18 long-lasting, forward-thinking businesses. An attitude toward evolutionary changetry a lot of different things and stick with what worksunderlies the habits.

Evolutionary processes have the potential to be a potent catalyst for advancement. Importantly, Collins and Porras discover that each successful company has a fundamental idea that must be maintained throughout time. Although there is no definitive recipe for the "right" combination of fundamental values, it is crucial to have them. This core ideology is, in strategy-speak, what most fundamentally sets the company apart from rivals.

Regardless of the market segments they enter, there are close associations with this concept of branding's "core" and with the modern interpretation of what a company's mission statement should be. In fact, they go on to say that these values should be deeply held and go beyond "vision statements" to become mechanisms and systems that are built int These values, to use marketing jargon, need to play a significant role in a company's corporate positioning, which should align with the values of its goods and services. It is crucial to uphold the essential principles, even when they sometimes go against short-term economic motives or traditional business thinking. Note that "maximize shareholder wealth" is not a sufficient core philosophy since it offers little advice and fails to motivate workers at all levels.Evolutionary change that happens naturally may be a crucial part of success. Planning and strategy should support and enhance such transformation rather than stifle it. Organizations are built on a few essential principles that must be upheld at all costs. When evaluating potential alternative tactics, not every aspect of an organization is a possibility for change.

Hyper competition

As was previously said, there is no question that the business climate of today has changed due to the increasing deterioration of such old sources of competitive advantage. Furthermore, maintaining existing advantages might divert attention from the development of new ones. Competition has increased to make each of the traditional sources of advantage more vulnerable; price & quality, timing and know-how, creation of strongholds - entry barriers have fallen, and deep pockets - resource dominance, are no longer sufficient methods of control and dominance. This is due to the fragmentation of markets, products, and services, the proliferation of niche-seeking competitors, and the means of delivering to the market. Hyper competition has come to mean this. In some ways, this puts a high focus on SWOT analysis since the idea of hyper competition argues that strategy should also entail the creative elimination of an opponent's advantage. This innovative strategy's main objective is to upset the status quo and gain control by forging a number of fleeting advantages. Hyper competition is characterized by movement that is quick and intense. According to economic theory, markets with high levels of competition cannot reach an equilibrium like those with perfect competition, and only short-term gains are thus feasible.

As a result of this strategy, various new marketing fads have emerged, including "guerrilla," "ambush," "Astro-turfing," "viral," and "stealth," all of which aim to gain short-term market advantages. Eight describes these strategies. Game theory, which aims to mathematically capture strategic behavior and thereby predict scenarios of the market macro-environment, has also become more popular as a tool for analyzing customers' and competitors' reactions to a firm's competitive moves. This has made it possible to pinpoint the critical pivotal points for disruption.There have been four distinct business philosophies.

While markets have existed for centuries, the idea of marketing did not emerge until the middle of the 20th century. Producers, guilds, merchants, bankers, and retailers existed in agricultural and commercial cultures, but economic awareness was centered on maximizing profits rather than satisfying consumer needs. Early in the 20th century, as markets became more developed, businesses were forced to fight more fiercely for market share. However, they did it by aggressive sales tactics including hard selling and aggressive advertising. The industrial revolution of the 18th and 19th centuries laid the groundwork for the modern understanding of marketing that exists today. This was a time of very fast societal change brought on by scientific and technical advancement, which led to mechanization, industrialization, and the Henry Ford-famous mass production philosophy. Ford also sums up the purchasing habits and mentality of the time: "Any color as long as it's black. Mass manufacturing resulted in a focus on production cost effectiveness rather than customer happiness, i.e., a basic appeal to satisfy the broadest range of market demands. The fundamental tenet was that a good product will sell itself; as a result, marketing was given little to no consideration, and instead, focus was concentrated on increasing distribution since a good product with a broad distribution equated to success. The Production Era is a fitting term for this period. One outcome was the first-ever separation of the manufacturing of products from their consumption. Because of mass manufacturing, expanding mass media, and rising transportation infrastructure, manufacturers had to and could create more complex methods for controlling the flow of commodities.

A change in thought started in the late 1930s and more so in the 1940s. After the Great Depression, when global markets started to revive, larger, more powerful corporate institutions as well as a swarm of smaller rivals emerged. Beginnings of affordable international travel also fueled both expansion and competitiveness. The end effect was a change in the direction of sales, where products were "pushed" using "hard" approaches in both sales and creative advertising aimed to "overcome" consumer opposition and persuade them to purchase. The majority of the advertising and marketing creative companies of today had their beginnings in this time. customer goods businesses like Proctor & Gamble and General Electric had a more courteous, inquiring approach towards the customer by the time of Death of a Salesman in the 1950s. This gradually changed throughout the 1950s as other businesses realized that 'persuading' people to buy something was rather difficult and that, as a result, actually ascertaining customers' basic needs and then supplying goods and services to meet them was both a sounder philosophical concept and, more importantly, a much more effective and efficient economic premise on which to run a business. The progressive shift in thinking was accompanied by a second change: a rise in service demand.

Despite recessions, the demand for services has increased up to the present. In reality, the demand for services is still rising more quickly than the demand for produced commodities in all significant global economies, which is a development that worries some national governments. The focus on understanding customer demands increased during the 1950s and 1960s, and the development of tenets like "Customer is King" marked the real beginning of the contemporary marketing concept. The early pioneers created marketing divisions to research consumer preferences for TVs, detergents, and light bulbs. Their success was noticed, and soon imitations appeared. The same feeling of wondrously blindingly obviousness that often appears to precede "breakthroughs" in the business sector was there with this "marketing revolution." Later in the 1970s and into the 1980s, this idea continued to evolve. The Key account idea was first developed inside industrial and business-to-business marketing as a result of the realization that the expense of gaining a new client was substantial. In this case, a customer was considered valuable enough to warrant maintaining a long-term connection with, and as a result, a salesman would be tasked with doing so rather than continuously seeking out new clients. Relationship management became so popular very quickly that a sizable portion of the IT sector created software to assist businesses in implementing it.

The emphasis CRM put on both customers and suppliers benefiting from a long-term relationship is undeniable, even if the effectiveness of CRM and the Relationship Marketing phenomena that preceded it in marketing circles is debatable. In fact, the value concept that emerged directly influenced the idea of coordinated value chains, as well as the era's focus on logistics and supply chain difficulties, which later broadened to include a holistic perspective of the whole organization in the Marketing Concept. The Marketing idea, which was the most recent of the "levels" of marketing to emerge, may be summed up as the belief that a company's operations must be coordinated in order to satisfactorily meet the demands and desires of both its current and future clients. Finding out what the consumers want is the main priority, followed by making sure that everyone in the company is aware of it and working to meet their needs. The primary concept is to establish a connection with the client that benefits both parties, i.e., a company-wide consumer orientation that will encourage long-term success by using customer input to guide product development, price, distribution, customer service, etc. At its foundation, this attitude acknowledges that knowing the consumer is the first step toward success in the marketplace. The transition from a seller's market to a buyer's market, or the transfer of power from producers of goods and services to their customers, has intensified competition in most marketplaces and is one explanation for the origin of the marketing idea. It may also be partially explained by the dynamics of increased market competition brought on by elements like globalization, technology, etc. Once again, it is important to remember that the marketing notion unifies business and marketing strategies, and as a result, strategic marketing extensively draws from a range of business disciplines.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, A timeless and effective paradigm for companies looking to gain a sustained competitive edge, Porter's Value Chain is still relevant today. Companies may provide higher value to clients, increase profitability, and effectively negotiate the difficulties of a dynamic business environment by thoroughly examining their operations and aiming for continual improvement. In the dynamic and fiercely competitive global market, Porter's Value Chain must be fully realized by integrating technology and embracing innovation. Porter's Value Chain is applicable to a broad variety of enterprises, from manufacturing to services, and is not only relevant to certain sectors. Regardless of the industry, knowing how value is created and distributed enables businesses to differentiate themselves in a competitive market and anticipate the demands of their customers. Furthermore, technology and innovation have become crucial to the success of the Value Chain as the global market keeps developing. By embracing digital transformation and using cutting-edge technology, organizations may further improve operations, take advantage of data-driven insights, and provide consumers with more individualized experiences.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Cordell and I. Thompson, "Porter's Value Chain," in *The Procurement Models Handbook*, 2019. doi: 10.4324/9781351239509-50.

[2] H. K. Hadrawi, "The impact of firm supply performance and lean processes on the relationship between supply chain management practices and competitive performance," *Uncertain Supply Chain Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.5267/j.uscm.2018.7.003.

[3] Hisyam, R. W. D. Arifin, Y. D. Lestari, and Y. Matsuura, "An investigation of open innovation paradigm using value chain framework: A case of Indonesian milk cooperative," *Int. J. Supply Chain Manag.*, 2019.

[4] M. S. Falks, “Supply chain management strategies in the manufacturing industry,” *Diss. Abstr. Int. Sect. A Humanit. Soc. Sci.*, 2019.

[5] C. Wang, S. C. Loo, J. B. H. Yap, and H. Abdul-Rahman, “Novel Capability-Based Risk Assessment Calculator for Construction Contractors Venturing Overseas,” *J. Constr. Eng. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.1061/(asce)co.1943-7862.0001696.

[6] B. A. Jnr, “Sustainable value chain practice adoption to improve strategic environmentalism in ICT-based industries,” *J. Glob. Oper. Strateg. Sourc.*, 2019.

[7] T. Shimada and L. N. Van Wassenhove, “Closed-Loop supply chain activities in Japanese home appliance/personal computer manufacturers: A case study,” *Int. J. Prod. Econ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.ijpe.2016.11.010.

[8] A. Gilinsky, J. Mallon, and A. Santana, “Pacific Market: invest, sell, or stay the same?,” *CASE J.*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/TCJ-03-2019-0021.

[9] N. V. Smorodinskaya and D. D. Katukov, “When and why regional clusters become basic building blocks of modern economy,” *Balt. Reg.*, 2019, doi: 10.5922/2079-8555-2019-3-4.

CHAPTER 3
CLASSIFICATION OF MARKETING ORIENTATION: A REVIEW STUDY

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Marketing orientation is a fundamental concept in marketing management, representing a company's approach towards understanding and meeting customer needs. This abstract provides an overview of the classification of marketing orientation and its significance in shaping an organization's marketing strategies. The three primary classifications, namely product orientation, sales orientation, and market orientation, are explored, each with distinct characteristics and implications. Product orientation focuses on internal capabilities and product features, sales orientation emphasizes aggressive selling tactics, and market orientation prioritizes customer insights and responsiveness. This abstract delves into the strengths and weaknesses of each orientation, highlighting the importance of adopting a customer-centric approach to achieve long-term success in today's dynamic business environment. Furthermore, it discusses the potential evolution of marketing orientation in response to changing market trends and consumer behaviors.

KEYWORDS:

Customer-Centric, Customer, Market Analysis, Market Orientation, Marketing Strategies.

INTRODUCTION

Adopting a marketing approach is one of three basic choices. These three are focused on sales, production, and products, respectively. a focus on sales Selling more of the goods or services they presently provide is the primary issue for several firms. As a result, it may be required of them to use all of their selling, pricing, advertising, and distribution talents[1], [2]. The distinction is that a firm that is focused on making sales pays little attention to the requirements and desires of its customers and makes little effort to develop original goods or services.Production-centered businesses are said to be primarily focused on producing as many units as they can. Such a firm focuses on generating maximal quantities in an effort to maximize profitability by taking advantage of economies of scale. Customers' requirements come second to the desire to enhance output in a firm that is production-focused. Such a strategy is probably most successful when a company works in areas with very high growth rates or where there is a strong likelihood of seeing economies of scale.A subtle distinction from production orientation is that of product orientation. Think of a company that is "obsessed" with its own goods, maybe even boasting about how superior they are. Their items could begin as the most cutting-edge and advanced on the market. However, a product-oriented corporation may discover that its goods start to lose ground to rivals if it ignores evolving technology breakthroughs or subtle shifts in customer preferences[3], [4].

By purchasing products and services, we may fulfill our needs and desires. A book, a pen, a folder, and other tangible objects with shape and substance are examples of goods. They are things you can see and touch. Services, on the other hand, are things that other people provide to you, like going to the doctor or the dentist, getting a haircut, or dining out. Thus, when you buy an item, you really become the owner of it, but when you buy a service, you become the owner of nothing. However, this distinction between tangible commodities and intangible services is not given much credibility in modern marketing since it was historically founded on an economics-based viewpoint. Such a consideration is only necessary when you come to the individual modification of the marketing mix components. First of all, it's important to highlight that these categories are not binary, suggesting that there is really a continuum with a pure service at one end and a pure commodity product as the other[5], [6].Therefore, it is preferable to consider products and services in terms of what genuinely distinguishes them from one another as these elements have an influence on the marketing mix. Marketers may understand how the relative goods/services mix of overall products using the goods and services continuum. Marketers may identify opportunities by figuring out where a product falls on the continuum. Businesses provide goods and services to meet the needs of the consumer and industrial markets. It is best to distinguish them based on these four qualities:

Tangibility

Goods are material items like furniture, clothes, and equipment. They can be seen and felt, and they have form. Services are immaterial; they don't have a physical presence, such hair styling, pest control, and equipment maintenance[7], [8].

Perishability

All products have some longevity beyond the initial purchase. Services don't last; they expire as soon as they are provided.

Separability

Products may be kept for a later use. As a result, production and consumption are usually distinct. Services cannot be distinguished from the service provider since they are produced and consumed simultaneously[9], [10].

Standardization

Grading and standardization throughout the manufacturing process allow for the management of product quality. However, each time services are provided, their quality varies. Second, separating products into commodities and services is a tautology when applied to the actual world since both are products. No matter the product apples, oranges, or haircuts marketers use the same set of concepts and techniques. For instance, a restaurant offers a physical commodity as well as services like atmosphere, table setup and clearing, waiting staff, etc. In fact, many goods are increasingly significantly dependent on services offered as an integrated part with a good - dubbed an enhanced product - in order to remain competitive due to the greater acceptance of the marketing idea and the increased competitiveness in marketplaces. This prompted some academics to create the Service Dominant Logic marketing strategy, which emphasizes this area as the substantive need-satisfier. Let's look at how we define and analyze products to better comprehend this idea of commodities and services as products.

First, a "Product" may be defined as a collection of qualities or traits. Take the modest food staple of bread. Bread comes in a wide range of physical characteristics, including leavened and unleavened, white, wholemeal, brown, or a combination of the two; sliced or unsliced; buns, baps, or loaf; small, medium, or big; or it may be little. These physical characteristics all provide various advantages to the individual who purchases and/or consumes the bread. For instance, a sliced loaf may be cost-effective, healthy, or convenient to use for creating sandwiches. Keep in mind that these physical characteristics are intended to meet people's desires. Bread may be used to meet secondary wants further up in the hierarchy, such as purchasing wholemeal bread for health reasons or seeded bread for flavor or aesthetics. Bread mainly fills hunger, a physiological need according to Maslow's Hierarchy.

In fact, if we consider this, a Product may need to fulfill a variety of criteria in order to succeed. Think about a diet soda. Its main requirements are that it fill thirst and taste nice, but it also probably has to be low in calories, easy to consume, and project a sui image. Therefore, wants might be basic, like quenching hunger, or complex, like conveying a particular image. Some of these may be met by fundamental product features, while others go beyond what the product itself can provide. For instance, a product's image is primarily shaped by its advertising, and how convenient it is to drink depends on the size and shape of the can or bottle.Consumers weigh all these elements concurrently to determine the value of what is referred to as The Total Product Offering (TPO) refers to the entire package that surrounds and makes up the product, including all ancillary features like branding, packaging, servicing, and warranties. In fact, the TPO includes every component of the marketing mix, so marketers must create a full, coordinated, consistent, and congruent package.

DISCUSSION

Total Product Offering

The TPO is divided into four levels: the core, the basic product, the enhanced product, and the perceived product. If you look at nine, you will notice this. The core benefit is the main justification for the product's existence. It is the most straightforward solution to a stated need, devoid of extraneous branding, packaging, guarantees, or service commitments.

Principal Product

There are extremely few examples of new fundamental wants, but there are many, innovative methods to meet those fundamental needs. E-mail, SMS text, and messenger applications are new means to fulfill the desire to communicate and have replaced previous methods including letters, faxes, telegrams, and public phone boxes. However, they haven't produced a new demand in and of themselves. This is a crucial idea that should never be disregarded. Marketers need to be certain that their goods will fulfill even the most fundamental needs. Products that fall short of providing a reliable core benefit often fail.

Simple Product

The FAB acronym, or features, attributes, and benefits, stands for the basic product, which is the product down to its bare minimum. While attributes are features presented in a manner that adds value from the standpoint of the client, features are the traits or characteristics of a product. Benefits are the positive outcomes users anticipate achieving while utilizing a product. Product qualities are internal to the product and may be either physical or intangible, such as a service feature. Benefits are usually abstract and belong to the client. They are often the consequence of a group of product characteristics, some of which may be abstract characteristics. Benefits may be conceptualized as functionalderived from the characteristics and features of the productsymbolicderived from performance expectationsand experimentalderived from actual use of the product. For instance, although a computer with a quad core processor may multi-task and do more tasks quicker than a drink with a high caffeine level, we would refer to this intangible feature as "performance".

Enhanced Product

The TPO's subsequent level has auxiliary features. Customer service, warranties, the service network, shipping, after-sales support, and credit options are a few of them. They seek to address client concerns and dispel any skepticism about the product by proposing methods to improve it.

Perceived Item

The perceived product is the TPO's outer ringdepending on how consumers evaluate the goods; for instance, different customers may have disparate opinions. Perception, which encompasses how we understand the world, is shaped by our personalities and life experiences. Because we all have various preferences and inclinations, vendors often give us a selection of things. Making ensuring that clients see a product as intended is one of the major marketing issues. We refer to this as positioning since it refers to the position that a product is thought to have in consumers' perceptions in comparison to rival brands. Perceptual mapping would be used to do this.

Branding

In the complete product concept, branding is spread across two tiers. It serves as the foundational product's name and quality indicator as well as its brand identity. Brand image has a significant role in how customers see the product and so belongs in the outer ring of the model. Four goes into further depth on branding.

Inter-functional problems

According to the current definition of marketing, it adds value by providing quality and satisfied customers. When a product meets or exceeds a customer's wants and expectations, the customer is satisfied. We must also acknowledge that clients now seek out far more than only goods and services; they seek out value. Value is a notion that extends beyond basic price to include shipping and other extra costs. It refers to the quality being comparable with the price and with the whole cost of acquisition. Value in the sense of a product or service that goes above and beyond. Value in terms of the supplier's brand reputation; a firm's competitiveness may be improved by a reputation for quality, whilst a decline in quality can hurt a firm's reputation and ability to compete. Quality may also be tangible in areas like customer service in terms of competitive advantage.

The Value Proposition's constituent parts

Customers are more likely to be happy with the business and maintain their ties if they feel they have gotten value. This marketing's four main objectives are to:

1. To get a thorough grasp of the requirements, practices, and decision-making of customers
2. Processes.
3. To craft value arguments that satisfy consumers' requirements and provide a competitive edge.
4. To go from having effective business dealings with clients to building enduring bonds of trust and loyalty.
5. It takes greater knowledge, skills, processes, and marketing resources to comprehend that higher value.

Customer happiness and feedback are important ideas in the marketing function of a company. The successful businesses go above and beyond to assure client pleasure by astutely and meticulously gathering this information. Information is the cornerstone of knowing consumer demands and requirements. Getting client feedback is one of the finest methods to determine whether or not consumers are happy. This is really a primary function of the website for many organizations, allowing consumers to make unrestricted comments and ideas regarding goods, services, and experiences. consumer complaints are good sources of consumer feedback, which is not by chance. After a dispute has been handled, many consumers actually feel more loyal than they would have if they had never complained. We may easily infer from this that marketing relies heavily on client happiness and service. If we expand the service metaphor, we should be able to understand that personal selling also plays a crucial part in marketing. Personal selling is often a vital component of such services, especially for items that have significant intangible service components. What other aspects of a firm can marketing influence? Let's investigate this using the idea of customer service as a foundation. The way businesses are structured has significantly changed as they transition from customer-based to product-based structures.

The introduction of Customer Relationship Management (CRM), which is supported by the convergence of information systems, the creation of auxiliary software, organizational structure, and training, all work together to significantly enhance the application of relationship marketing principles, is a key driver of this change. The organizational difficulties of culture and communication, management metrics, and cross-functional integration, particularly between marketing and information technology, are the three key issues that might now hinder progress. Thus, it is clear that as organizations have shifted toward a more marketing-focused mode of operation, marketing-related challenges and the values they represent have taken on a greater significance across all of their functional and operational domains. In essence, Regis McKenna's adage that "Marketing is everything" applies again.

Tactical Problems

The steps included in the strategic marketing planning process are. The process of preparing for a series of decisions that steer or guide an enterprise's management to achieve their intended long-term market position inside a certain target market. It is important to distinguish between the marketing planning, which will be done annually, and the strategic planning process, which takes place over a period of three to five years. There is a marketing control procedure in addition to the yearly marketing planning process; see next. Due to the widely acknowledged significance of creating both short- and long-term marketing plans, these various processes are differentiated. The sequential actions that make up the strategic marketing planning process are as follows.

Process for Strategic Marketing Planning

Understanding this procedure is crucial since it is the basis of a winning approach. So, we'll now take a step-by-step look at SMP. The corporate marketing strategy, which offers guidance on the businesses the firm should be in and the company's growth plans, should be the input at the beginning of the process. The strategic marketing planning method is often used at a decentralized level within the organization if the firm does business internationally. The corporation is separated into Strategic Business Units, which are made up of Product Divisions, for this purpose. It is possible to divide each PD into Product/Market-Combinations. When these levels can be distinguished inside an organization, it signifies that each level contributes to the process of strategic marketing.

Environmental and Situational Research

Additional market-specific research would also be required, such as that on political and economic considerations, entrance and exit obstacles, levels of concentration, Porter's Five Forces analysis of market power, and the state of the market. Notably, constant study of the marketing environment is required; this shouldn't be done only once. Analyzing the sector entails looking at things like market potential, market size, growth, and shares, as well as competition behavior. Thirteen the general environment in which a firm works and the people that make up that environment; this is essentially the marketing environment. The first perspective of the environment contrasts the environment within the company with the environment outside the firm, mirroring the ideas addressed in sections 1 and 2. The environment within the company is known as "internal," while the environment outside the company is known as "external." All internal factors are directly within the firm's control and are subject to change, halt, or beginning at its discretion. Note that this includes the modern idea that marketing efforts should target both internal and external "customers." Internal marketing, also known as stakeholder relations, is now a major endeavor for many companies, particularly those that have embraced the marketing philosophy as a way of operating.

The external factors can be further subdivided into those that are entirely beyond the firm's control or direct influence, such as laws, economics, social change, and technological advancements, and those that are essentially beyond the firm's control, such as its suppliers, unions, local community, and other stakeholders. Be aware that although the company may be able to influence them, it cannot control them.

PESLEDI

Before deciding on the corporate, SBU, and PD strategies, the organization must assess its existing macroenvironment. This is accomplished by doing a PESTLEDI study, which considers the political, economic, sociocultural, technical, legal, environmental, demographic technology trends, and the international components of all of these whether they are multi-national or exporting. This kind of analysis is also known as PEST or PESTLE, although they all mean the same thing.

Pest Evaluation

It explains the reasons for why it is crucial to comprehend these macroenvironmental factors as well as the standard tabular format for developing and presenting such analyses. A helpful technique to summarize the external environment in which a firm function is to identify PEST effects. The next step, therefore, is to think about how a firm should react to these factors.

The GE/McKinsey Matrix, the BCG Matrix, and the Improved BCG Matrix

Bruce Henderson developed the BCG matrix in 1968 for the Boston Consulting Group to aid businesses in examining their business divisions or product lines. In addition to being utilized as an analytical tool in brand marketing, product management, strategic management, and portfolio analysis, this aids in the company's resource allocation. One-tenth of the power required by our world might be supplied by wind by 2020. Already now, a significant share of the world's wind turbines depends on SKF's cutting-edge expertise. Maintenance expenses might account for up to 25% of producing costs. Our technologies for online condition monitoring and automated lubrication enable a significant reduction in these. We contribute to the economic viability of producing cleaner, less expensive energy out of thin air. Industries may achieve performance gains that go above and beyond expectations by sharing our experience, knowledge, and innovation. As a result, we need the finest personnel to handle this task!

Knowledge Engineering's Influence

Today, the BCG Matrix is a widely used tool for marketing managers. Market growth and relative market share are the two governing factors. A measure of SBU strength in the market is represented by relative market share, which is depicted on the horizontal axis. A measure of market attractiveness is represented by the market growth rate, which is plotted on the vertical axis. The matrix may be divided into four sections to differentiate between four different kinds of SBU:

Stars: Stars are fast-growing companies or goods that are in marketplaces where they are reasonably well-positioned in terms of their rivals. They often need significant investment to maintain their development. Their growth will eventually slow down, and if they retain their current market share, they will eventually turn into cash cows.

Cash Cows: Low-growth companies or goods with a substantial market share are considered cash cows. These are established, prosperous enterprises that need minimal capital. They must be managed to maintain a profit in order to keep generating the robust cash flows required by the business for its Stars.

Question marks: Question marks are companies or goods that have a small market share yet operate in industries with rapid development. This shows that they may have promise, but significant investment may be necessary if they are to gain market share at the cost of more strong rivals. Management must carefully choose which "question marks" to invest in.

Dogs: It should come as no surprise that the word "dogs" describes companies or goods with a low relative share in unattractive, slow-growing sectors. Dogs may bring in enough money to cover costs, but they are seldom, if ever, a good investment.

There are four potential tactics for each SBU, according to conventional strategic thinking:

1. Build Share: Here, the business might make investments to grow its market share.
2. Hold: In this case, the corporation makes just enough investments to maintain the SBU's current position.
3. Harvest: In this case, the corporation scales down its investment in order to increase the SBU's short-term cash flows and profitability. Stars may become Cash Cows as a result of this.
4. To deploy the resources elsewhere, the corporation may divest the SBU by selling it or gradually ceasing operations with it.

The matrix only indicates real profitability, which is the goal of each organization, and ranks just market share and industry growth rate. It should be noted that it is very possible for a certain dog to be profitable without the need for financial support; for this reason, the dog should be kept and not sold. The matrix also ignores other industry components; as a result, when using this analytical method or one similar to it, rating business units involves making predictions about the future, especially about growth rates. Positive rankings can foster a dot com mentality where even the most suspect companies are categorized as "question marks" with promising futures. Enthusiastic managers may assert that money must be poured into these companies right away in order to turn them into stars, before growth rates slow and it's too late. Some canines will be mislabeled as cash bulls due to poor market definitions for businesses.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, an important factor in determining a company's success in the market is its marketing approach. Businesses may develop stronger relationships with their target audience, outperform rivals, and ensure long-term development and profitability by adopting a customer-centric strategy and regularly aligning marketing tactics with changing consumer requirements. Companies looking to retain a competitive advantage and experience long-term success must be adaptable and responsive as the market changes. Although each orientation has advantages and disadvantages, the market orientation has emerged as the most enduring and successful strategy in the contemporary corporate environment. Understanding and fulfilling client wants has become crucial for success as a result of the fast changes in market dynamics and consumer behavior. Additionally, businesses must remain flexible and adaptive in their marketing strategies as technology continues to change the marketing environment. To succeed in the digital era, businesses must embrace digital transformation, data analytics, and consumer involvement via online platforms.

REFERENCES:

[1] Y. B. Susanto, "The Impact of Market Orientation and Dynamic Marketing Capability on the Marketing Performance of 'Make-To-Order' SMEs," *GATR J. Manag. Mark. Rev.*, 2019, doi: 10.35609/jmmr.2019.4.3(1).

[2] C. Lin, Y. Xie, and R. Xu, "Experience and enlightenment: 'customer-oriented' nine-stage major gifts management model of world-class U.S. universities," *Tuning J. High. Educ.*, 2019, doi: 10.18543/TJHE-7(1)-2019PP115-163.

[3] J. Peterková, K. Czerná, and P. Macurová, "Evaluation of innovation activities in metallurgical enterprises in the Czech Republic," in *METAL 2019 - 28th International Conference on Metallurgy and Materials, Conference Proceedings*, 2019. doi: 10.37904/metal.2019.787.

[4] J. Howard *et al.*, "Software Defined Networking: Network Intrusion Detection System," *Digit. Commun. Networks*, 2019.

[5] S. Diamond, *Digital Marketing All in One for Dummies*. 2019.

[6] B. T. Abebe *et al.*, "Mindfulness virtual community," *Trials*, 2019.

[7] L. Lekmat, C. Selvarajah, and C. Hewege, "Relationship between Market Orientation, Entrepreneurial Orientation, and Firm Performance in Thai SMEs: The Mediating Role of Marketing Capabilities," *Int. J. Bus. Econ.*, 2018.

[8] M. Thiede, D. Fuerstenau, and A. P. Bezerra Barquet, "How is process mining technology used by organizations? A systematic literature review of empirical studies," *Business Process Management Journal*. 2018. doi: 10.1108/BPMJ-06-2017-0148.

[9] K. Page *et al.*, "International Journal of Research in Commerce & Management Objectives of the Study Literature Review," *J. Bus. Res.*, 2018.

[10] R. Ushigome, T. Matsuda, M. Sonoda, and J. Chao, "Examination of classifying hoaxes over SNS using Bayesian network," in *Proceedings - 2017 5th International Symposium on Computing and Networking, CANDAR 2017*, 2018. doi: 10.1109/CANDAR.2017.103.

CHAPTER 4
EXPLORING THE SECURE DOMINANCE OF GROWTH MARKETS

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The concept of securing dominance in growth markets has become increasingly significant in today's competitive global business landscape. This abstract provides an overview of the strategies and considerations involved in achieving and maintaining market dominance in rapidly expanding industries. It explores the dynamic nature of growth markets and the various challenges and opportunities they present for businesses. The abstract delves into the importance of innovation, customer-centricity, and strategic agility in establishing a strong foothold in such markets. Furthermore, it highlights the role of sustainable practices, ethical considerations, and adaptability in securing long-term dominance. Understanding the nuances of growth markets and implementing effective growth strategies are pivotal for businesses seeking to secure their position and thrive in an ever-changing economic environment.

KEYWORDS:

Competitive Advantage, Market Leadership, Market Share, Positioning, Strategic Control.

INTRODUCTION

The management consulting company McKinsey & Co. created the GE/McKinsey Matrix in the 1970s as a method to assess General Electric's broad portfolio of SBUs. The matrix's purpose is to rank companies according to two composite industry attractiveness and industry strength characteristics. The GE/McKinsey Matrix outperforms the BCG strategy in two ways: first, it makes use of more thorough axes, and second, it has nine cells instead of four, allowing for better accuracy.A lot of the drawbacks of the BCG Box are solved by the McKinsey/GE Matrix, Seventeen. Firstly, market attractiveness replaces market growth as the dimension of industry attractiveness and takes into account a wider variety of variables in addition to the market growth rate[1], [2].

The "Advantage Matrix," which was created by the Boston Consulting Group in addition to the regular BCG, is a less well-known tool in this field. It likewise has the shape of a quadrant but uses "economies of scale" vs "differentiation" as its "axes" to contrast the two "alternatives." In essence, the first category refers to the typical BCG matrix technique, while the second is Porter's strategy of "differentiating" items in order to avoid direct competition with rivals. business volume. Although there are many options for scale economies in this situation, there are limited chances for differentiation. This is a typical instance of a business attempting to achieve economies of scale by dominating the market in terms of volume and hence costs. Consumer gadgets and mass-produced autos are two examples[3], [4].

Stalled Operations

Textiles and shipbuilding are two instances where there is no room for differentiation or economies of scale. Therefore, the primary strategy for competitiveness has been to cut factor costs by shifting to regions with cheaper costs, even to various developing nations. specialized industry. Branded foods and cosmetics are two examples of enterprises that profit from economies of scale and distinctiveness. Concentration and segment leadership are the major methods[5], [6].

Fragmented Industry

These businesses, like restaurants and job-shop engineering, also profit from differentiation, especially in the services sector, but not as much from economies of scale. Innovative distinctiveness may reduce competition. This matrix's benefit is that it draws attention to the BCG's underlying assumptions. It could also provide a clearer sense of the ideal course of action and the expected earnings, but it offers no sense of the cash flow, which was the original matrix's key characteristic[7], [8].

The Ansoff Matrix

According to Ansoff's product/market growth matrix, a company's efforts to expand are influenced by whether it promotes new or old goods in new or current markets. The Ansoff product/market matrix produces a list of potential growth plans that serve as a guide for the company strategy. These are in the bottom eighteenth percentile.The term "market penetration" refers to a growth strategy when a company concentrates on selling current items into current markets. Market penetration aims to accomplish the following four primary goals: Current product market share may be maintained or increased by a mix of aggressive pricing tactics, advertising, sales promotion, and perhaps increased funding for personal selling[9], [10].

Restructure an established market by eliminating competitors; this would need for a far more aggressive advertising effort, backed by a price strategy intended to make the market unappealing for rivals. Increase current consumers' use, for instance by implementing loyalty programs. In a market penetration marketing plan, "business as usual" is paramount. The company is concentrating on the markets and goods it is familiar with. It is probably well-informed about the demands of customers and competition. Therefore, it is doubtful that this tactic will need a large expenditure in fresh market research.

Market development is the term used to describe a business's growth strategy in which it aims to sell its current items in new markets. There are a variety of methods to implement this tactic, including:

1. Expanding the product's geographic markets, for as by exporting it to a new nation
2. Modified product specifications or packaging, for instance
3. New avenues of dissemination
4. Various price strategies to draw in various clients or develop new market niches.

Product development is the term used to describe a business's growth strategy in which it seeks to enter new markets using current goods. This approach could include the creation of new competences, and it necessitates that the company create changed goods that can appeal to current markets.The growth approach when a company advertises new items in new areas is known as diversification. The firm is entering markets where it has little to no expertise, thus this approach is inherently riskier. Therefore, before implementing a diversification plan, a company must have a clear understanding of the benefits and a realistic evaluation of the dangers. In 1998, Edward D. Popper of Bellarmine College and Bruce D. Buskirk of Pepperdine University started another effort to update the matrix. They added a third column labeled "Product - New Technology" to Ansoff's growth plan matrix for the high-tech industry. They contend that since the initial four-cell matrix makes the assumption that users are "acquainted with the items being presented, it was essential to enlarge it. Customers will join the market without product expertise in an increasing market even without technical innovation. But it hasn't been well received.

Internal Audit

As was already noted, the 5M framework focuses on matching a company's internal resources to those required for it to effectively execute its strategy for the market or markets it is operating in.In this sense, it is a "gap" analysis that shows where there are gaps in the available resources, enabling management to decide whether or not it is preferable to acquire and use the additional resources that are needed given the projected advantages and returns to the company. 5Ms, a fundamental paradigm for connecting strategy to internal organization in marketing, also plays a part in RBV and competency perspectives.

DISCUSSION

SWOT-Analysis

A SWOT analysis must be performed after researching the surroundings and the current circumstances. This study presents a comprehensive review of the firm's and its environment's strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and dangers. Note that these should be defined from the perspective of the customer; if the customer doesn't see something as a strength, then no matter how proud the business is of it, it is meaningless in a SWOT analysis. Strengths are the internal competencies that a company needs to have, and weaknesses are the competencies that the company lacks. The same holds true for a flaw. This is a marketing viewpoint on SW that few strategic management literatures have included. An appealing region for a marketing activity where a firm would have a competitive advantage is referred to as a marketing opportunity. An environmental hazard, on the other hand, is a risk brought on by an unfavorable trend or development in the environment that, in the absence of deliberate marketing activity, would cause the company's position to erode. The organization will utilize the results of the SWOT analysis to identify the key challenges that need to be addressed in the strategic marketing strategy. Following decisions on these topics, goals, strategies, and tactics will be defined.

Forecasting Sales andMarket

Market and product sales predictions must be created before achievable marketing goals can be defined. You may accomplish this by applying economic models, extrapolating from research data or sales from the previous year, using moving averages to address seasonality difficulties, or estimating, which is just another way of saying making a guess. One of the hardest things in business is making projections that are realistic and accurate. It necessitates the capacity to cognitively juggle a range of facts while maintaining candor about the company, item, or market you are predicting for. In times of economic uncertainty and inflation as well as in industries that see pronounced seasonal trends, such as fashion or holidays, it becomes even more difficult. It becomes extremely harder when you have a brand-new product, particularly if it creates a market where there wasn't one before.

Analysis, Implementation, Control, and Evaluation

The process of marketing control is keeping an eye on the marketing plan or plans as they develop and, when required, acting to modify the plans by altering the marketing mix. If an aim or goal specifies where you want to go, the plan determines the best way to get there, and control indicates if you are on the correct track, when you have arrived at your target, and what other paths are open in the event that your primary route is blocked.

Monitoring, assessment, and measurement are all part of control. Because resources are expensive and precious, it's crucial to manage marketing strategies. Control entails establishing guidelines. In management, we assess actual progress against the standards using variance analysis. When there is a major departure from the norm, it is reported for more research and remedial action. This procedure is the same in both accounting and marketing.

Establishing Goals

The parameters for choosing the goals, marketing strategy, and program will be provided by the market and sales predictions. Examples of specific assertions include: lowering the sales force's cost as a proportion of revenue, raising advertising awareness among the target demographic of adults between the ages of 18 and 25 by 5%, or raising public perception of the firm by 2%. A time frame must be established and these claims must be quantified. The SMART goals framework, whose treatment is beyond the purview of this book, is recommended study if you need to develop objectives.

Research And Strategy Development

The PMC should decide on their target markets after the PD has accepted the goals since it is sometimes hard to serve the whole market because it is frequently too vast. The strategic planning phase is where the STP method fits in.

Program For Strategic Marketing

The creation of a strategic marketing strategy and budget for each target market is the last stage of the process, which requires the board of directors of the organization's approval. The particular formulation of the marketing mix is started at this point. However, it is important to keep in mind that many of the ideas and many of the particular strategies apply as well whether they are aimed at products or services. In instance, choosing target markets and creating a marketing mix are key components of creating a marketing strategy for both products and services. It is preferable to speak about "tangibles" and "intangibles," according to Theodore Levitt, rather than "goods" and "services." Levitt continued by saying that, since service is crucial in-service sector assets, marketing a physical product is often more concerned with intangible features than with its physical sales. Along with the action plans, marketing strategies will be created that specify what is to be done, when, by whom, at what cost, and over how long. After the goals are established, the marketing managers must convert the strategic marketing plan, which has a duration of five to ten years, into the annual marketing plan, which has a timeframe of one year, and then hand it over to the operational marketers for implementation.

Targeting, Segmentation, And Positioning

You may remember that it was before mentioned that the notion of putting customer requirements at the center of the organization's decision-making is the core of the marketing concept. A STP, twenty-one process is at the core of the marketing idea. To begin, segment the market in an effort to better understand it. Markets are seldom straightforward; instead, they are complicated, made up of a wide range of purchasers with varying motivations and histories that result in a diversity of demands and desires. Markets are seldom homogenous due to a variety of macro-environmental conditions, differing degrees and forms of competition, and a number of other considerations. This implies that as marketers, we must create a strategy that takes into account a variety of elements, including heightened competition, better-informed and educated consumers, and, most significantly, shifting demand patterns. The need to segregate markets has mostly been driven by this latter issue. This results from the fact that customers may now more easily exercise their choice in the marketplace due to increased living standards and a tendency toward individuality. Observe how consumerism is growing in developing economies. China is an excellent example, where greater growth in western-style luxury and other fast-moving consumer products has been prevalent in the previous decade due to the introduction of more open market rules.

Procedure for STP

Market segmentation is the act of dividing a product or service's overall market into discrete subgroups or segments, where each sector may theoretically represent a unique target market that can be targeted using a specific marketing mix. Recognizing that distinct preferences, wants, and demand may vary considerably within the overall demand/market for a product serves as the foundation for segmentation and the ensuing tactics of targeting and positioning. It divides the whole market for a product or service into distinct groups of consumers, or segments. Within each sector, clients that have similar demand preferences are put together. STP typically;

1. Segment; ascertain the many types of clients that exist; then
2. TARGET; decide which individuals we should endeavor to help, and, lastly,
3. Position; put our segmentation into action by tailoring our goods and services to that market and announcing that we have chosen to stand out in that manner.

Process of Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning

There are three general methods to marketing, and each of them influences the STP requirements of the strategy. All customers are treated equally under the undifferentiated approach, and the business makes no attempt to appease any specific demographics. Typically, this only applies to commodities, when the product is standardized and no one rival can truly provide much more than the others. Segmentation is seldom ever necessary in this situation. In the focused approach, a company decides to concentrate on only one of the market's many segments, leaving the others to rivals. All low-cost or "budget" airlines use the same focused approach. As a result, they must have a thorough understanding of the specific market sector in which they are engaged, but not the whole market. Contrarily, the majority of scheduled airlines use the differentiated approach, offering a range of classes and tickets that are aimed toward convenience, prestige, etc. in an attempt to meet as many of the many demands of passengers as they can. They must be able to segment the market based on various client wants and comprehend the whole industry.

Segmentation

Simply put, segmentation is the process of splitting a market according to a set of predetermined criteria. However, by doing so, we are ignoring the basic purpose for which segmentation should be employed, namely, to get consumer knowledge. A corporation may segment along the lines of requirements needs it can fulfill, needs it cannot serve, and needs it wants to serve by thoroughly knowing the demands of prospective and present consumers in a market. The idea is not to immediately jump in using the tried-and-true geo-demographics, but rather to selectively segment using characteristics that have value in the context of the firm and the market it is operating in.It cannot be emphasized enough that accurate segmentation is the primary cornerstone of every marketing strategy and that, if it is badly designed or implemented, your plan is a house of cards ready to fall. In reality, it is impossible to deal with more than a few variables at once due to the fact that there may be a significant number of factors that may be utilized to distinguish customers of a certain product category. This necessitates making some difficult decisions regarding the variables that will be most helpful in differentiating between various consumer groups, i.e., we need to establish a rank order of the variables according to relevance, and that necessitates making the decision in context for each situation rather than relying on a generalized standard approach. As a result, it is important to look at the typical types of variables that may be utilized for segmentation. Geographical terms pertain to place and include things like region of the globe, continent, or nation, East/West/North/South/Central/Coastal/Upland, etc., as well as country size, area size, and type, such as urban, rural, or semi-urban, town, village, or city, and most crucially, temperature, such as hot, cold, humid, arid, or rainy

Personal characteristics including income, age, gender, education, profession, ethnicity, religion, nationality/race, language, and family size are examples of demographic factors. This is advanced by psychographic factors, which divide people into groups based on their values, attitudes, and way of life. Behavior is yet another categorization basis. Customers that are "brand loyal" tend to remain with their chosen brands even when a rival one is on sale. Smoking and drinking alcoholic beverages are two well-known examples of "heavy" and "light" consumers. Other often used behavioural segmentation criteria include purchasing status, buying role, and user type. Similar to behavior, use occasion segmentation concentrates on the context in which the product is used, for example, wedding gowns.

Segmentation based on advantages sought is a unique kind of behavioral segmentation that mostly ignores demographic explanatory factors, such as soap powder's improved whitening effects or the absence of color runs. When clients with similar demand patterns are grouped together and each group or segment differentiates from other market segments in terms of demand pattern, effective segmentation is accomplished. The segmentation basis should, in theory, result in segments that are:

1. Measurable/identifiable in this case, the base used should ideally make it simple to identify who is included in each section. Additionally, it should be able to assess the prospective clients in each market group.
2. Accessible Here, the foundation used should ideally result in the business's ability to access certain market goals via distinct marketing initiatives.
3. Meaningful Segments with distinct preferences or demands and evident differences in market behavior and responses to specially created marketing mixes must result from the base employed.
4. Significant The base chosen should provide segments that are big enough to be commercially and practically viable as separate market targets with a unique marketing strategy. Since it is a necessary condition for trying to identify and choose market targets, the third criteria is especially crucial for successful segmentation.

Targeting

The next step is choosing which section or segments to target. Generally, a number of elements should influence our decision. Although McDonald's has a solid reputation for providing quick, reliable quality food that is also family-friendly, it would be challenging to persuade customers that the restaurant now serves gourmet fare. McDonald's would thus be better suited focusing on families looking for reliable meal quality in upscale settings. The majority of businesses cannot satisfy ALL market demands, and this is the first crucial lesson in targeting. Thus, the definition of target marketing is the identification of the market groups thought to represent the most potential consumers of a company's goods. The benefits of target marketing are, specifically:

1. A market's marketing possibilities and unfilled "gaps" may be assessed and recognized more precisely. Depending on how consumers wish to perceive the goods, such gaps may be genuine or fictitious. For the former, product qualities can satisfy these requirements, whilst for the latter, these traits may need to be ingrained in buyers' thoughts via an effective advertising message.

2. Through the modification of the marketing mix, market and product appeals may be more expertly tailored to the requirements of the target consumer.
3. Marketing efforts might be focused on the market segment that offers the firm the best chance of achieving its objectives, whether those objectives are to maximize profit potential, ensure the best long-term position for the product, or any other suitable objective.

Positioning

Product positioning is a crucial next stage in creating a successful marketing strategy after segmentation and market targeting. Product positioning includes the idea of all business stakeholders and relates to how an organization differentiates itself in the market and how its goods and services are regarded by the target market as a whole. An organization needs a type of differentiated advantage to effectively compete in a target market. We know that this must take one of three formats—cost leadership, distinction, or focus based on Porter's work. A distinctive and, ideally, unique location in the market for the organization is created by positioning, which is the process of effectively communicating the organization's complete value offer to clients. In order for a company's core value proposition to be successful, it must be distinct from the competitors, relevant to the target market, sustainable, and easily understood by that market. This characteristic fits more naturally with distinction as a general strategic option, which contributes to the explanation of the proliferation of brands, goods, and services. In fact, distinction at the level of a product, brand, or company is increasingly recognized as a crucial component of building a long-term market position. As is the case with many services, the distinguishing factor may be perceived or real, depending on the physical characteristics and qualities of the product or the provider. Differentiation may occur with many marketing mix components; it can also entail characteristics that provide clients more advantages than the competitors, such as a distinctive brand identity or higher customer service.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, a comprehensive strategy that incorporates innovation, customer centricity, strategic agility, sustainability, and ethics is necessary to establish dominance in growing markets. Businesses may establish themselves as industry leaders, take advantage of development possibilities, and succeed in a cutthroat environment by properly matching their strategy with the specific requirements of growing markets. Adopting a proactive and forward-looking perspective is essential for building sustainable corporate success and gaining long-term market domination. In order to navigate the uncertainty and complexity of growing markets, strategic agility is crucial. Businesses must be prepared to quickly modify their plans in reaction to market changes, legislative modifications, and competitive challenges.

This flexibility guarantees that the company stays relevant and competitive despite shifting market trends. Furthermore, establishing supremacy in growing markets requires a dedication to ethical and sustainable practices. Businesses that exhibit CSR and environmental awareness are more likely to attract ethical customers and develop a favorable brand reputation.

REFERENCES:

[1] H. Muharam, R. J. Anwar, and R. Robiyanto, "Islamic stock market and sukuk market development, economic growth, and trade openness (The case of Indonesia and Malaysia)," *Bus. Theory Pract.*, 2019, doi: 10.3846/BTP.2019.19.

[2] M. L. T. Nguyen and T. N. Bui, "Stock market, real estate market, and economic growth: An ARDL approach," *Investment Management and Financial Innovations*. 2019. doi: 10.21511/imfi.16(4).2019.25.

[3] A. Leke and L. Signe, "Spotlighting opportunities for business in Africa and strategies to succeed in the world's next big growth market," *Africa's Untapped Bus. Potential Brookings Inst.*, 2019.

[4] H. Zhang and M. Song, "Do power distance and market information foster or impede performance of Chinese new ventures?: The moderating role of market growth," *Chinese Manag. Stud.*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/CMS-04-2018-0472.

[5] S. K. Guha, N. Samanta, A. Majumdar, M. Singh, and A. Bharadwaj, "Evolution of corporate governance in India and its impact on the growth of the financial market: an empirical analysis (1995-2014)," *Corp. Gov.*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/CG-07-2018-0255.

[6] U. Akpunonu, U. S. Muogbo, and E. O. Dim, "Stock Market and Economic Growth: An Empirical Analysis for Nigeria," *SSRN Electron. J.*, 2019, doi: 10.2139/ssrn.3402423.

[7] Z. Lian and G. van Ryzin, "Optimal Growth in Two-Sided Markets," *SSRN Electron. J.*, 2019, doi: 10.2139/ssrn.3310559.

[8] K. V. Pradeep and S. Hariharan, "Effect of valuation and growth: Stock market returns," *SCMS J. Indian Manag.*, 2019.

[9] I. Radikoko, S. A. Mutobo, and M. Mphoeng, "The Impact of Stock Market Development on Economic Growth: The Case of Botswana," *Int. J. Econ. Financ.*, 2019, doi: 10.5539/ijef.v11n12p149.

[10] R. P. Pradhan, M. B. Arvin, and J. H. Hall, "the nexus between economic growth, stock market depth, trade openness, and foreign direct investment: the case of asean countries," *Singapore Econ. Rev.*, 2019, doi: 10.1142/S0217590817500175.

CHAPTER 5
INVESTIGATING THE POSITIONING AND PERCEPTION FOR COMPANY

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Positioning and perception are crucial elements of a company's marketing strategy, shaping how consumers perceive its products, services, and overall brand. This abstract provides an overview of the concepts of positioning and perception and their significance in creating a distinct market identity. The abstract explores the process of positioning, wherein a company strategically places itself in the minds of consumers relative to competitors. It also delves into the role of perception, which refers to how consumers interpret and form opinions about the company and its offerings. Additionally, the abstract highlights the importance of effective communication, branding, and customer experiences in influencing consumer perceptions and fostering brand loyalty. Understanding and managing positioning and perception are essential for companies seeking to gain a competitive edge, build a positive brand image, and cultivate lasting relationships with their target market.

KEYWORDS:

Brand Image, Competitive Advantage, Consumer Perception, Differentiation, Market Positioning, Marketing Strategy.

INTRODUCTION

Positioning is a two-dimensional idea. A company's or product's competitive advantage may relate to its perceived image as well as to the qualities, traits, and advantages of the product itself. Products with positive connotations or perceived values tend to provide the most effective positioning outcomes. In fact, Ries and Trout contend that in the struggle for the attention of potential consumers, it is the perceived qualities and traits of an organization, a product, or a service that matter. Summarizing According to Rise and Trout, positioning may be accomplished using three key ideas[1], [2].This includes the idea that consumers' real perceptions or beliefs will have a direct impact on their choice to make a purchase. The position that an organization aims to attain and what consumers perceive should be same, or at least so similar that there is no noticeable discrepancy, if positioning is effective. Four crucial factors must be taken into account before a company can successfully position itself in the market: The 4Cs of positioning are clarity, consistency, credibility, and competitiveness[3], [4].

Clarity

Both the target market and the source of the competitive advantage must be made apparent in the positioning concept. Consistency - A consistent message and picture are required to get through the "noise" level of competing communications. Credibility - In the eyes of the target audiences, the viewpoint adopted must be believable. Competitiveness: Any successful market position requires a unique value offering that is unavailable from the opposition[5], [6].

Cognitive Mapping

According to Ries and Trout, "A positioning strategy results in the picture you want to paint in your customers' minds, the picture you want him/her to visualize of you and what you offer, in relation to the market situation and any competition you may have." It's critical to keep in mind while learning about product positioning that the whole product offeringrather than just the product itselfis what is being positioned. A company must first analyze the characteristics of the items that are already being supplied in the target market in order to develop a positioning strategy. Any company must comprehend its own situation in terms of the 4C framework. Additionally, it must determine the qualities that customers value most via marketing research. This gives fundamental data for a positioning strategy. There will usually be a number of factors to take into account, and many of them will have more to do with appearance than with physical traits. After determining the characteristics of goods or services that customers value, more survey work may be done to determine how much of these characteristics are present in the items already on the market. This is commonly shown on a product positioning map, also known as a perceptual map, which prioritizes companies based on how consumers perceive certain products[7], [8].

Choose Accenture if you want a profession where you can make a difference every day thanks to the range of chances and challenges. a setting where you may reach your full potential and advance your career while working with outstanding coworkers. The only location where you may benefit from our unmatched expertise while assisting our customers throughout the world in achieving high performance. If this describes your ideal workday, Accenture is the place for you. Boot Camp is where it all begins. Your intellect will be stimulated and your professional possibilities will be improved by these 48 hours. You will socialize with other students, eminent Accenture Consultants, and distinguished visitors. Two exciting days jam-packed with activities and intellectual challenges to help you learn what it actually takes to be a great performer in business. We can't tell you everything about Boot Camp, but be prepared for an intensive, fast-paced learning environment. It can be the hardest exam you've ever taken, but that's also the largest opportunity.

A perceptual map is often drawn in two dimensions[9], [10]. A very simple conceptual perceptual map based on the dimensions of quality and price. Although this perceptual map is quite basic, it makes use of the two most often plottedand maybe least helpfuldimensions in such mapping. Finding market gaps is one of the key applications of this kind of mapping. We must keep in mind that perceptual maps are drawn based on an individual's perspective, and what one person may deem to be a high-quality product may not be considered such by another. We must also keep in mind that these perceptions are not constant; the act of re-launching a product, re-branding an existing one, or introducing a new competitor all change how consumers in that market view the products and brands they use, particularly those that choose to position themselves against rivals.

Justification for Perceptual Mapping

The aspects of the overall product offering that are relevant to the client are plotted via perception mapping. Two brands are more likely to compete if they are located near to one another on a map. The likelihood that a brand will be favored increases with how near it is to the optimum position. Potential market niches might be found by identifying market gaps. By comparing the real position with the customer's ideal position, the marketer may get a general notion of how new items should be positioned or how existing products should be repositioned. This approach can be used to determine customers' ideal brand profiles. It is possible to create a profile of what the consumer wants and what the company provides by graphing the average scores for each product in relation to each feature. In order to minimize and simplify the number of dimensions, which is essential in brand management, there are often several consideration-making approaches used. One such strategy is factor analysis. When it comes to corporate branding and positioning, perceptual mapping may also be utilized to look at the relative positions of businesses and their goods.

Techniques for Positioning Products

The organization is aiming to carve out a special place for its product in the minds of stakeholders by adopting a positioning plan. A detailed grasp of the organization's capabilities and the demands of the target market is necessary for successful positioning in order to identify and successfully express a distinct competitive advantage. There are many positioning methods that an organization may apply, either alone or in combination.

DISCUSSION

Positioning in Relation to Attributes

This entails putting the product in a certain place based on characteristics including performance, durability, quality, dependability, style, and design.This entails claiming that the product has all or more of the key qualities of the rival product at an acquisition cost that is equivalent to or cheaper. This is an aggressive and hazardous positioning approach that takes on the competition head-on, but if successful, it also delivers significant rewards in terms of sales and profit. Production efficiency and creative marketing are necessary for the successful use of such a positioning strategy.This entails presenting the product as having fairly distinctive or different qualities while yet satisfying the same customer needs and providing the same advantages. In terms of replacement goods, this integrates certain elements of Porter's Five Forces model and may be used to get over persistent impediments to direct market entrance.positioning with respect to another product category

Positioning items in respect to rival options from a different but comparable product class is required. The idea behind this positioning strategy is to help the business draw in customers who may not otherwise have thought about buying a product of this kind. For instance, modern Clover advertising promotes the product as better than margarine and without the drawbacks of butter it is therefore "in the middle".

Repositioning of Products

Repositioning is necessary when performance suffers or is nonexistent. It entails altering the differential advantage, the target market, or both. There are four general repositioning tactics discussed.

1. Repositioning of the picture; nothing else is altered
2. Repositioning of the product: The whole product line is modified.
3. Repositioning of the product's intangible elements: These features are emphasized more.
4. Realistic Repositioning: Market and product changes are made.

Business Positioning

In many marketplaces, it is becoming more crucial to build a position for the organization as a whole rather than for specific goods. The importance of organizational positioning may be greatest in marketplaces where the organization and the product both play a significant role in consumer choice. This is especially true when acquiring services when the organization's reputation plays a significant role, such as when the likelihood of making a bad decision is considerable. A major role in drawing clients to the distribution location, such as supermarkets, are medical services, insurance, banking, and other financial services. Although customers will undoubtedly place items based on their knowledge and experience, the marketing campaign may either support or change that positioning. The marketing factors that the organization directly controls are part of the marketing mix. An organization may customize its value offer to satisfy the demands of its target market and accomplish its own specific goals by finding the right balance between these factors. The marketing mix is concerned with establishing and sustaining such positions, while the marketing strategy aims to find product positioning. A thorough grasp of the selected product position and how customers are likely to react to the various mix pieces are prerequisites for developing a successful marketing mix. To make sure that the marketing effort is establishing and sustaining the intended product position, it is necessary to continuously analyze customer perceptions of the product and of competitor products.

Branding

Brands are so much more than simply names and logos. They represent the culmination of a user's extensive, years-long interaction with the product. That experience is made up of a variety of positive, unfavorable, and neutral interactions, such as how a product works, an advertisement, a news article, a phone call, or a connection with a sales assistant, CIM. The necessity for organizations and people to have an identity that was simple to recognize by others is where branding in business first emerged. This first had a military use, but it quickly expanded to guilds and master artisans who produced very high-quality goods. This continued with manufacturers that could consistently produce high-quality items and who realized that if they could "badge" their products to make them instantly recognizable, they could draw in more clients and demand greater costs. Brands have become essential as a symbol of confidence and quality as a result of the growth of global commerce.

Although some of today's most well-known brand names were businesses before the branding notion as we now know it became the accepted standard, modern principles of branding evolved with marketing as a management activity. Branding is today a method used to "differentiate products and companies, and to build economic value for both the consumer and the brand owner." Today, a strong brand comes with a multitude of quality, value, and high performance signals and may even be an inherent part of its consumers' lives. A shift in focus inside organizations has coincided with the emergence of branding. In the past, businesses were primarily focused on producing commodities or services. The focus was firmly placed on effectiveness and quality. Customer happiness is increasingly considered as being at the core of success rather than perfection in manufacturing or selling, in large part due to rising competition making it tougher to attract and maintain consumers. The value of marketing has long been broadly understood in most organizations. As of late, brands are identified by their distinctive names, logos, packaging, and corresponding visuals. Their brand identity is created through this. The brand's principles are reflected in that identity, which is created to communicate them to prospective consumers. The clients' ability to develop an impression of the brand is then aided by their understanding of those principles.Companies spend millions on brand creation and protection because branded goods outperform non-branded goods in a way similar to differentiated vs generic product positioning. Today, a strong brand is seen as essential to business success since it offers the following important benefits.

1. A strong brand equity
2. Increasing levels of product awareness
3. The capacity to demand a high price

4. Less likelihood of pricing battles
5. Competitive advantage
6. A good foundation for creating long-lasting customer connections
7. Increased possibility of returning customers
8. In-store leverage
9. The brand name increases the likelihood of success for new items.

While the aforementioned are the primary benefits, there are more, and the precise combination of benefits will vary depending on the specifics of the brand-product-market situation in each instance. It will also rely on the amount of money involved in creating the brand; for a brand to be powerful and get access to the aforementioned benefits, it has to be created, developed, and supported. It is not sufficient to just affix a name and a logo to a product, and just as with goods, brands tend to deteriorate with time unless they are developed and modified. They need care and nurturing or else they will grow unsuitable.

One-tenth of the power required by our world might be supplied by wind by 2020. Already now, a significant share of the world's wind turbines depends on SKF's cutting-edge expertise. Up to 25% of the expenditures for producing energy are maintenance-related. Our technologies for online condition monitoring and automated lubrication enable a significant reduction in these. We contribute to the economic viability of producing cleaner, less expensive energy out of thin air. Industries may achieve performance gains that go above and beyond expectations by sharing our experience, knowledge, and innovation. As a result, we need the finest personnel to handle this task!

Knowledge Engineering's Influence

Strong Brand Equity

The connection that forms between a customer and the business offering the goods or services under the brand name is the foundation of brand equity. A customer who favors one brand over another essentially consents to do so on the basis of that brand's sense of value in particular. Consequently, a well-known brand increases the value of a product from both the standpoint of the consumer and the corporation. In fact, brands may be the most valuable assets a company has. A quick look at the balance sheets of major international companies will reveal that brand equity, which is typically represented by intangible goodwill, frequently exceeds fifty percent of asset value and, in some cases, such as Coca-Cola, exceeds seventy percent of asset value, far exceeding tangible assets.

It goes without saying that it is essential for prospective buyers to be aware of a product since that is the first step on their path to purchasing it. Building that awareness is one of the main purposes of advertising, and a readily recognizable brand makes it much easier to do. Here too, product and container design are crucial since they increase product visibility and reinforce brand values.Premium pricing and less vulnerability to price competition.

A strong brand identity enables a business to charge more for its goods. Consider the variations in trainer pricing. The widely renowned brands, e.g., Nike and Reebok are able to demand substantially higher prices for their goods than less well-known companies. Not only does having a well-known name matter; a brand's power also relies on the values that are associated with it in a certain market. Even though Marks & Spencer is a well-known company, they are unable to charge Nike pricing for their athletic shoes, despite the fact that the quality is identical. Without a brand, a company will be forced to compete on price alone in a commodity-based market. Some businesses, such those that produce generic drugs, consciously choose to take this stance, but it is at odds with the idea that marketing is a series of difficult management activities that will increase an organization's future performance. Marketers may feel intense pressure to compete on price in very price-conscious sectors, such as those for children's shoes and clothes, or during economic downturns, yet doing so may diminish the value of their brand. According to Aaker, the pressure to compete on price may even harm efforts to establish a brand since it eliminates one of the key drivers of brandingthe ability to stand out from the competitors and command higher pricing.

Advantage Over Rivals

A branded product makes purchasing easier by facilitating the customer's adoption of the product. If the marketing communications were successful, the prospective consumer would already be familiar with the brand and would not need to do as much information research as they could otherwise. Customers benefit from this because they save time and effort, and the branded product benefits since it is more likely to be chosen over unidentified or poorly regarded alternatives.

Creating Connections

The development of a brand is heavily dependent on how strong its connection with its customers is. Instead of the consumer and the brand's owner, who may even be a firm the client has never heard of, the connection is often one between the customer and the brand. There are several large corporations that own numerous brands without mentioning their ownership. For instance, despite owning a sizable number of beverage brands, bars seldom hear patrons say, "I'll have a Diageo please." Due to the significance of this brand connection, businesses have created a variety of relationship-building initiatives that encourage consumers to interact with their brands on a two-way basis. Club memberships, loyalty card programs, warranty registration, other merchandise like T-shirts and bags with the company name and emblem on them, and online activities are a few examples of these activities. Because of the World Wide Web, brand communities are expanding quickly and are becoming an important element of an increasing number of people's social life.

Brand communities are characterized by a set of shared attitudes towards, and beliefs about, the brand, rituals and traditions connected with the brand, and a sense of moral guardianship for the brand. Muniz and O’Quinn first coined the term and defined it as; "a specialized, non-geographically bound community, based on a structured set of social relations among admirers of a brand." Although brand communities may have both the company's biggest supporters and its biggest detractors, it is usually believed that a brand that has enough devoted customers to inspire a community to form around it has a lot of well-liked consumers. The response of devoted consumers to the introduction of a new Coca-Cola formula serves as an example of how brand communities can be quite territorial about their opinions and how crucial it is to comprehend them. Sales of the product fell so drastically as a result of their boycott that the original formula had to be restored. About three months were spent with new Coke.

Recurring Purchases

Most people naturally steer clear of undue danger. Purchasing anything has some risk financially since money might be lost if the item is not what is needed. Other hazards include ego risk, which arises if the product is unfavorable or derided by others, and physical risk, which arises if the product is dangerous. People are more inclined to purchase a trusted brand again since it lowers these risks after being purchased once and proven to be satisfying. A satisfied client who keeps making purchases is the outcome of a positive brand experience. In contrast, a negative encounter might result in a dissatisfied buyer who may very likely reject future products carrying this brand, regardless of how alluring the product might seem. Even worse, they can complain to their friends, family, and acquaintances about their negative experience, turning them off to the company. When considering the growth of a brand, attraction and retention are the two most important concepts.

Leverage In Retail

Large merchants have a lot of control on pricing and dictating terms of sale in several nations, most notably the UK. For instance, Tesco is one of the biggest businesses in the world and is much bigger than many of the suppliers. Tesco thus has a lot of purchasing power. Some branded goods, such as Heinz Tomato Ketchup, Heinz Baked Beans, Kellogg's cereals, Coca-Cola, and Kleenex tissues, are so well-known that even a major store like Tesco is unlikely to remove them off its shelves.

Success With New Products

Even the best and most inventive new items have difficulty competing in today's marketplace. Many business owners have introduced items that seemed to be fantastic but ended up failing. A robust brand increases the likelihood of success for that new product. Customers might apply the brand values they have come to associate with past goods from the same company to the current one. This lowers the danger of experimenting with something new, increasing the likelihood that the new product will be added to their list of evoked items and their likelihood of purchasing it. By using branding, you may effectively communicate how your product or service is superior to and distinct from that of your rivals. The key to effective branding is to highlight your advantages. Companies must be certain that they can always follow through on their commitments utilizing these qualities, sometimes known as "brand values." It is impossible to discuss branding in the depth and breadth that its importance in contemporary business requires within the framework of a broad introduction to marketing theory.

The Advertising Mix

Professor Neil Borden of the Harvard Business School highlighted certain firm performance acts in the early 1960s that, in his opinion, affected consumers' decisions to buy products or services. In a piece for the Harvard Business Review, Borden proposed that these behaviors created a "Marketing Mix". Following Borden's study, Professor E. Jerome McCarthy, a contemporaneous colleague at the Harvard Business School, proposed that the Marketing Mix might be broken down into four components: product, price, location, and promotion. The infamous four Ps, which are now perhaps the most well-known marketing phrase to date, were defined in this manner. As with every "mix," the idea is simple; it outlines a list of fundamental components whose ratios may be changed to make a number of "mixes" with various results, such as cement instead of mortar or bread instead of cake. In instance, use a cake mix to further demonstrate this. Eggs, milk, flour, and sugar are ingredients in all cakes. However, you may change the finished cake by adjusting the mix's component proportions. So, if the cake is already sweet, add more sugar; if it's fruity, add fruit; and if it's chocolatey, add chocolate.

The marketing mix follows exactly the same rules. You may change the offer you present to your consumer by changing the mix's component parts. Increase the emphasis on advertising and lessen the weight placed on pricing for a high-profile brand. For a luxury good, you have control over distribution, place, product quality, and most likely pricing. A marketing strategy, which is a blueprint for optimizing the use of the company's resources to maximize customer happiness and commercial advantages, is the outcome of coordinating the choices based on marketing research. This should bring to mind the marketing definitions we provided at the beginning of this discussion.

When comparing the marketing of physical objects against that of services, there are significant contrasts. The variations in goal include:

1. The buyer purchases are immaterial, and you get no new "ownership" as a result.
2. Branding becomes crucial since the service may be relied on the reputation of a single person or institution.
3. Comparing the quality of comparable services is more challenging since there isn't a list of features and traits that can be readily compared.
4. The service cannot be returned by the customer since purchasing something constitutes consuming it.

These variations imply the addition of additional components to the marketing mix; in reality, there are three new components, leading us to refer to this as the "7Ps" or extended marketing mix.Consider the service of car insurance. According to the 4Ps, you "own" the right to compensation if you have an accident of any kind. You are aware of the cost as well as any other costs that may apply, such as instalment payments. Either by the mail as an automatic renewal or directly through your contact with the insurance provider, the Place was completed.

Any of the methods further on in this list may have been used for promotion. But does that cover every factor that affected your choice to get auto insurance? People, Physical proof, and Process make up the extra "4Ps" of the "7P" expanded marketing mix for services. at the case of the vehicle insurance example, you may have talked to a salesman or broker at home; you may have also spoken to a customer care representative over the phone or at a branch office. You may have been awestruck by industry studies or experts, which may have even been found online, by the caliber of the papers you got, or even by the voice or appearance of the individual you interacted with. These all begin to consider physical evidence, which often overlaps with the Place and People components.

Finally, it's possible that in a future where remote buying is mostly done via electronic channels like the internet and telecommunications, it's crucial for processes to reply to customers quickly, accurately, and reliably. To understand how important processes are within the extended marketing mix, you simply need to consider how often you leave a website when it is sluggish. The term "services cape" is also used to describe the aesthetic appearance of a business from the outside as well as the inside, as well as the general appearance of the employees. This approach to marketing emphasizes the interconnectedness of various 7Ps components when seen from the perspective of the customer. As the developed countries shift farther away from industrial significance and toward service-oriented economies, service marketing has been fast gaining momentum in the broad spectrum of marketing and in particular as a focus of marketing education. This is especially evident in emerging markets, as the transition to services results in a shift away from consumer choices based on physical FABs and toward intangible service components. With a focus on customer satisfaction and feedback, experiential marketing is quickly gaining ground in various sectors. As a result, the term "Managing the evidence" has come to be used to describe the process of alerting clients that the service encounter has been effectively completed by us and how it went for you. It is best done subtly, for as by giving descriptions or instances of both outstanding and bad customer service that may be used as a benchmark. The basic theory is that if a consumer does not have a solid baseline for comparisons, they could not fully see the value of the service.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, a great marketing plan must include positioning and perception. Companies may create a strong market identity, win over customers' trust, and gain a competitive edge by strategically placing their brand and actively controlling consumer perceptions. To influence favorable consumer impressions and promote brand loyalty, businesses must invest in effective communication, provide excellent customer experiences, and maintain a strong brand image. Businesses are better positioned to prosper and expand in the dynamic and constantly shifting business environment when positioning and perception are prioritized as vital aspects of their marketing operations. For positioning tactics to be adjusted and any bad views to be immediately addressed, it is crucial to pay attention to market changes and listen to consumer input. Companies can discover areas for development and embrace possibilities for growth thanks to ongoing monitoring and analysis.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. G. Frank, L. S. Dalenogare, and N. F. Ayala, “Industry 4.0 technologies: Implementation patterns in manufacturing companies,” *Int. J. Prod. Econ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.ijpe.2019.01.004.

[2] M. Owusu Ansah and L. Louw, “The influence of national culture on organizational culture of multinational companies,” *Cogent Soc. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/23311886.2019.1623648.

[3] K. J. Lee, “The effects of social responsibility on company value: a real options perspective of Taiwan companies,” *Econ. Res. Istraz.* , 2019, doi: 10.1080/1331677X.2019.1679213.

[4] A. Merendino and R. Melville, “The board of directors and firm performance: empirical evidence from listed companies,” *Corp. Gov.*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/CG-06-2018-0211.

[5] A. Asrori, M. I. Amal, and A. P. Harjanto, “Company characteristics on the reporting index of corporate social and environmental disclosure in Indonesian public companies,” *Int. J. Energy Econ. Policy*, 2019, doi: 10.32479/ijeep.7990.

[6] Y. Yuniningsih, T. K. Pertiwi, and E. Purwanto, “Fundamental factor of financial management in determining company values,” *Manag. Sci. Lett.*, 2019, doi: 10.5267/j.msl.2018.12.002.

[7] E. Alkhatib, H. Ojala, and J. Collis, “Determinants of the voluntary adoption of digital reporting by small private companies to Companies House: Evidence from the UK,” *Int. J. Account. Inf. Syst.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.accinf.2019.06.004.

[8] O. Claudia, “Some Insights on the World’s Most Innovative Companies and their Defining Characteristics,” *Stud. Bus. Econ.*, 2019, doi: 10.2478/sbe-2019-0027.

[9] F. Y. Nawangsari and I. Iswajuni, “The effects of auditor switching towards abnormal return in manufacturing company,” *Asian J. Account. Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/AJAR-05-2019-0040.

[10] R. B. Putra, F. Yeni, H. Fitri, and D. J. Melta, “The Effect Of Board Of Commissioners Ethnic, Family Ownership And The Age Of The Company Towards The Performance Of The Company Lq45 Company Listed In Indonesia Stock Exchange,” *ADI J. Recent Innov.*, 2019, doi: 10.34306/ajri.v1i2.27.

CHAPTER 6
CONSUMER BEHAVIOUR: CAPTIVE PRODUCT PRICING

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Captive product pricing is a strategic pricing technique in which a company offers a core product at a lower price to attract customers and then sells related complementary products or services at a higher price. This abstract provides an overview of captive product pricing as a powerful marketing strategy to increase sales and profitability. It explores the concept of captive products and their role in enhancing customer engagement and loyalty. The abstract delves into the psychological aspects of consumer behavior, such as the endowment effect and the power of bundling, that drive the success of this pricing approach. Additionally, it discusses the potential challenges and ethical considerations associated with captive product pricing. Understanding the dynamics of captive product pricing empowers businesses to leverage the strategy effectively and optimize revenue generation while maintaining customer satisfaction.

KEYWORDS:

Bundle Pricing, Captive Product, Complementary Product, Discount Strategy, Main Product, Pricing Strategy.

INTRODUCTION

A product may be priced in a variety of ways. Twenty-five provides a visual breakdown of the main possibilities. Let's have a look at a few of them and attempt to determine the best course of action in different circumstances. When a product or service is distinctive, premium pricing is employed. This strategy is used when there is a significant and long-lasting competitive advantage. Cruises, Jimmy Choo shoes, Haute Couture clothing, and art are good examples. The goal of penetration pricing is to maximize market share acquisition in a short period of time. In this, the cost of goods and services is intentionally reduced to increase market share. The price is often raised after this is accomplished. Both Sky TV and France Telecom used this strategy[1], [2].

Affordable Prices

As the name suggests, this is a straightforwardly cheap price. Low manufacturing and marketing costs are maintained. In supermarkets, you may often find budget brands of soups, pasta, etc. Keep in mind that maintaining such pricing strategies requires a strict organizational control of costs, which is at odds with the marketing notion since businesses that use economy pricing are often product- or production-oriented[3], [4].

Price Gauging

In order to maximize your financial return, price skimming involves setting a high price since you have a significant competitive advantage and buyers must pay that price in order to buy the goods. However, due to the tremendous incentives for rivals, such an edge is seldom, if ever, long-lasting. In the 1970s, makers of digital timepieces used a skimming strategy. additional marketing tactics and price strategies are put into practice once additional manufacturers were lured into the market and the watches were made at a cheaper unit cost[5], [6].

Emotional Pricing

When a marketer wants a customer to react emotionally rather than logically, they adopt this strategy. For instance, "price point perspective" would have 99p instead of £1 and £6.99 instead of £7. at reality, you can see instances of this every day at local and high-end stores[7], [8].

Pricing for various goods

When a variety of goods or services are offered, the prices reflect the advantages of certain selections. Car washes are one example. A simple wash may cost £4, a wash and wax £6, and the whole package £10. Strengths, characteristics, and pack sizes are sometimes priced in proportion to other products in "families" of products when there are many product options. Pricing options for products. In this case, the merchant tries to get customers to spend more money after they start to purchase. 'Extras' that are optional raise the cost of the item or service overall. Airlines, for instance, may charge extra for things like securing a window seat or booking a row of seats adjacent to one another. This has also evolved into a practice known as "salami selling," in which a product of poorer quality is purposefully supplied to pique buyers' attention. Once they begin to purchase, more "slices" of salami are added to boost the worth of the total transaction. In the 1970s and 1980s, sellers of financial products often used this strategy. Additionally, it somewhat depends on a customer's reluctance to cancel an order even when they feel uncomfortable[9], [10].

DISCUSSION

Companies will impose a higher price where they have the consumer's attention. For instance, a producer of razors will set a low price and make up the difference in profit by selling the only kind of blades that would fit the razor. PC printers and their ink and toner cartridges are a famous example of this. By weight, printer ink is the priciest liquid on the earth, costing about 10 times as much as the most luxurious designer fragrances. Pricing for product bundles. In this case, the vendors bundle many things together. Additionally, it helps to provide trial samples to customers or shift out-of-date products. The most prevalent kind of promotional pricing is the BOGOF deal, which is available daily online and on the high street.

Where there are price differences around the globe, geographic pricing is clearly present. For instance, when rarity value or delivery expenses result in price increases. Microsoft formerly made considerable use of this pricing. With the introduction of the internet and the ensuing ability to shop from almost anywhere, its usage is starting to wane. Value pricing is a strategy used when outside forces, such as the recession or greater competition, compel businesses to provide 'value' goods and services in order to maintain sales, as in the case of value meals at McDonald's and value brands at Tesco.

Place

Place encompasses the whole distribution channel and takes into account the entire value chain, from the raw materials to the final consumer. It is not simply about the point of sale. As a result, it is one of the most functionally diverse sectors of marketing and one of the most important in terms of the expanded marketing mix's processes component. Therefore, while thinking about location, we need to consider a channel of distribution, which is made up of a group of institutions that carry out all of the tasks required to transfer a product and its name from production to consumption, according to Bucklin. Wholesalers, agencies, merchants, the Internet, international distributors, direct marketers, and many more entities fall under the category of intermediates.

Intermediaries of the Channel - Wholesalers

They purchase from manufacturers and resell to retailers, taking ownership to the items in the process. This process involves breaking down "bulk" into smaller packets for resale by a retailer. They provide storage spaces. A wholesaler often assumes certain marketing-related duties. Many companies utilize their own sales strategies and develop their own brochures.

Intermediaries of the channel - agents

Usually, an agent will get a producer an order and charge a commission on the sale or get a retainer with an incentive for sales. Unless they are a "stockiest agent" who will keep consignment stock, i.e., will store the stock, they typically do not gain title to the products; instead, the manufacturer retains ownership. When products, such as food, must reach a market quickly after an order is made, this strategy is employed. Training agents may be highly costly. Due of the physical distances involved, it is challenging to maintain control over them. They are challenging to inspire.Retailers often have far more of a personal connection with the customer.Their consumers will anticipate seeing a wide variety of items and brands that are in the competition since they will own various other brands and products. When a consumer makes a large retail purchase, merchants often give credit to the customer, such as electrical wholesalers or travel agencies, which must be taken into account when setting prices. Retailers will set the product's ultimate selling price but will also handle the product's marketing themselves or, increasingly, will work with the manufacturer to coordinate a joint marketing campaign. Today, most merchants, like ASDA, TESCO, and Sainsbury, have strong brands of their own.

Internet-based channel intermediaries

Through the Internet, we have access to a diverse and geographically scattered consumer base. This is its fundamental advantage; it makes things more accessible to a larger audience at a reasonable price, which has encouraged the growth of specialized and niche enterprises that would not be viable without the internet as a means of communication and order placement. Broadband and satellite technology have made it possible to offer goods like TV, movies, software, interactive games, and more.

Product

It said that a product is anything that meets the demands of the client. As a result, these products vary in how they function, how users use them, how they are disseminated, and at whom they are targeted. In marketing, we often pair items that mostly meet the same requirements with one another. But keep in mind that there are several variations on product classification. Different marketplaces have chosen descriptors of their own. Products and services may be divided into a number of categories. Many are purchased by both individuals and companies. 3. Because emergency items are seldom bought but are always required right away, their costs may be greater because clients value them highly at that particular moment.

Customer risk is larger when purchasing shopping goods than when purchasing convenience items. They could cost more, or perhaps the cost of a defective product is significant. Due to the fact that the buyer is heavily engaged in the decision-making process, these items are sometimes referred to as high-involvement purchases. Specialty items are uncommon, sometimes very costly, and frequently found in specialized markets. Fast moving consumer goods are a kind of convenience item, however in this instance, viewed at from the retailer's point of view, they may be high-risk products, therefore buyers may require substantial emotional support and encouragement from the provider before they purchase. They are the goods that swiftly disappear off the shelves and need regular replenishment.

Because they are intended to endure for many years, capital goods are durable items. They are often expensive, seldom purchased, and have a significant potential danger. As a result, these purchases are often made with considerable care. Smaller capital products known as accessories help the firm.

They often provide a reduced financial risk to a corporation since they are less expensive. Goods that will be processed and supplemented by the company are known as raw materials. They join together to form the completed product. They often come in generic forms, such as iron ore and crude oil.

Although parts, components, and subassemblies have previously been produced, they are not final products. Businesses purchase them to include in their own goods. Supplies are non-durable little products that are essential to the business's proper operation. A firm receives services from a third party, often to free up its time to focus on effectively managing its own operations.

The Masters in Management program at London Business School is intended for graduates with less than a year of full-time postgraduate job experience. It will help you develop new ways of thinking and provide the groundwork for a successful business career. The curriculum was created with recruiters' input to provide you the essential skills that prestigious organizations want. You will acquire the business knowledge and skills necessary to expand your career options and set yourself apart from the competition during 11 months of full-time study. Applications for entrance in September 2011 are currently being accepted.

A product's life cycle

The Product Life-cycle notion is another crucial idea to comprehend in order to comprehend the marketing strategy for items. Every product, it is stated, has a lifespan; it is introduced, develops, and eventually dies. It should be noted that this comparison has several limitations. For example, while it is doubtful that jeans would disappear as a product, they will evolve to meet changing customer demands. In fact, the recent appearance of "Jeggings," or leggings that resemble jeans, is proof of the market's shifting requirements and how items may adapt to them rather than disappear.

Despite its dubious veracity, the PLC idea provides managers with a useful'model' for managing goods and taking overall strategy into account. This is especially true for goods that are just entering their growth or decline periods, in which case the other components of the marketing mix must be adjusted to prevent a premature strategy. Twenty-seven overlays the strategic possibilities regarded as usual after illuminating the PLC's main idea in the top graphic. However, the most crucial feature of the PLC idea is that, even under ideal circumstances, they often don't really exist. Most large brands have maintained their dominance in most areas for at least 20 years. Thus, continuity characterizes the dominant PLC, that of the market-dominating brand leaders. Of course, one might argue that this is a prolonged "maturity" period. As a result, the PLC may be valuable as a description but not as a prediction, and it should typically be strictly under the marketer's control. The crucial fact is that planning cycles for the organizations involved are often far longer than those for products or brands in many industries. For the majority of marketers, it thus has little real-world value. Even if the PLC is there for them, their plans will still be focused on the portion of the curve where they now are, and their perception of that portion of the curve will very probably be 'linear' and not cover the whole range from growth to decline.

PLC drawbacks

Product categories' lifecycles against individual brands'limited usefulness as a predictoronly applicable to current items in current markets.

Promotion

This encompasses all of the ‘marketing communications' instruments at the marketer's disposal. Similar to the marketing mix, marketing communications has a separate "promotions mix," where various components of the promotions mix may be combined to provide a distinctive campaign. These are the components of the promotion mix:

1. Selling personally.
2. Promotion of sales.
3. Public affairs.
4. Email marketing.
5. Exhibitions and trade shows.
6. Advertising.
7. Sponsorship.

In regard to the plan created using STP, the components of the promotional mix are merged to create a cohesive campaign. Let's take a closer look at each of the various elements of the promotional mix. Keep in mind that all of the components are "integrated" to create a particular communications strategy.

Selling Personally

Personal selling is a successful strategy for maintaining close-knit client connections. Acting on behalf of the company is the salesperson. They often have extensive training in the methods and strategies of personal selling. Personal selling is very convincing and is often employed in industries like cosmetics where personal preference influences the buying decision. Since you desire to be like the celebrity, you'sell' yourself the advantages of the thing they are recommending. This is how using celebrity endorsements in marketing communications may be seen as an introduction to subtle personal selling.

Promotion of Sales

With the exception of advertising, personal selling, and public relations, sales promotions are sometimes considered to be all promotions. The list also includes contests, giveaways, free accessories, initial deals, and couponing.

Public Affairs

According to the Institute of Public Relations, public relations is "the deliberate, planned, and sustained effort to establish and maintain mutual understanding between an organization and its publics." PR may be divided into two types of communications: proactive communications intended to foster understanding, and reactive communications intended to dispel misunderstanding.

Reactive campaigns are often the consequence of the necessity to combat an occurrence that has resulted in bad opinions about the organization, such as an aircraft disaster, not enough helicopters for your army, etc. Pro-active campaigns are long-term endeavors to build on the basic principles of the organization.

Direct Selling

Through technology, direct marketing applies STP by concentrating heavily on database-based customer targeting. Originally based on direct mail, when creative firms collaborate with marketers to create a letter with a highly targeted message. The mailing is distributed, and the feedback is carefully analyzed to customize subsequent actions. Today, direct marketing includes techniques like telemarketing, cataloging, door-to-door leafleting, e-mail marketing, broadcast faxing, and more. As a result, direct marketing is a significant branch of marketing in and of itself.

Exhibitions and trade shows

Trade shows and exhibitions are intended to raise awareness and promote trial, mostly via direct interaction between a provider and a client. They provide businesses the chance to connect with both the trade and the consumer in settings other than conventional sales meetings. They are often used in B2B marketing, particularly for items with an engineering or technical focus.

Advertising

Advertising is a "paid for" kind of communication that uses a communications medium. It may be either bulk, or directly, or targeted. In order to elicit a reaction from the target audience, it is used to shape attitudes, spread awareness, and disseminate information. Newspapers, magazines, journals, television, the movies, outdoor advertising, and radio were some examples of traditional advertising "media." Direct media includes the internet, mobile phones, e-mail, and more.

Sponsorship

An organization might pay to be linked with a certain event, cause, or image via sponsorship. Businesses will support sporting events like the Olympics or Formula One. The characteristics of the event are then linked to the sponsoring company. The promotional mix components are then combined to create a distinct yet cohesive campaign.

Physical Proof

The tangible aspect of a service is the physical proof. Since a service technically lacks any physical characteristics, customers often depend on external indications from the physical world. Physical evidence is abundant during athletic events. Your team's logos are emblazoned on the tickets, and the players are decked out in sponsored clothing. The stadium itself may be magnificent and have a thrilling energy. Your seats are comfortable and close to amenities like food, drink, restrooms, and a team shop since you traveled there and swiftly found adjacent parking. Some businesses, such huge banks and insurance firms, as well as tourist sites and resorts, package delivery services, and postal services, rely extensively on tangible proof as a marketing communication tool.

People

The most crucial component of any product or service is the person. Aspects of the customer experience are changed to match the "individual needs" of the person consuming it. Services are often developed and consumed simultaneously. Most of us can recall an instance when a tour, vacation, or lunch at a restaurant was enhanced or marred by the personal treatment provided by certain people. individuals purchase from individuals they like, thus all staff members need to have top-notch attitudes, abilities, and appearances. In the context of the marketing mix, individuals may enhance an experience in a number of ways, including via training, personal selling, and customer service.

Training

To maintain a high level of individualized service, all staff members who interact with customers need to be taught and developed. Training should start as soon as a person begins working for a company, during an induction that introduces them to the company's culture for the first time and provides them with information on daily regulations and procedures. In reality, the majority of training takes place either "on-the-job" or "off-the-job," with training for bar workers being an example of on-the-job training. Off-the-job training takes occur at a school, training facility, or conference space.

Selling on the side

There are several types of salespeople. There is the salesman who delivers the goods, such as with fast food or mail. The order taker is another, and they might be "internal" or "external." An order would be taken by the internal salesperson over the phone, through email, or in person. The outside salesperson would be on the job site. In both situations, hardly much selling is done. There is the missionary who spreads the gospel while cultivating client loyalty with the long-term objective of generating orders. The fourth sort of salesman is a technical sales engineer, for example. They are able to advise clients on the optimal buy based on their requirements thanks to their extensive expertise. Then there are vendors who are inventive. Innovative vendors try to entice customers to place a purchase. The highest incentives are often provided for this difficult sale. The ability is to determine a customer's demands and persuade them that they must place a purchase in order to meet a previously undiscovered need.

Consumer Assistance

Customer services offered knowledge, for example, on choosing financial services, technical help, for example, by providing guidance on IT and software, and coordination of the customer interface, for example, by supervising service engineers or interacting with a salesperson. The personality and attitude of such individuals are crucial to a business, thus the procedures they follow and their training are crucial.

Process

There are three basic points of view when discussing the marketing process.

1. Some people see processes as a way to get something done. For instance, a corporation may execute a marketing planning process to get a 30% market share.
2. Another perspective is that there are several processes involved in marketing that may be combined to form a larger marketing process. Telemarketing and Internet marketing are two examples of such processes.
3. Another perspective is that marketing processes that assess whether marketing goals have been metare utilized to regulate the marketing mix.

Although all opinions are reasonable, they are not very customer-focused. Process is a service component that involves the consumer experiencing an organization's offering for the purposes of the marketing mix. The easiest way to think about it is as something that your consumer engages in periodically. Markets: at every step of the procedureDeliver value using the whole marketing mix. Process, tangible proof, and people improve services. The mix may be changed based on feedback. Customers are kept, and additional items or services are provided to them and advertised. The procedure itself may be customized to meet the demands of other customers who are concurrently receiving a comparable service. Essentially, processes have inputs, throughputs, and outputs. Each level gains value via marketing.

Product Administration

A product's planning, forecasting, and marketing at every step of the PLC are the responsibilities of product management, an organizational role. Product management, which focuses on inbound marketing, and product marketing, which focuses on outbound marketing, are two distinct but complimentary strategies that both aim to increase sales revenues, market share, and profit margins. A great resource for learning more about this difference is the website Pragmatic Marketing. Depending on the organizational structure of the firm, the position of product management encompasses a wide range of tasks from strategic to tactical, and in the majority of organizations, a product manager is responsible for these tasks.

In certain technology-based firms, product managers may be in the engineering department, or they may even be engineers with additional marketing expertise, or vice versa. Product managers might be a formal component of the marketing department. In certain businesses, the product management department serves as the focal point for several operations centered on the product. In other cases, it is only one of many requirements that must be met before a product may be sold. As a result, product management often plays an inter-disciplinary role, bridging gaps between teams with varying levels of competence inside the organization, particularly between engineering- and business-oriented teams. Product management, which is a part of marketing, is a crucial channel for communication between organizational divisions. For instance, product managers often convert the business goals for a product defined by marketing or sales into technical specifications, taking into account the results of marketing research carried out to identify client wants.

While associated with the whole PLC, product management's major emphasis is on advancing new product development. The strategic purpose of product management is to be the messenger of the market, sending information to the departments that require market data to make choices. As a result, it is crucial to the development and success of a company. Product Management locates a market opportunity, gauges the size of the opportunity to ensure that it will provide a profit, and then communicates this to the rest of the company. The executive team receives market opportunity information from product management together with a business case for pursuing the opportunity, including financial projections and risk analysis. In the form of market needs, product management conveys the issue to product development. One positioning document for each kind of buyer is used to interact with Marketing Communications by Product Management. By designing a sales process and providing the necessary sales tools, product management supports the sales effort and enables customers to choose the appropriate items and alternatives.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Captive product pricing is a potent marketing tactic that takes advantage of consumer behavior and psychological biases to boost sales and customer engagement. When properly implemented, this strategy may benefit both companies and consumers. Companies may use captive product pricing to build long-term client connections, gain a competitive advantage, and promote sustainable market development by carefully creating price strategies, bundling pertinent offers, and upholding ethical standards. Businesses must, however, take into account any difficulties and moral ramifications that might arise from captive product pricing. Customers can feel pressured or imprisoned into buying more expensive supplementary items, which might create unfavorable views and reduce brand loyalty. Avoiding alienating clients requires maintaining openness and making sure they see real value in the bundled services.

REFERENCES:

[1] C. L. Williams, A. M. Caraballo-Rodríguez, C. Allaband, A. Zarrinpar, R. Knight, and J. M. Gauglitz, "Wildlife-microbiome interactions and disease: exploring opportunities for disease mitigation across ecological scales," *Drug Discovery Today: Disease Models*. 2018. doi: 10.1016/j.ddmod.2019.08.012.

[2] Y. Chao, G. Tan, and A. C. L. Wong, "All-units discounts as a partial foreclosure device," *RAND J. Econ.*, 2018, doi: 10.1111/1756-2171.12220.

[3] O. Ahmed and M. Kahf, "Customer satisfaction comparison between islamic and conventional banks: Case study of Qatari banks," *J. King Abdulaziz Univ. Islam. Econ.*, 2018, doi: 10.4197/Islec.31-2.2.

[4] V. B. Cowl, S. L. Walker, and Y. F. Rambaud, "Assessing the efficacy of deslorelin acetate implants (Suprelorin) in alternative placement sites," *J. Zoo Wildl. Med.*, 2018, doi: 10.1638/2017-0153R.1.

[5] S. Pramila and A. P. Lipton, "Disease management options in captive reared clownfish, amphiprion sebae bleeker 1853: Application of chemotherapy, marine natural products and autogenous vaccines," *Asian Fish. Sci.*, 2018.

[6] L. Downes and P. Nunes, "Finding your company's second act: How to survive the success," *Harv. Bus. Rev.*, 2018.

[7] A. Maki, T. Tsutsumoto, and Y. Miyauchi, "Fundamental research on the maneuverability of the underwater vehicle having thrust vectoring system," *J. Mar. Sci. Technol.*, 2018, doi: 10.1007/s00773-017-0487-1.

[8] S. PRAMILA, "Disease Management Options in Captive Reared Clownfish, Amphiprion sebae Bleeker 1853: Application of Chemotherapy, Marine Natural Products and Autogenous Vaccines," *Asian Fish. Sci.*, 2018, doi: 10.33997/j.afs.2018.31.3.004.

[9] A. Sheykhi, N. Sheikhi, S. Charkhkar, and G. N. Brujeni, "Detection and Characterization of Circovirus in Canary Flocks," *Avian Dis.*, 2018, doi: 10.1637/11776-120417-RegR.

[10] A. R. Hall, "Class Jurisprudes: Free Labor Ideology and For-Profit Penal Labor in Gilded Age Courts," *Law Soc. Inq.*, 2018, doi: 10.1111/lsi.12257.

CHAPTER 7
EXPLORING THE COMPONENTS OF INTEGRATED MARKETING COMMUNICATIONS

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Integrated Marketing Communications (IMC) is a strategic approach that combines various marketing communication tools and channels to deliver a consistent and unified message to target audiences. This abstract provides an overview of Integrated Marketing Communications as a powerful marketing strategy that enhances brand visibility, customer engagement, and overall marketing effectiveness. The abstract explores the components of IMC, including advertising, public relations, direct marketing, sales promotions, and digital media, which work synergistically to create a cohesive and impactful marketing campaign. It also delves into the benefits of IMC, such as increased brand recall, improved customer trust, and optimized return on investment. Additionally, the abstract highlights the challenges and best practices in implementing IMC in today's rapidly evolving business environment. Understanding the significance of Integrated Marketing Communications equips businesses with the tools to create seamless and compelling brand experiences, fostering long-term relationships with their target market.

KEYWORDS:

Advertising, Brand Consistency, Communication Channels, Digital Marketing, Direct Marketing, IMC Planning.

INTRODUCTION

These are messages, and associated media are increasingly being utilized today to connect with a market, i.e., they are messages from businesses to their consumers regarding their brands, goods, or in the case of corporate communications, the business itself. In a very practical sense, every marketing communication action is a sort of promotion, which means it makes an effort to raise awareness of the brand, product line, and/or business in some manner. In terms of marcoms, we traditionally distinguish between "above-the-line" activity and "below-the-line activity," where below-the-line activity is broadly categorized as non-media advertising. In essence, communication that is considered to be "above the line" occurs when an advertisement is submitted to a newspaper and a commission is paid to the advertising agency to display the item. This is referred to be "-the-line" activity if no commission has been paid, as may be the case with a news release for public relations, a trade show, or a sponsored sporting event[1], [2].

Mix of Marketing and Communications

Advertising, personal selling, sales promotion, and publicity/public relations are all considered forms of promotion. Advertising is a sort of anonymous mass communication that is supported by a clear sponsor. A vendor who engages in personal selling tries to convince a prospective customer to buy something. Short-term actions that motivate purchasers to act quickly include giving out free samples and discounts, among other things. Publicity/public relations is an impersonal, unpaid kind of communication that often takes the shape of editorial or journalistic coverage[3], [4].

The first three factors are within the company's control, while the fourth one, publicity/public relations, is mostly out of their hands. Companies may have some influence on the media attention they get by managing the timing of news releases. Together, these marketing initiatives make up the promotional or communications mix, with different weights placed on each component depending on the nature of the product or service, customer attributes, and available resources from the business[5], [6]. The promotional mix is influenced by a company's size, strengths and limitations in its industry, and management style. Other components of the marketing mix include other communications components that must be matched with promotion. In terms of consistency and clarity, coordination of the product communication, including brand name, package design, and trade-marks, is essential. These product cues together send a message about the whole product offering. Equally, pricing may convey many messages depending on the situation, particularly when it comes to supporting impressions of quality or exclusivity/luxury. Why else would consumers pay more for things from Harrods or Harvey Nichols if the location where the items are sold likewise provides no value for communications? In the retail industry, certain stores do indeed have "personalities" that customers identify with the goods they sell, and the goods themselves benefit from the "halo effect" of the stores where they are sold. Burberry, the upscale A London shop discovered this to their cost when down market "chavs" imitated and used their trademark check design, endangering their sales to their typical rich customers[7], [8].

Process of Marketing Communication

excellent marketing requires excellent communication. The quantity, quality, and response of the information that buyers get affects how they perceive the market's options. To facilitate the decision-making process before a purchase, there must be a smooth information flow between the vendor and the customer. A good marketing communications system also enables customer feedback to the vendor. Some consumers have a psychological tendency to purchase goods and services that are 'new' to the market. A normal distribution may be used to represent this propensity. Some individuals get a lot of joy out of buying new things and dominating the market. Such individuals regard risk as being minimal, and they really like the thrill and danger that come with investing in cutting-edge, novel items. According to Everett Rogers, these individuals are referred recognized as "innovators" and make up around 2.5% of the population[9], [10].

The next demographic that has a propensity to purchase novel goods is referred to as the "early adopter" demographic and makes up around 13.5% of the market. These are still very daring consumers, and having access to cutting-edge new things makes them valuable right now. They still regard danger as being little, but they are a little more risk averse than the 'innovator' group. The majority of the prospective market, or 64% of it, is made up of the next two categories, called "Early Majority" and "Late Majority." The majority of individuals fit into one of these groups. The last group of consumers are the "Laggards," who prefer to wait until their current item wears out or ceases to function before making a purchase. To be "first in the market" for an idea, the bulk of prospective buyers are either too risk-averse or too uninterested. The media's coverage of the invention had little impact on them. Instead, they are swayed by individuals they know and respect who are thought of as opinion leaders. Although some people may be recognized as innovators for a wide variety of goods and services, it is more probable that they will only be such for a select few. A computer aficionado, for instance, would be considered a "innovator" for new computer goods. Similar to this, those with a passion in photography could be seen as opinion leaders in regards to one particular product but not others.

Business-Related Messages

A message's source may often have a significant impact on how it is received; when an audience views a communicator as credible, they are more inclined to embrace their viewpoint. On the other side, the communicator will be less compelling than someone the audience judges to be neutral if the audience thinks the communicator has ulterior objectives, especially ones of personal benefit. This has recently progressed to the point where influencers are "paid" to promote certain goods and businesses on social media platforms, even though it is clear that this is perfectly legal. But in an evident effort to capitalize on this phenomenon, several large global corporations have been found to be paying persons who blog, tweet, or operate what seem to be independent websites without disclosing this fact. Some marketers utilize 'candid' television interviews with housewives to increase their credibility and get rid of the appearance of trying to convince. They may ask the 'consumers' to justify their brand loyalty or to switch to a different one. Having a product recommended by a knowledgeable authority on a certain area is another strategy used by businesses to boost credibility. The audience's attitudes will change more effectively thanks to this source.

When communications are targeted at specific audiences, such as when sports pros endorse products, specialized sources of information are often seen as authoritative sources. The perceived rank or reputation of a source affects how credible it is. A source will be more compelling the greater its perceived prestige is. A source's persuasiveness will increase if the recipient loves it. Age, sex, attire, mannerisms, accent, and voice intonation all have an impact on source credibility and subtly alter how an audience evaluates a communicator and his or her message. Receivers' perceptions may be altered by a reliable source, but the information currently available indicates that this impact quickly wears off once the message is delivered. Additionally, it has been shown that when an audience first hears a message from a source with a low level of credibility, their attitude gradually shifts in the source's favor. The sleeper effect is used to describe this. Another part of this is that it has been discovered that audience agreement with a high-credibility source is greater over time than if the source had not been reestablished, for example, via a repeat advertising. Reinstatement of a low-credibility source is considered to neutralize the "sleeper effect" in this case since there is less agreement with the source than there would be without reinstatement.

DISCUSSION

The development of Marcoms

While academic and professional researchers have developed underlying theory using strategic elements of branding and marketing to ensure consistency of message delivery throughout an organization - the same "look & feel" - stressing the need to reduce incongruity, marketing communication practitioners have traditionally focused on the creation and execution of printed marketing collateral. The change from customer service to customer relations, the shift from human resources to human solutions, and the rise of blogs, email, and other online communications are just a few examples of business developments that may be ascribed to marketing communication. Marcoms plays a key role in branding; in fact, it may be argued that branding sparked interest in advertising theory as researchers looked for ever-more-powerful advertising medium and messages to enhance brand or corporate positioning. Internal brand communications have grown in importance along with internal marketing, prompting Brand Strategies to note that marcomms now encompasses everything from TV and other media commercials, event sponsorships, webinars, personal selling, and even product packaging. Every chance for an organization's stakeholders or consumers to engage experientially is therefore a brand touchpoint. Therefore, it is crucial for brand strategists and managers to evaluate all of their organization's brand touchpoints and account for the experience of stakeholders and customers. The promotion of an organization's brand, product, and/or service to stakeholders and potential consumers via various touchpoints is the focus of marketing communication, a tool for an organization's brand management. Personal selling, a variety of traditional advertising media, and a variety of non-media communication techniques make up the marketing communications mix. The term "above-the-line" advertising strategies refers to the traditional media tools, such as "renting" space on radio, television, newspapers, posters, etc. Other forms of marketing communication, such sponsorship, exhibits, and sales promotion, do not include buying space or airtime in or on traditional media. The line techniques are the name given to these methods. Communications efficiency has a big impact on marketing efficiency. Information flows stimulate the market.

The quantity and kind of information a prospective customer knows about the product being offered, as well as how they respond to that knowledge, have a significant impact on how they perceive the seller's market offering. Therefore, information exchanges between the supplier and the potential customer are crucial to marketing. Advertising on television, via direct mail, and on posters is considered marketing by many people. This is due to the fact that marketing communications have a significant influence on daily life and are unquestionably the most highly visible part of marketing activity. The '4Ps' of the marketing mix include both above- and below-the-line marketing communications. However, it plays a crucial role. No matter how excellent a company's product or service offering is, the advantages to the customer must be properly conveyed. Any marketing strategy must start and end with marketing communications, which takes the shape of above- and below-the-line advertising. It is impossible to explore the topic of marketing communications in the depth and breadth that its position in contemporary business requires within the framework of a broad introduction to marketing theory.

Today, practically all organizations use marketing strategies and ideas, and recent governments have supported this by integrating market dynamics into most facets of public services. This has been widely applied to the field of education, leading schools and universities to create specialized services to give "consumers," not-for-profit organizations, traditional charities who must comprehend their donors and position themselves to meet their needs as well as local volunteer groups, such as Scouts, Cubs, and Youth Groups more options. NFP businesses operate in both the public and private sectors, just like commercially oriented businesses do, so what are some fundamental differences? Combination of goals, i.e., raise £250,000 from government grants, increase client usage, find cure for disease, change public attitudes, and raise £750,000 from private investors. Goals also include how many customers will be serviced, how much service will be supplied, and how well it will be done.

Choose Accenture if you want a profession where you can make a difference every day thanks to the range of chances and challenges. a setting where you may reach your full potential and advance your career while working with outstanding coworkers. The only location where you may benefit from our unmatched expertise while assisting our customers throughout the world in achieving high performance. If this describes your ideal workday, Accenture is the place for you. Boot Camp is where it all begins. Your intellect will be stimulated and your professional possibilities will be improved by these 48 hours. You will socialize with other students, eminent Accenture Consultants, and distinguished visitors. Two exciting days jam-packed with activities and intellectual challenges to help you learn what it actually takes to be a great performer in business. We can't tell you everything about Boot Camp, but be prepared for an intensive, fast-paced learning environment. It can be the hardest exam you've ever taken, but that's also the largest opportunity.

Special interest groups like Greenpeace, CND, lobby and pressure groups like Countryside Alliance, CBI, as well as organizations representing industry professionals like the TUC, IOD, have also been quick to recognize the value of good marketing for their objectives. Be aware that this field has grown to be significant enough to warrant its own subclassification inside marketing. In most instances, these marketing specialties also call for in-depth knowledge of the relevant sector, and they have the ability to enhance and make use of the tools and strategies at the disposal of all marketers. In essence, non-profit organizations require marketing just as much as businesses do. In fact, some would argue that NFPs need marketing even more since the items they advertise have a significant service component. Additionally, it should be kept in mind that non-profit organizations compete for funding just as for-profit corporations do. Sometimes, not-for-profit groups join forces with for-profit businesses to spread the firm's message or sell its goods.

A broad branch of marketing that we now refer to as non-traditional marketingalso known as alternative marketing and sometimes off-street marketinghas emerged alongside and is in many respects closely related to conventional marketing. The main categories are as follows: Ambient marketing; ambient marketing is marketing or advertising wherever customers happen to be, as part of the immediate surroundings. The best example, in my opinion, is the Spar Restaurant in Mumbai, India, which scattered giant clam shells that were life-size on the nearby beaches. When people picked them up, they found advertisements for the restaurant inside. The term "astroturfing" (also known as "astroturf marketing") refers to organized political, commercial, or public relations initiatives that attempt to seem as if "grassroots" behavior has spontaneously emerged. Astroturf is an artificial grass. It is rightly regarded as a kind of stealth marketing and is strongly related to buzz and viral marketing. The purpose of such a campaign is to pass off the actions of a political or commercial body as a genuine response from the general public to a particular political entity, such as a candidate, political party, item, service, or event.

AstroTurf uses overt and covert methods to coordinate the behavior of people who seem to come from different backgrounds and locations. A person promoting a personal goal may engage in astroturfing, as may highly organized professional groups with funding from major businesses, non-profits, or activist groups. Buzz marketing is a term used in word-of-mouth marketing to describe the 'buzz' among customers. Political strategists who also specialize in opposition research sometimes lead these operations. The phrase has expanded to include both the method and the buzz, whether it is good or negative. A "for profit" company collaborating with a non-profit group for both parties' mutual benefit was previously referred to as cause marketing or cause-related marketing. Today, it is widely used in a wider sense to refer to any kind of marketing initiative for charitable purposes, including internal marketing initiatives by non-profit organizations. Corporate giving and cause marketing are distinct from one another since the latter often entails a particular gift that is tax deductible, while cause marketing is a marketing connection that is typically not dependent on a donation.

Event Promotion

actions taken to publicize occasions like sporting contests and cultural and chari performances. designing or creating a "live" themed event, occasion, show, or exhibit to advertise a service, a campaign, or a group. likewise known as event creation. An emotional connection between a person, brand, product, or concept and the target customer is the goal of experiential marketing, a word that broadly refers to the art of experience creation. Although the word is relatively new, the underlying ideas may be found in more established activities where efforts are often made to emotionally connect customers and the public, such as field marketing, customer service, special events, product promotions, and PR stunts. Given the significance of branding in contemporary marketing and as a foundational element of competitive advantage for many organizations, it has become increasingly popular in recent years to specialize in taking the fundamental idea of forging a connection through a carefully crafted emotional experience and designing the rest of the marketing mix around it rather than attempting to incorporate it.

The phrase "guerrilla marketing" was originally introduced by Jay Conrad Levinson in his book Guerrilla Marketing. It is used to convey the idea of a novel promotion strategy that depends more on time, effort, and creativity than on a huge marketing budget. Guerrilla marketing, as it was originally known, used unique methods including unexpected meetings in public, product freebies on the street, public relations stunts, and any other kind of unconventional marketing designed to get maximum results with least resources. Modern Guerrilla marketing strategies make use of cutting-edge mobile digital technology to engage customers and build enduring brand experiences. Guerrilla marketing's goal is to develop an original, captivating, and provocative idea that will build buzz and ultimately go viral, or get the word out about the product or service by having consumers spread the word about it to one another.

The basic definition of grassroots marketing is complex marketing to a particular group. Grassroots marketing aims to communicate with people on a close-knit basis, either in person or via a medium. It is extensively utilized in political and social markets to attempt to influence by instilling fundamental principles. It is also used to try to give corporations a "face" beyond the boundaries of large business; Sir Richard Branson and Virgin are a prime example of this.

Marketing For Organizations

efforts made to persuade customers to support a company's objectives, use its products, or take some other action. A notable example is the NCT, a nonprofit that works in both the public and private sectors while promoting the principles of healthy parenting and natural birthing.actions taken with the goal of gaining a target market's interest in, preference for, and attention. There are several instances of this "personal PR" in the tabloid press, but it also occurs often in the academic and business-to-business industries, in addition to the more visible Public Speakers for hire who do this routinely.

Location Marketing

These are marketing initiatives intended to draw visitors to a certain region, such as a vacation destination, a nation, or an attraction, such as a theme park. Ambient marketing is not to be confused with this. The notoriety and publicity that a person or business receives only by being there is called presence marketing. The place where? Simply said, it is everywhere that people are. It's interesting how it has spread to the point where some businesses discuss social presence and presence in virtual worlds as key components of total marketing. Therefore, strictly speaking, presence marketing refers to a customer's presence inside a certain area, such as a store or a mall. However, thanks to technology, the term "Presence Marketing" is increasingly beginning to refer to the capability of a business to monitor consumer behavior in order to directly advertise to customers in a predetermined physical retail setting. The purpose is to modify and customize the promotional content that each consumer sees.

Social marketing is the methodical use of marketing, along with related ideas and strategies, to accomplish certain behavioral objectives for a social benefit. Social marketing may be used to promote merit-based products or to persuade a community to shun dishonorable behavior, so advancing the welfare of society as a whole. Social marketing's main goal is "social good," as opposed to commercial marketing, where the main goal is "financial." This is not to say that marketers for businesses cannot help advance social good.

A growing number of people now refer to social marketing as having "two parents": a "social parent" made up of social sciences and social policy, and a "marketing parent" made up of commercial and public sector marketing strategies. With the work of Kotler and Zlatzman beginning in the 1970s, it has developed over the last ten years into a much more integrative and comprehensive subject that relies on the whole spectrum of social sciences, social policy methods, and marketing.It's important to distinguish between social marketing and social media marketing.

A more recent trend, social media marketing has its roots in integrated marketing communications strategies. Advertising, personal selling, public relations, publicity, direct marketing, and sales promotion are all components of the promotional mix that IMC organizes to create a customer-focused message that is consistent and cohesive across all media. Advertising agency, marketing research companies, and public relations firms are examples of external agents that the organization has traditionally worked with to determine the content, frequency, timing, and medium of its communications. However, the emergence of social media such as Facebook, Twitter, Bebo, Stumbleupon, etc. has changed how businesses interact with their clients. Web 2.0 has given rise to a collection of tools on the internet that enable individuals to network with others, do business, exchange knowledge, and work together on projects.

Social media marketing makes advantage of these social applications as the medium for its marketing messages. Babe Ruth became the first six-athlete in professional sports history on August 26, 1939, when the first Major League Baseball game was ever broadcast. Sports marketing officially started on this day. The modern sport marketing discipline, which now includes non-sports businesses using sport for advertising, sponsorship, promotion, sales promotion, and public relations, was first introduced by corporate sponsorship of Lamar Hunt's WCT Tennis Events and PGA Tour golf tournaments from the middle of the 1970s to the early 1980s. These events where the first examples of how marketing can effectively reach and touch consumers. Tissue Pack marketing is a very effective guerilla marketing strategy that is mostly used in Japan. Businesses brand tiny packs of Kleenex with their branding and distribute them for free, often outside of railway and tube stations. The 1960-era practice has expanded into a $75 billion business.

Undercover marketing, which is strictly a subset of guerilla marketing, is a developing kind of "stealth" marketing, in which the customer is not made aware that they are being targeted. In order to "talk-up" a product in public settings where prospective customers are known to gather, such as parks, cafés, etc., this might include employing actors. 'Roach baiting' is another name for this technique in informal use. The most well-known instance occurred when Sony Ericsson employed 60 actors in 2002 and instructed them to "accost strangers and ask them: Would you mind taking my picture?" The actor then gave the stranger a brand-new picture phone while gushing about what a great new gadget it was. and so, a polite gesture becomes a marketing opportunity.

Viral Advertising

Viral marketing and viral advertising are terms for marketing strategies that make advantage of pre-existing social networks to raise brand recognition or accomplish other marketing goals via viral processes that self-replicate, similar to how disease and computer viruses propagate. Often referred to as digital word-of-mouth, it may be word-of-mouth that is provided or amplified through the network effects of the Internet. Video clips, interactive Flash games, advergames, ebooks, branded software, photographs, and even text messages may all be used as viral marketing tools. The fundamental model of viral marketing has its limits. Marketing professionals interested in developing effective viral marketing campaigns seek to discover people with high social networking potential and produce viral messages that are appealing to this demographic and have a high likelihood of being shared.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, an effective and crucial strategy for companies looking to create distinctive brand identities, interact with consumers, and succeed in the marketing arena is integrated marketing communications. Companies can build a seamless brand experience that connects with customers, develops brand loyalty, and ultimately fuels company success by providing a consistent message over a variety of platforms. Businesses may better manage the intricacies of the contemporary market, stay relevant, and build enduring connections with their target audience by using IMC as a key marketing approach. A successful IMC strategy must also take into account social media and digital media in the current digital era. Companies may communicate with consumers in real-time, reach a wider audience, and use data-driven insights for ongoing development by integrating online and physical channels.

REFERENCES:

[1] O. Duralia, “Integrated marketing communication and its impact on consumer behavior,” *Stud. Bus. Econ.*, 2018, doi: 10.2478/sbe-2018-0022.

[2] A. Dwivedi and R. McDonald, “Building brand authenticity in fast-moving consumer goods via consumer perceptions of brand marketing communications,” *Eur. J. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.1108/EJM-11-2016-0665.

[3] M. Klepek and H. Starzyczná, “Marketing communication model for social networks,” *J. Bus. Econ. Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.3846/jbem.2018.6582.

[4] K. H. Kim and V. Kumar, “The relative influence of economic and relational direct marketing communications on buying behavior in business-to-business markets,” *J. Mark. Res.*, 2018, doi: 10.1509/jmr.16.0283.

[5] V. Kupec, “Risk audit of marketing communication,” *Eur. Res. Stud. J.*, vol. 21, no. 1, pp. 125–132, 2018, doi: 10.35808/ersj/935.

[6] M. P. Llopis-Amorós, I. Gil-Saura, and M. E. R. Molina, “The role of marketing communications in generating brand equity for an event,” *Event Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.3727/152599518X15241431917142.

[7] L. Rossiter, John R, Percy, Larry, Bergkvist, “Marketing Communications: Objectives, Strategy, Tactics,” *Mark. Commun. Campaign Plan.*, 2018.

[8] E. Yurdakul and A. Bozdağ, “IMC: Integrated marketing communication,” in *Marketing Management in Turkey*, 2018. doi: 10.1108/978-1-78714-557-320181020.

[9] M. W. Choi, “Meaning and future of emotion-based marketing communication in new marketing era,” *Int. J. Recent Technol. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.35940/ijrte.B1008.0782S619.

[10] K. S. Prikhodko, E. N. Danilevskaya, K. S. Savina, and R. E. Shupenko, “Innovative opportunities and reserves of contemporary marketing communication,” *Int. J. Econ. Bus. Adm.*, 2019, doi: 10.35808/ijeba/293.

CHAPTER 8
SIGNIFICANCE OF MARKETING STRATEGIC: AN OVERVIEW

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Marketing strategy is a crucial aspect of business planning that defines the path to achieve organizational objectives by identifying target markets, understanding customer needs, and designing effective marketing initiatives. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of marketing strategic in the success and growth of businesses. It explores the multifaceted nature of marketing strategy, encompassing market analysis, segmentation, targeting, positioning, and the formulation of marketing mix elements. The abstract delves into the role of marketing strategic in building brand identity, fostering customer loyalty, and gaining a competitive advantage in the market. Additionally, it highlights the importance of adapting marketing strategies to dynamic market conditions, consumer behaviors, and technological advancements. Understanding and implementing effective marketing strategies are vital for organizations seeking to thrive in today's dynamic and competitive business environment.

KEYWORDS:

Competitive Analysis, Consumer Behavior, Market Research, Marketing Objectives, Marketing Plan, Marketing Segmentation.

INTRODUCTION

A marketing strategy is the foundation of any business strategy. Every business, regardless of how large or little, has to have a marketing plan in place. Delivering items that please clients is the purpose of businesses.

The process of conceptualizing, pricing, promoting, and disseminating ideas, products, and services is known as marketing. The marketing mix is a collection of connected elements that make up a marketing strategy[1], [2]. Answers to a number of questions about products and clients make up the marketing mix. A documented plan on marketing issues such product creation, promotion, distribution, and price strategy are known as a marketing strategy. It establishes the firm's marketing objectives and details how the company can meet those objectives. Marketing tactics aid in determining the company's and its rivals' strengths and shortcomings. The company's marketing methods must be concentrated on certain areas, as identified by the marketing strategy[3], [4].

A strategy is a long-term plan to accomplish certain goals. Therefore, a marketing strategy is a marketing plan created to accomplish marketing goals. For instance, a marketing purpose can have to do with dominating the market through satisfying consumers. Therefore, the strategic strategy is the in-depth planning that involves doing marketing research and creating a marketing mix to win over consumers[5], [6]. Every firm must have specific marketing goals, and strategy will play a key role in determining how to get there. Clear goals and objectives must be established before a strategy can serve as the foundation for a policy. An organization may develop its daily tools and techniques to achieve the goals after establishing its strategy. Therefore, marketing may be defined as the process of creating and putting into practice a strategy to plan and coordinate methods to discover, anticipate, and meet customer requests in a manner that generates profits. The core of marketing is this process of strategic planning[7], [8].

A marketing strategy is a method or a model that enables a business or organization to concentrate its limited resources on the most promising prospects for growing sales and securing a long-term competitive advantage. Marketing strategy encompasses all fundamental and long-term activities in the field of marketing that are concerned with the analysis of a company's strategic initial situation as well as the formulation, evaluation, and choice of market-oriented strategies. As a result, marketing strategy supports the objectives of the company's marketing as well as its overall goals[9], [10].

Importance of a Marketing Plan

The successful implementation of a marketing plan is crucial to the company's ability to do business. The following are some of its key advantages:

1. Strategic Planning

The fact that marketing strategy comprises strategic planning is its most crucial component. The idea of strategic planning is to create goals for your company that include marketing, promotion, sales, and financial objectives. A strategic strategy for the company is having a plan in place to handle both anticipated and unforeseen circumstances. A strategic strategy, for instance, might include how to boost sales or cut costs to offset a company's knowledge that its mortgage would rise by 5% the next year.

2. Creates an Effective Distribution Network

With an efficient marketing plan, a business may create an efficient distribution network to reach its target market. It is quite simple to identify target consumers and the markets where a product may be sold successfully after the strategy has been determined. For instance, younger clients are more inclined to purchase online or using a smartphone. Older clients could choose visiting retail establishments. If market research indicates that a company's product must be sold through retail establishments but it lacks a sales staff, it might utilize a wholesaler or distributor.

3. Simplifies Product Development

A marketing plan assists the business in developing goods and services that have the greatest potential for financial success. This is due to the fact that market research, which takes into account the company's ideal target client, what your competitors are doing, and potential future trends, comes before any marketing plan. With the use of this data, a business can work out what benefits its consumers and clients want, how much they're ready to spend, and how to set itself out from the competitors.

4. Creating Financial objectives

Marketing techniques are crucial in helping the company create its financial objectives. Financial objectives have two components: they relate to both the budgeted costs and the sales targets. Initial sales goals are established as part of the marketing strategy, but they may vary over time in response to shifting market circumstances, price hikes for the product, and changes in customer demand. Developing financial goals includes tracking costs as well. Businesses that have a tendency to spend more money than they make will struggle to be profitable over the long run. However, the company will be better able to raise the profit margins if it can carefully control its outflows and only spend what is actually necessary.

5. The creation of the marketing plan

Marketing strategies are sometimes initially drafted as part of the marketing strategy for a company. The majority of marketing plans also contain the instruments for promoting and marketing as well as the existing or anticipated tactics for your items, their prices, and distribution methods. A marketing plan is crucial for creating a promotional strategy since it aids in target market identification and goal-setting for the company. The implementation of a marketing strategy that strives for expansion and a favorable shift in the bottom line is essential to the organization's success.

6. Understanding the customer

Marketing tactics may help a company better comprehend and relate to its consumers and customers. Targeting items to the "right" demographics will be difficult for the business if the marketing strategy is poorly organized. A successful marketing plan helps a company to pinpoint the market groups it will target and the products it will provide. A carefully stated marketing plan specifies who to serve and who to ignore.

7. Aids in marketing communications

Market research will support the development of the brand or desired corporate image. It makes it easier for the business to interact with its target clientele. A marketing strategy enables the business to assess if a certain magazine, radio station, or website suits the business's sales ambitions.

8. Promotes the best possible use of resources

Resources may be used to their fullest potential in order to accomplish desired goals. Without appropriate plans, the company may not be able to allocate the right resources. Less resources may be allocated, in which case the organization may be unable to carry out its tasks; alternatively, more resources may be allocated than are really needed, which might result in resource waste.

9. Choosing the Appropriate Communication Tactics

The choice of the best medium will be influenced by the target audience's characteristics and the intended outcome. For instance, using the Internet as a communication tool is probably not a smart idea if the target audience is old. Local newspapers are probably not a suitable option if the intended audience is a group of college-age students, on the other hand. The company's objectives also provide light on communication strategies. A target of attracting 10 new customers may merely call for a press release and an advertisement in the neighborhood paper, while a goal of boosting marketing share by 25% could need a comprehensive multi-media campaign. Rarely do marketers gain by exceeding their objectives and failing to satisfy customer demand.

10. Improves the company's image

Well-defined strategy help create a company's corporate image. This is so that the company may reap the benefits of well executed strategy. The company is in a position to fulfill its social obligation to its patrons, staff, suppliers, and others, and as a result, it may gain the trust of the market.

DISCUSSION

Conditions For a Successful Marketing Strategy

The principles for creating a marketing strategy are referred to as the basics of a successful marketing strategy. The following are necessary components of an effective marketing strategy:

1. Understanding the target market

For a marketing strategy to be genuinely successful, a firm must research and assess its industry and target market, then develop and implement an action plan. Evaluating the company's real business is the first step in the business process. This is examining business from the perspective of the client or end user and determining what they really get from the organization. And many company owners are shocked to learn that their initial assumptions were incorrect.

2. Segmenting the Market Effectively

Market segmentation must be done correctly in order to have an efficient marketing plan. Demographic segmentation of the consumer base is made easier by market segmentation. For instance, a plumbing company may target homeowners, but a video game supplier might target youths. How crucial it is to understand your target audience and how to effectively appeal to them cannot be emphasized enough.

3. Special selling point

Finding out what a firm provides that no other company does is the next step in developing a winning marketing plan. Advertising the element that makes the business unique—the magic that no other business possesseswill help the business stand out. supplying items at the most competitive costs or supplying the top-notch customer service are just a few examples of this unique selling proposition. This must be a component of every facet of the company's marketing efforts, not just the marketing plan.

4. Contextual Analysis:

Market research, including a SWOT analysis and a competition analysis, should be done. A market prediction, segmentation, customer data, and a study of market demands will all be part of the market analysis. The plan will be successful thanks to this analysis.

5. Oriented toward goals

The plan should focus on specific goals. It should be created while taking organizational goals into account. Strategies that are not in line with the companies' aims are useless. The tactics that are in line with the goals of the company will be successful in achieving their goals.

6. How to recognize a competitive advantage

A description of how the corporation will compete in each market for goods and services within its domain is a crucial component of any strategy. How can it set itself up to create and maintain a unique edge over present and future rivals? Managers must look at the market potential in each business and product market as well as the company's unique capabilities or strengths in comparison to its rivals to find the answers to these questions.

7. Simplicity

The marketing plan must to be easy to grasp and simple to follow. It ought to be well stated. When defining a marketing plan, phrase clarity is crucial. Ambiguity should be avoided while developing the marketing plan. Everyone in the company should be able to understand it.

8. Flexibility

In the highly competitive and unstable business world, businesses must survive. These environmental elements change with time. The marketing approach should be adaptable to these changes. In the near term, it ought to permit the adjustments. They shouldn't be unbending. It ought to be flexible enough to change as necessary.

9. Resource allocations

Each organization has a certain number of resources both material and human. Choosing how to collect and distribute such resources among enterprises, product-markets, functional divisions, and activities inside each business or product-market is another step in the strategy-writing process.

10. Comprehensive

The marketing plan should be all-encompassing in scope. It should include all topics that are important to the business. A sound business plan always takes into account the variables that directly or indirectly impact how the firm operates.

11. Consistency

The marketing strategy need to be in line with the plans of the organization's other divisions. All organizational functional strategies should complement one another, and they should all eventually be congruent with the overarching organizational strategy.

12. Periodic evaluation

Strategies have to be examined on a regular basis. A evaluation like this enables the company to adjust the strategy as needed to suit the demands of the company. It is also advantageous to include changes in the business environment aspects in periodic reviews.

Three stages may be generally used to categorize the strategy:

Business Strategy

The highest level of strategic decision-making is at the corporate level, which includes components dealing with the firm's goal, resource acquisition and allocation, and coordination of multiple SBUs' plans for best performance. Such choices are made by the organization's top management. Compared to judgments made at the commercial or functional level, strategic decisions are often more value-oriented, intellectual, and abstract. Single-business organizations benefit from concentration and quick responses, but they are more susceptible to issues specific to their sector. While assessing business prospects in sectors with complementary activity, their corporate strategy must highlight the benefits of remaining engaged in just one industry. The corporate strategy must evaluate the return of a continued investment in the single business with the purchase or establishment of complementary companies in order to optimize firm operations, profitability, and growth. Managers must coordinate the operations of several business divisions at the corporate level. The creation of superior human, financial, and technical resources; the design of efficient organizational structures and procedures; and the pursuit of synergy across the firm's many businesses are the key focuses of efforts to create and retain unique competences at the corporate level. When connected companies share R&D expenditures, product or manufacturing methods, distribution networks, a shared sales force, and/or promotional themes, synergy may provide them a significant competitive advantage. Corporate strategy outlines a company's basic orientation in terms of how it manages its many companies and how it generally views growth. The stability plan, growth strategy, and retrenchment strategy are the three primary categories into which the company strategy normally falls.

a) Stability plan

The fundamental tenet of a stability plan is to stay on track while remaining stable. Companies will concentrate their resources in the most constrained product-market scope possible consistent with the firm's resources and market requirements, where they currently have or can quickly develop a meaningful competitive advantage.

b) Growth tactic

A company's growth strategy outlines how it intends to accomplish its goal of increasing volume and turnover. Product development, diversification, market expansion, and market penetration are the four main growth tactics. It is a style that looks for stocks with higher future investment return rates than stocks. Market insights are the first step in every company development plan. The market ecology itself serves as the source of information. While market insights may be used on an as-needed basis by research firms and strategic marketing consultants, businesses that are devoted to development will benefit from creating systems and procedures to guarantee a steady stream of market insights into their operations. This is a crucial tactic for growing the business's demand side.

Every firm has a different approach to business development. However, there are certain general kinds of corporate development strategies:

1. Development of a New Product/Service Strategy

2. Market Development Plan

3. Strategy for Product Diversification

4. Analysis of Market Opportunities

5. Market Competition Analysis

6. Strategy for Market Segmentation

c) Reduction in force

a tactic used by businesses to lessen the variety or scale of their activities as a whole. This tactic is often used to reduce costs in an effort to make a corporation more financially sound. In order to achieve a favorable turnaround, the approach often entails exiting particular markets or ceasing to provide specific goods or services. Retrenchment is a corporate-level approach intended to diminish an organization's size or variety. Retrenchment also involves cutting expenses to improve one's financial situation. Retrenchment strategy is a tactic employed by corporations to lessen the variety of their workforce or to scale down their operations as a whole. This tactic is often used in order to reduce costs and improve the financial situation of a corporation. In order to accomplish a profitable turnaround, the approach often entails exiting particular markets or ceasing to offer specific goods or services.

Business Planning

With the exception of the need that it supports corporate strategic goals targeted at the single business, a single-business firm's business plan is similar to that of a business unit of a diversified organization. The business strategy identifies the measures the firm must take to retain and enhance its competitive advantages, examines the actions of rivals, and establishes performance targets. Typical tactics include setting cheap prices as the industry standard, differentiating yourself via quality or other attractive qualities, or emphasizing promotions. Business-level strategy must be critically focused on how a business unit performs within its industry. Sustainable competitive advantage is a key concern in company strategy. What distinguishing skills might the business unit use to its advantage? And which of those abilities most closely resembles the requirements and preferences of the target market for the company? Appropriate scope, which includes how many and which market categories to compete in as well as the total breadth of product offerings and marketing initiatives to appeal to these groups, is another crucial problem that a business-level strategy must handle. Finally, it is important to look for synergy between different product markets and organizational functional areas.

Businesses that operate as separate strategic business units and have varying lines of business may implement business-level strategy. Finding the distinct, independent product and market segments that a company serves is the basic idea behind SBU. A SBU is developed for each product/market segment since each has its own unique environment. Reliance Industries Limited, for instance, engages in the production of various petrochemical goods as well as textile fabrics, yarns, and fibers.

The market's characteristics, including consumers, rivalry, and marketing channels, vary depending on the product category. As a result, it needs various tactics for each of its product groupings. Each SBU thus develops its own tactics to make the greatest use of its resources given the context it operates in where the SBU idea is implemented. At this level, strategy is a comprehensive plan that lays out goals for SBUs, distributes resources across functional areas, and coordinates those distributions for the best possible contribution to the accomplishment of corporate-level goals.

These tactics work within the confines of the organization's overarching plans. The business strategy establishes the long-term goals of the company as well as the general guidelines and regulations that an SBU must go by. The corporate level will assist the SBU in defining the scope of its activities and will also be able to restrict or expand the SBU's operations based on the resources it is given. Corporate-level and business-level strategies vary from one another.

Functional Approach

As implied by the title, functional strategy is concerned with a single functional operation and the associated activities. Decisions made at this organizational level are sometimes referred to be tactical. Some overarching strategic concerns serve as both a guide and a constraint for such choices. Functional strategy is concerned with relatively small plans that provide goals for a single function, allocate resources among various activities within that functional area, and coordinate those operations for the best possible contribution to the accomplishment of the SBU and company level goals. As each function may be divided into multiple sub functions, there may be operations level strategies in addition to the functional-level strategy. For instance, the functional strategy of marketing may be further split into the sub-strategies of promotion, sales, distribution, and pricing, each of which contributes to the functional strategy.

Functional Marketing Strategy

The marketing strategy has a functional impact on the other functions' strategies in marketing-focused organizations. Determining client demands in an area where the organization has a natural competitive advantage is a common marketing tactic. These benefits might be in terms of manpower, reputation, facilities, or location. Once the kind of product that buyers desire has been determined by the marketing strategy, the information is sent to operations so that they may develop and manufacture the product at the appropriate price. Sales must sell the goods, the advertising department must create a marketing plan, and customer service must back it up. The strategies of these other departments are built on the marketing strategy. The main goal of marketing strategy is to efficiently allocate and coordinate marketing efforts and resources in order to achieve the company's goals within a particular product-market. Therefore, identifying the target market for a certain product or product line is crucial for determining the scope of a marketing plan. The next step is for businesses to seek synergy and competitive advantage via a well-integrated program of marketing mix components that are suited to the requirements and preferences of prospective consumers in that target market.

Additional Effective Strategies

The marketing strategy, which is a part of the larger company plan, must be supported by the non-marketing functional strategies. These plans are narrowly focused on one industry in a single-business organization, but they must also provide data that enables the corporate strategy to look at potential diversification. Single-business firms are often either market leaders in their industry or market leaders in their specialization. The functional level methods work to retain this position while also watching out for external risk indications. Strategic elements from a functional level must notify the corporate level that the deployment of alternative plans is necessary if circumstances outside the company's control cause it to lose ground.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, A key factor in determining a company's success and long-term viability is its marketing strategy. A strong marketing plan enables businesses to stand out from the competition, connects corporate goals with consumer demands, and generates value for both the organization and the market it serves. Companies may successfully traverse the intricacies of the market, take advantage of growth possibilities, and maintain a competitive edge in the ever-evolving business environment by adopting marketing strategy as a fundamental company function and embracing agility in the face of change. Additionally, due to the dynamic nature of the industry, marketing plans must change as customer behavior, technology developments, and market circumstances do. For businesses to be flexible and responsive, performance must be regularly tracked, consumer input gathered, and industry trends observed.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. E. Ghahnavieh, "The Influence of Marketing Factors on the Marketing Strategic Planning in SNOWA Corporation," *Bus. Manag. Stud.*, 2018, doi: 10.11114/bms.v4i4.3133.

[2] R. Varadarajan, "Advances in strategic marketing and the advancement of the marketing discipline: the promise of theory," *Journal of Marketing Management*. 2018. doi: 10.1080/0267257X.2017.1398769.

[3] J. W. Tang and T. H. Hsu, "Utilizing the Hierarchy Structural Fuzzy Analytical Network Process Model to Evaluate Critical Elements of Marketing Strategic Alliance Development in Mobile Telecommunication Industry," *Gr. Decis. Negot.*, 2018, doi: 10.1007/s10726-018-9554-1.

[4] C. McCamley and A. Gilmore, "Strategic marketing planning for heritage tourism: a conceptual model and empirical findings from two emerging heritage regions," *J. Strateg. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/0965254X.2016.1195859.

[5] S. Quinton, A. Canhoto, S. Molinillo, R. Pera, and T. Budhathoki, "Conceptualising a digital orientation: antecedents of supporting SME performance in the digital economy," *J. Strateg. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/0965254X.2016.1258004.

[6] R. Abratt and M. Bendixen, *Strategic Marketing: Concepts and Cases*. 2018. doi: 10.4324/9780429489327.

[7] A. Thrassou, D. Vrontis, and S. Bresciani, "The Agile Innovation Pendulum: Family Business Innovation and the Human, Social, and Marketing Capitals," *Int. Stud. Manag. Organ.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/00208825.2018.1407086.

[8] E. Musonera and A. Pore, "Marketing Strategic Alternatives and Recommendations in the Distilled Spirits Industry-Sky Vodka," *J. Bus. Econ. Policy*, 2018, doi: 10.30845/jbep.v5n4a14.

[9] T. Brown, M. Abduljabbar, S. Englund, and E. Treen, "Twenty-five years and counting: an analysis of the Journal of Strategic Marketing," *J. Strateg. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/0965254X.2017.1411388.

[10] A. Adhikari, *Strategic marketing issues in emerging markets*. 2018. doi: 10.1007/978-981-10-6505-7.

CHAPTER 9
EXPLORING THE PROCESS OF DEVELOPING MARKETING PLAN

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

A marketing plan is a comprehensive and structured roadmap that outlines an organization's marketing strategies and tactics to achieve its business objectives. This abstract provides an overview of the significance and components of a marketing plan. It explores the process of developing a marketing plan, which involves market analysis, target audience identification, setting clear marketing objectives, and designing actionable marketing strategies. The abstract highlights the importance of effective implementation, measurement, and continuous improvement in the success of a marketing plan. Additionally, it delves into the role of marketing plans in guiding businesses through dynamic market conditions, fostering brand awareness, and driving customer acquisition and retention. Understanding the essence of a well-crafted marketing plan empowers businesses to optimize their marketing efforts, adapt to changing market dynamics, and achieve sustainable growth and success.

KEYWORDS:

Budget, Competitive Analysis, Distribution Strategy, Marketing Objectives, Market Research, Marketing Mix.

INTRODUCTION

Marketing is the most crucial aspect of any organization. Marketing is much more than simply selling, which is what many people think it is. Producing a product or offering a service is a rather simple process. Making sure that your prospective consumers are aware of your existence is the challenging part. Therefore, creating a thorough marketing strategy, or a plan of action, is crucial. Marketing is very straightforward; it involves identifying your target market, learning what they want, and providing it to them at a price they will pay. But it's not that simple[1], [2]. There is no set method for achieving success in marketing goals; there are many approaches. The Marketing strategy is the most crucial section of a company strategy. This strategy must be tailored to the goal of the companyits product and service lines, its markets, its financial status, and its marketing and sales strategiesin order to keep the firm on track. A marketing strategy details the precise steps that will be taken to pique the attention of prospective consumers and clients and convince them to purchase the provided goods and services. A marketing plan is a business document created to describe a company's present position in the market and its marketing strategy for the time period it covers. Marketing strategies typically last one to five years. A marketing strategy should clearly outline the measures that will be done to accomplish the company's marketing goals. Information like the target market, competition, marketing budget, and promotional mix are all included in the marketing strategy[3], [4].

A marketing strategy is a document that describes the state of the market and how a company plans to use its future marketing and advertising budgets. It specifies who to offer a product or service to and who those clients are. It outlines precise and doable marketing department tactics. The plan is often utilized in combination with business or development plans in order to help a firm realize its potential for growth[5], [6].The definition of a marketing plan according to Wikipedia is "a written document that summarizes what the marketer has learned about the marketplace and s how the firms plan to reach its marketing objective." Maria Wood. "Marketing strategies are created for specific items, lines, brands, distribution routes, or clientele. One of the most crucial results of the marketing process is the marketing strategy. Philip Kotler[7], [8].

Characteristics of a Marketing Plan

Following is a discussion of the key marketing strategy characteristics:

1. Marketing planning

It is a continuous process; it is not a one-time event. It is a never-ending process. Finding marketing possibilities is the first step, followed by developing a solid marketing strategy. Once the plan has been redeveloped, the next step is to find marketing opportunities. An organization must regularly monitor these developments since the marketing environment is always changing[9], [10].

2. Consumer-Focused

The demands and requirements of the consumer are the major focus of all marketing strategies. The marketing strategies must be customer-focused with the goal of maximizing client happiness. Only when marketing strategies are created with the client in mind will they be effective.

3. Writing Document

Marketing strategies are presented in writing form. It should make the marketing goals very apparent. The marketing plan's written version may be referred to in the future as you carry out your marketing duties.Marketing strategies function on two levels. both long- and short-term. Strategic level refers to the long term, while tactical level to the near term. The target market and value proposition are both included in the strategic marketing strategy. Product features, promotions, price, sales, channels, and services are all part of tactical marketing strategy.

4. Marketing Opportunities

Analysis of the marketing environment is a component of marketing planning. The SWOT analysis assesses potential threats that the company could encounter as well as market possibilities that can be taken advantage of.

5. Timeframe

Marketing strategies may be both long- and short-term in nature. Short-term marketing strategies are those that last up to one year, whilst long-term plans last from one year to five years.

6. Market circumstances

Marketing strategies are created by taking into account the current marketing circumstances. The marketing strategy will alter in accordance with how the situations change. The marketers make every effort to incorporate the shifting market circumstances into their marketing strategy.

7 Teamwork

The support of each team member is essential to the marketing plan's success. Any marketing strategy must include collaboration in order to be successful. The company as a whole must participate in the formulation and execution of the marketing strategy.

DISCUSSION

Contents of Marketing Plan

Every marketing strategy must take into account the conditions and demands of the market. When creating the marketing strategy, some common elements must be included. The following elements should always be included in a marketing plan:

1. Contextual Analysis

Generally speaking, a situation analysis includes a market analysis. SWOT evaluation of the industry. It examines the firm's assets and liabilities as well as potential market risks and threats. Analyses of competitors are also included. A market prediction, segmentation, customer data, and a study of market demands will all be part of the market analysis. Performing a scenario analysis also include gathering and examining data on the state of the market, customer demographics, and developments that have an impact on the environment for company and consumers.

2. Marketing Techniques

At the very least, a strategy should include a mission statement, goals, and a targeted approach that focuses on certain market segments and product positioning. The firm's marketing operations should be clearly outlined in the marketing plan.

3. Forecast for sales

This would have sufficient information to follow up on the plan-vs-actual analysis and monitor sales month by month. A plan often includes more information, such as exact sales by product, location or market segment, channel, management duties, and other factors. The prediction is the absolute minimum.

4. Target Market

It is essential to always keep in mind the customers we are attempting to sell to in order to achieve the marketing objective. A successful marketing strategy separates the population into several marketing groups that may be reached with carefully crafted appeals. Despite this, it should also be remembered that maintaining a distinct corporate identity depends on the integration of information throughout the whole organization.

5. Special selling point

Even though the USP is an ancient idea, it continues to be useful today. Determine how the product is unique and how it stands out from the competition in order to sell it amid the enormous ocean of similar items. Only once the corporation has identified this distinction and made the market aware of it will its sales efforts be effective. Unfortunately, this is often insufficient. Instead, the company may need to pinpoint many USPs that appeal to various market groups.

6. Budget for marketing

Budgeting is a crucial component of any marketing strategy. This will make it easier to calculate your precise cash requirements for effective product marketing and promotion. Implementing a marketing plan is probably done in stages. Therefore, it is important to be clear about the financial needs for each stage of marketing activity. In accordance with the advertising medium, the firm should also provide a categorization of advertising expenditures. This should have sufficient information to do a plan-vs.-actual comparison and monitor spending on a month-by-month basis. Typically, a plan would also contain certain programs, management duties, marketing strategies, and sales approaches. The expenditure budget is quite restricted.

7. Aims and Objectives in Marketing

The marketing purpose and goals of the company should be clearly stated in the marketing strategy. Setting goals is a necessary step in the creation of any plans. Each company markets its goods and services with a certain set of aims and objectives in mind. While increasing sales is always the ultimate aim of any marketing strategy, there may be other objectives as well. For instance, a company would prefer that its target market sees its goods or services in one certain light over another. The company could want potential consumers to see its items as necessities rather than luxury goods. As a result, marketing activities will be directed toward achieving these goals, thus it is crucial that the marketing strategy properly outlines all of these aims and objectives. It is necessary to state the marketing objectives as well as how the company intends to accomplish these objectives via marketing and promotional efforts. Marketing goals should be clear, quantifiable, doable, reasonable, and time-bound.

8. Marketing strategy

How a company will achieve its marketing goals and objectives must be determined by the marketing department. What resources will be used to achieve these objectives? The process for carrying out marketing operations is clearly laid out in marketing methodology.

9. Marketing division

A wide range of individuals make up the market audience. Engagement with the audience depends on segmenting it and sending brand communications, messaging, and information. Each audience group must have material that is specific to them. Otherwise, making connections with others will be challenging. Market segmentation will assist the company in disseminating information, building brand recognition, and increasing sales. The target market for the firm should be stated clearly in the marketing strategy. A thorough research of every market segment, as well as consumer profiles from each of these categories, should be accessible if the company intends to offer its goods in many market segments. What elements characterize the target market for the company? Why will the audience find the firm's offerings appealing? The market study should provide answers to these two crucial questions.

10. Product information

The most comprehensive product description is required for a successful marketing strategy. Along with the characteristics and advantages of the items the company sells, a list of the drawbacks and solutions to these drawbacks must also be included. The name of the product's manufacturer and any safety precautions that must be observed while utilizing the product should also be included. The package information, warranties and guarantees that will be offered with the items, information pertaining to the repair of broken products, and information on customer assistance are other details that must be included in this marketing strategy.

11. Price information

Without sufficient knowledge on product and service prices, no marketing strategy is complete. Both the items' price strategy and the reasoning behind it should be discussed. The company must make it obvious why and how the cheap price would help them draw more consumers. This may also contain details on any discounts and rebates the business might be willing to provide you in exchange for your goods and services. The firm must specify in its marketing strategy whether it intends to have yearly sales or give discounts depending on seasonal events.

12. Integration

The marketing plan's content must be thoroughly linked with overall corporate marketing initiatives. An integrated marketing strategy that uses both online and offline content marketing as a catalyst for discussions, sharing, and effective word-of-mouth and brand loyalty may be the best method to surround customers with branded experiences.

Creating a plan and marketing strategies

A well-thought-out marketing plan is the foundation of effective marketing. A solid marketing plan lays out the actions that must be taken in order to meet the company's vision, purpose, and commercial objectives. Because the marketing strategy has an impact on how the company operates, it should be established and developed with input from the whole team.

A marketing plan, which specifies the precise steps that will be followed to carry out the marketing strategy, differs from a marketing strategy in that it establishes the overarching direction and objectives for the whole marketing function. While the marketing plan typically outlines techniques to be used in the current year, the marketing strategy may be prepared for the next several years. The process of marketing planning involves both the creation of goals and guidelines for how they will be achieved.The stages required in creating marketing planning are as follows:

1. Internal marketing environment analysis

Analyzing the company's current marketing environment is the first step in marketing planning. The corporation must now determine the strengths and weaknesses of the company. The SW analysis uses techniques including brand equity indexes, market share analyses, cost-volume-profit analyses, customer happiness indices, and marketing audits, among others. A product's unique selling proposition (USP) is an example of a strength, but a lack of innovation is an example of a weakness.

2. Analysis of the marketing environment outside

Political, social, economic, technical, and legal variables make up the external market environment. These variables aid in identifying market-related opportunities and risks. Opportunities and dangers are external elements that are beyond of the organization's direct control. The holiday season may be a chance to generate the most sales, however an increase in FDI in a country might pose a danger to local players in that country. This OT analysis may take into account political stability, shifting dietary habits, lifestyle changes, liberalization, new laws and amendments, technological advancements, etc. Demand forecasting, FDI influx, inflation, exchange rate, economic policies, budget, research studies, etc. are some of the strategies used in this.

3. Advertising Presumptions

A strong marketing strategy is built on a thorough understanding and knowledge of the target audience, but because it is impossible to know everything about each individual consumer, many assumptions are made. Assumptions concerning the target purchasers, for instance: - Target Buyer Assumptions. Assumptions regarding what buyers believe to be the most crucial aspects of the provided product are made in messaging and offering.

4. Setting company objectives

Prior to developing the marketing strategy, company objectives must be determined. such that defining a set of marketing objectives to support them will be simple. Typical business objectives include:

1. Raising awareness of the company's goods and services
2. Increasing sales of a certain supplier's goods
3. Reaching a new market of customers.
4. Setting marketing objectives and goals

Following the identification of the business objectives, the company must establish a particular set of marketing objectives based on the business objectives. These objectives will serve as the firm's and its team's road map and success indicators. Increased market penetration and market expansion are two examples of marketing objectives. These marketing objectives may be long-term and may need many years to effectively accomplish. However, they must be specific, quantifiable, and have deadlines for completion. The company must guarantee that its overall plans are both realistic and quantifiable. When the strategies have been successful or your marketing objectives have been reached, a strong marketing strategy will be tweaked rather than altered every year. Additionally, you could need to adjust your strategy if the external market changes as a result of a new rival or new technology, or if your goods undergo a significant shift.

6. Estimate the anticipated outcomes

Managers of marketing must predict the intended outcomes. They must forecast the target market's future size, composition, and tendencies. Without accurate forecasting, the marketing strategy may have unattainable objectives or fail to deliver on its promises.

Forecasting Customer Reaction: Marketing managers must predict how the typical consumer will react to marketing initiatives. Managers cannot correctly design the promotions without some understanding of how the marketing will be received.

Forecasting Marketing Cost: An accurate prediction of Marketing Cost is necessary to strengthen the Marketing Plan.

Market Forecasting: Marketing managers must have a thorough grasp of consumers, their purchasing preferences, and behaviors in order to make accurate market predictions.

Competition forecasting may be used to counteract competitors' actions by understanding how they market, how they market, and what incentives they utilize.

7. Study the market

Designing a marketing plan requires doing research. The business must gather data about the market, including its size, growth, social trends, and demography. In order for the strategy to stay effective and focused, it is crucial for the company to maintain an eye on the market and be aware of any changes that may occur over time.

8. Make a profile of your target clients

The business must utilize its market research to create a profile of the clients it is aiming at and should determine their demands. Their shopping habits, including where, how, and what they purchase, will be revealed by the profile. Once again, keep an eye on trends to ensure that the company doesn't lose out on new chances or stop being relevant with its marketing message. The business must ensure that its marketing plan will enable it to retain ties with its current clients as well as attract new ones.

9. Describe your rivals

Similar to this, the company should create a profile of its rivals as part of its marketing plan by identifying their goods, supply networks, pricing, and marketing strategies. This will be useful in determining the firm's competitive edge, or what makes the company stand out from its rivals. The company could also seek to assess the internal processes' strengths and shortcomings in order to boost its performance relative to that of its rivals.

10. Create plans that help you achieve your marketing objectives

The company has to identify its target audiences and come up with a plan of action to draw them in and keep them around. Increasing young people's awareness of the company's goods is one such objective. Then, complementary methods can include increasing the product's online social media presence via frequent updates on Twitter and Facebook, advertising in local periodicals geared for young people, and providing student discounts.

11. Making use of the "5 Ps of marketing"

The 5 Ps of marketing must be used by the company to determine its tactical marketing mix. Its marketing strategy is more likely to be effective if it can choose the ideal blend of product, price, promotion, place, and people.

12. Organizing the resources

An efficient marketing strategy needs the coordination of human, financial, and technological resources. This portion of the strategy outlines the resources required, and as a result, the marketing budget.

13. Evaluation and implementation

At this point, the marketing team is prepared to begin executing its strategies. This might include making financial investments in marketing, introducing new goods, communicating with prospective clients, setting up additional retail locations, etc.

14. Review the display

The last section of the strategy describes the controls that will be utilized to track development. Examine the outcomes for each period, which may be every month or every quarter, and decide whether the strategy is capable of achieving its goals. It can be improved if required by making a few changes.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, A marketing strategy is an essential tool for firms to succeed in marketing, develop their brands, and spur expansion. Companies may acquire a competitive edge, encourage consumer loyalty, and generate long-term value in the market by devoting time and money to creating a well-crafted marketing strategy. For firms to succeed in a constantly shifting business environment, flexibility, innovation, and alignment of marketing tactics with business goals are essential. An important step in a marketing plan's success is implementation. Businesses must make sure that initiatives are carried out on schedule and consistently while using the appropriate tools and resources. It's important to track performance throughout the implementation process in order to pinpoint problem areas and make on-the-fly improvements. A marketing strategy can only succeed with constant development. Businesses must remain flexible and adaptive due to the market's volatility, continually adjusting their tactics in response to customer feedback and changing consumer behavior.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Fotiadis, C. Mombeuil, and N. S. Valek, "Designing and implementing a marketing plan," in *The Emerald Handbook of Entrepreneurship in Tourism, Travel and Hospitality: Skills for Successful Ventures*, 2018. doi: 10.1108/978-1-78743-529-220181023.

[2] N. González-Fernández Villavicencio, "Un plan de Marketing no es un plan de comunicación," *Área Bibl. y Docuumentación la Univ. Pablo Olavide*, 2018.

[3] C. Girton, *Creating a Marketing Plan with a Marketing Team of One*. 2018.

[4] M. Almuzel, T. Goudarznia, A. Daneshi, M. Saadatmand, and M. Yacoub, "Tesla Solar Roof Marketing Plan," *Eng. Technol. Manag.*, 2018.

[5] S. Nurminen, "Social Media Marketing Plan for Online Boutique Miss Chic Bohé," *A thesis Present. Partial fulfilment Requir. Bachelor Bus. Adm. Helsinki Metrop. Univ. Appl. Sci.*, 2018.

[6] P. De Pelsmacker, S. van Tilburg, and C. Holthof, "Digital marketing strategies, online reviews and hotel performance," *Int. J. Hosp. Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.ijhm.2018.01.003.

[7] G. Oliva Castro and P. Sierra Sánchez, "Plan De Marketing Para El Incremento De Ventas De La Empresa Ecotours En El Departamento De Lambayeque. Periodo 2015 – 2016," *Univ. Católica St. Toribio Mogrovejo*, 2018.

[8] L. Rossiter, John R, Percy, Larry, Bergkvist, "Marketing Communications: Objectives, Strategy, Tactics," *Mark. Commun. Campaign Plan.*, 2018.

[9] V. Burksiene, J. Dvorak, and G. Burbulyte-Tsiskarishvili, "Sustainability and Sustainability Marketing in Competing for the Title of European Capital of Culture," *Organizacija*, 2018, doi: 10.2478/orga-2018-0005.

[10] N. D. López Capa, "Plan Estratégico De Marketing Para Incrementar Las Ventas En La Empresa Anshelitus 2016," *Univ. Nac. Trujillo*, 2018.

CHAPTER 10
MARKETING ENVIRONMENT ANALYSIS AND MIS

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Marketing Environment Analysis and Management Information Systems (MIS) are essential components of strategic marketing planning, enabling businesses to navigate the complex and dynamic business landscape successfully. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of marketing environment analysis and MIS in understanding market trends, identifying opportunities, and making informed marketing decisions. The abstract delves into the process of marketing environment analysis, encompassing macro-environmental factors such as economic, social, technological, legal, and political influences, as well as micro-environmental factors like competitors, customers, and suppliers. It also explores the role of MIS in collecting, organizing, and analyzing data to facilitate data-driven marketing strategies. Understanding and effectively utilizing marketing environment analysis and MIS empower businesses to adapt to changing market conditions, capitalize on growth opportunities, and achieve sustainable competitive advantage.

KEYWORDS:

Competitors, Cultural Factors, Demographic, Economic, Regulatory Factors.

INTRODUCTION

The marketing strategy of a corporation is influenced by several external factors. Some of them are within your control, while others are not. The marketing manager is in charge of adapting the company's policies to the ever-changing external environment. A marketing word is "market environment." It alludes to elements and causes that have an impact on a company's capacity to create and preserve fruitful partnerships with clients. A key component of a marketer's job is to stay one step ahead of the customer. Understanding the marketing environment is crucial for understanding customer concerns and motivations and for tailoring the product to meet those demands. To find trends, opportunities, and risks to a firm, marketers employ the process of marketing environmental scanning, which continuously collects information on activities taking place outside the organization[1], [2].The pressures and variables in the market environment impact a company's capacity to establish and nurture fruitful connections with clients. The capacity of a company to connect with customers and the product's potency as a company growth engine are both aspects that are included in the marketing environment.The internal dynamics and variables that have an impact on a company's capacity to establish and preserve fruitful business connections with its target consumers make up a company's marketing environment, according to Philip Kotler.

The phrase "marketing environment" may be described in plain English as "the different external influences that may have an impact, either directly or indirectly, on the numerous operations of a firm. An essential component of environmental scanning is this. These activities include the gathering of raw materials, financial resources, human resources, and the creation of commodities and services[3], [4]. The marketing environment is influenced by factors including politics, law, regulations, economics, social interaction, technology, and competition.Micro environment refers to minor influences inside the business that have an impact on how well it can service its clients, while macro environment refers to bigger societal forces that have an impact on the micro environment.

Analysis of the Internal Environment

The phrase "internal environment" refers to the factors present in a company that influence employee behavior. These factors have an impact on the decisions and actions made by workers inside a business. They consist of organizational structure, leadership philosophies, and culture. The components of an organization's internal environment include its present workers, management, and, in particular, the corporate culture, which determines employee behavior[5], [6]. Although some factors simply have an impact on the manager, others have an impact on the whole business. Employees are immediately impacted by the leadership philosophy or style of a boss. Progressive managers allow workers more freedom to make choices than traditional bosses who give them clear instructions. The manager is in charge of altering their leadership philosophies. The following are significant internal environment components that must be thoroughly analyzed:

1. An organization's mission

In statement explains what the group stands for and why it was founded. It comprises the qualities that set it apart from other organizations of its kind and defines the organization's general goal. A company's philosophy and purpose should be revealed in a mission statement, which should be more than just words on paper. This proclamation ought to be an active, dynamic document that informs and inspires the organization's members[7], [8]. The issues of "What are our values?" and "What do we stand for?" should be addressed in the mission statement. This declaration gives an organization direction by encouraging its members to collaborate in order to accomplish its stated objectives. Successful mission statements result in successful endeavors. Serving the demands of consumers is the primary goal of a successful mission statement in today's quality-conscious and fiercely competitive markets.

2. Corporate guidelines

Company rules serve as recommendations for how certain organizational circumstances should be handled. Company policies should be consistent with the mission statement of the company since they reveal the personality of the latter[9], [10].

3. Organizational structure

The formal organization structure is the hierarchical arrangement of personnel and tasks. This organizational structure dictates how information is shared inside the company, which departments are in charge of what tasks, and who has the final say. To make the breakdown of their formal structure more understandable, some organizations utilize a chart. The formal channels of power and communication within a company are represented visually in this organizational chart.

4. Organizational culture

An organization's culture defines its character. Every corporation has a unique personality, just as every individual does. An organization's culture sets it apart from others and influences how its members behave. The culture of an organization is made up of four key elements:

Values: Values are the fundamental principles that characterize an organization's successful personnel.Heroes are excellent individuals that represent the company's image, attitudes, or beliefs and serve as examples to other workers.Rites and rituals: The third element is rites and rituals, which are ceremonies or procedures that the business utilizes to reward exceptional workers. Awarded personnel may be recognized for exceptional service at award dinners, business events, and quarterly meetings.The informal method of communication inside an organization is the social network. This network, often known as the corporate grapevine, disseminates tales of both successful people and failures. Employees get a true understanding of the organization's culture and values via this network.

5. Organizational environment

The general vibe of the office and employee morale are components of the everyday environment. The kind of "atmosphere" that exists in the workplace depends on the attitudes of the employees. An organization's climate may be determined by the connections and interactions that workers have on a regular basis. The internal working culture of the organization will probably be examined, along with any potential changes over time from its initial purpose and aims. A business may sometimes hire an independent firm to carry out the study. When a corporation seeks an outside, unbiased perspective on its internal operations, such a move may be made.

6. Resources

An organization's resources include its people, information, buildings, infrastructure, machinery, equipment, supplies, and financial resources. The most valuable resource for any firm is its people. Non-human supporting resources that aid employees in achieving the organization's objective include information, facilities, machinery, equipment, materials, supplies, and money. The resources that are available and how managers evaluate both human and nonhuman resources have an influence on the environment of the firm.

7. Management Philosophy

A manager's own set of views and values about people and the workplace is their management philosophy, and as such, they are under their direct control. The management ideologies then have an impact on worker behavior, which results in the self-fulfilling prophesy. Consequently, alignment between organizational and management ideologies is necessary.

8. Leadership style

A manager's leadership style may be inferred from the number of employees who participate in a problem-solving or decision-making process. Delegating decision-making authority, independence, knowledge, autonomy, and skills to subordinates is empowerment. Fortunately, the majority of businesses and management are moving toward the collaboration and active engagement that come with empowerment. When effectively managed, an empowered workforce may result in increased productivity and quality, lower costs, more innovation, better customer service, and a higher level of dedication from the company's workers.

DISCUSSION

The elements of its immediate environment. The variables affect the company's inability to produce and meet market demands. These elements are:

1. Suppliers

A company's marketing skills and competitive position may also be affected by its suppliers. These include providers of raw materials, energy, labor, and capital.

2. Brokers in the market

Every manufacturer needs a number of middlemen to market, sell, and distribute their products and services to the final customers. These middlemen might be private individuals or commercial businesses. These middlemen, market service providers, and financial institutions are the intermediates.

3. Customers

The clients might be categorized as:

4. Competitors

Competitors are people that provide comparable and identical products and services in the same market. Other than price rivalry, there are other factors, such as product differentiation. Therefore, it is essential to create an effective marketing strategy. This will boost self-assurance and provide greater outcomes.

5. Public

The business owes it to the general public, its rivals, and its customers to please them. It is essential for future development. The company's activities have an impact on the various groups that make up he company's broad public. Public relations are undoubtedly a large marketing operation that has to be completely managed. According to the definition of a public, it is "any group that has an actual or potential interest in or impact on a company's ability to achieve its objective."

The macro environment: This term describes all factors that influence the microenvironment and are a part of the greater society. The macro environment has an impact outside of the organization and is mostly beyond of its control. Although these elements indirectly impact the company's marketing choices, they do not directly affect the concern's marketing capability. Demography, economics, natural factors, technology, politics, and cultural themes are all included. These elements are:

1. Population Forces

Since individuals make up marketplaces, the marketer here keeps an eye on the populace. Marketers are quite interested in the population size and growth rate in various cities, regions, and countries, as well as the age distribution and racial makeup, educational levels, household patterns, and regional traits and movements. Studying human populations' size, density, location, age, gender, race, and profession is known as demography. This is a crucial variable for marketers to research since it aids in segmenting the population into target audiences and market segments. Classifying groups of individuals based on the year they were born is an example of demography. Each categorization has unique traits and reasons that they value. A marketer may take advantage of this by determining which target market would benefit from their product the most and then tailoring their marketing strategy to appeal to that group. Demography encompasses a wide range of elements that are crucial to marketers, such as family dynamics, regional movements, workforce adjustments, and degrees of diversity in any particular region.

2. Economical Aspects

The economic environment is another component of the macro environment. This is a reference to the prospective consumers' buying power and the manner in which individuals spend their money. The macroeconomic elements that affect the means of production and distribution and have an influence on an organization's operations within this region include the subsistence economy and the industrialized economy. Agriculture is the main sector of subsistence economies, which also use their own manufactured goods. Markets in industrialized countries are varied and carry a wide variety of commodities. Each is significant to the marketer since they each have quite distinct spending habits and wealth distributions.

3. Environmental or physical forces

Earth's natural resources, both renewable and non-renewable, make up physical forces. Natural regeneration factors include the ocean, agriculture, and forests, among others. Natural resources that cannot be renewed, like oil, coal, minerals, etc., are limited. Both of these factors often alter the quantity and kind of resources a marketer has at his disposal for his output. Natural resources used by a corporation as inputs that influence their marketing strategies are included in the term "natural environment." more pollution, a lack of raw resources, and more government interference are the issues in this region. It becomes more difficult to manufacture a company's goods when raw resources grow scarcer. Additionally, if a corporation has a reputation for endangering the environment, pollution may even have a negative impact on that company's brand. The last issue is that when regulations become more onerous, government interference may make it difficult for a corporation to achieve its objectives.

4. Technical considerations

The technical environment is made up of elements that have an influence on an organization's operations, including knowledge applied, materials and equipment utilized in the creation of products and services. Perhaps one of the macroenvironment's elements that changes the most quickly is the technical environment. This covers all advancements, from surgery and medicines to chemical and nuclear weapons to vehicles and credit cards. As these markets grow, new markets and product applications may be created. A corporation must also keep one step ahead of rivals and upgrade its own technology when it gets old. They must keep up with trends to avoid going out of style and incurring financial repercussions and to be a part of the next great thing.

5. Legal and political forces

Political and legislative developments have a significant impact on marketing choices. It is impossible to make a wise marketing choice without taking into consideration government organizations, political parties in power and opposition, their ideology, pressure groups, and local legislation. The management of marketing is under extreme strain as a result of these factors. Laws have an impact on a variety of factors, including product design, price, and advertising. Regardless of their political convictions, governments practically everywhere in the nation interfere in the marketing process. The laws, governmental bodies, and organizations that control or impose restrictions on other organizations and people within a society are all included in the political environment. The fact that these limitations might be complicated makes it crucial for marketers to be aware of them. State and federal laws both govern certain items. Even the intended market for certain items is subject to limitations; for instance, cigarettes should not be advertised to young children. Additionally, there are several limitations on monopolies and subliminal messaging. As rules and regulations often change, it is crucial for marketers to keep an eye on this area.

6. Cultural and social forces

As a substitute for the marketing concept, this idea has made its way into certain marketing books. The social forces try to socially responsible marketing. It implies that businesses should take the initiative to eliminate socially damaging items and only manufacture those that benefit society. These are the several societal pressure groups that place limitations on the marketing process. The cultural environment is a component of the macro environment and is made up of a group of people's fundamental institutions, values, and beliefs. Additional categories of values include fundamental beliefs, which are handed down from generation to generation and are extremely difficult to alter, and secondary beliefs, which are often simpler to modify. Knowing the distinction between the two can help you as a marketer aim your marketing efforts to match the values of a target audience.

Management Information System Concept

MIS is a system that aids in decision-making inside the company. Any business, no matter how large or little, spends a significant amount of time gathering, analyzing, and disseminating data. As a result, a significant amount of the overhead costs in the company are spent on this kind of useless activity. Every employee at a company is always seeking for information they need to do their tasks. As a result, the information is focused on individuals and changes depending on the types of people in the business. There are a few factors that make it challenging to manage the people's varied needs. The information has been processed to meet a vague requirement of the populace. The data search procedure takes time, and it can need a challenging processing route.

Information that businesses need to manage themselves successfully and efficiently is provided by MIS. Computer systems used for management are often called management information systems. The following are the five main parts:

1. Hardware
2. Software
3. Data
4. Procedures
5. People.

Because they are used to assess and support strategic and operational actions, management information systems set themselves apart from other types of information systems. A system that offers information assistance for organizational decision-making is known as the MIS. An integrated system of people and machines that provides information to assist operations, management, and decision-making inside an organization is known as a MIS. It is a system that was developed to provide information to the company's employees and is based on the database of the organization. It is an information system powered by computers.

Computer systems in an organization that give data about its business activities are collectively referred to as MIS. It may also be used to describe the individuals in charge of these systems. "MIS" or the "MIS department" often refers to a centralized or centrally-coordinated system of computer competence and administration in a major organization. Modern, computerized technologies continually collect pertinent data from both within and outside a business for a management information system. Following processing, integration, and storage in a centralized database, this data is then made accessible to all parties with access rights in a format appropriate for their needs. A three-resource system necessary for efficient organization management is referred to as MIS, a phrase that is often used and utilized. The "System" is a collection of information management methods involving computer automation or otherwise supporting and improving the quality and efficiency of business operations and human decision making. The resources are people, information, and technology, from both inside and outside an organization, with top priority given to "people."

Management Information System Components

1. Computer Equipment

Today, many homes worldwide and even the tiniest businesses own or rent computers. Typically, they are microcomputers, often known as personal computers. People may have many computers in the form of smartphones and other portable electronic gadgets. Distributed computer systems are often used by large businesses, ranging from strong parallel-processing servers housed in data centers to widely spread personal computers and mobile devices connected into the corporate information systems. These make up the hardware of information systems, together with the peripheral devices including input-output devices, telecommunications equipment, and magnetic or solid-state storage disks. While processor power and storage capacity have greatly improved, hardware costs have continuously and quickly fallen. However, designers are paying attention to issues like how much electricity technology uses and how it affects the environment.

2. Computer Programs

System software and application software are the two main categories of computer software. The operating system is the main piece of system software. It controls the computer's hardware, data, program files, and other system resources while also giving the user access to the controls, often via a graphical user interface. Programs called application software are designed to fulfill certain duties for users. Examples include "vertical" applications that cater to a particular industrial sector, such as one that plans, routes, and records package delivery for an overnight carrier, as well as general-purpose application suites with its spreadsheet and word-processing programs. Larger companies employ licensed programs, modifying them to match their unique requirements, and either internally or externally build new apps. Businesses may also utilize apps that are provided as web-based software as a service. Open-source software, which is made accessible on the Web for free use and modification under a license that ensures its continued availability, is posing a threat to proprietary software, which is sold by and maintained by its manufacturers.

3. Procedures

Information is sent and computer systems are networked through telecommunications. Both wired and wireless media are used to establish connections. Fiber optics and coaxial cable are examples of wired technology. Mobile computing is supported by wireless technologies, which are primarily based on the transmission of microwaves and radio waves. Due to the inclusion of computer equipment in a wide variety of physical items, omnipresent information systems have emerged. To track a product's location and check its quality, sensors like radio frequency identification devices, for instance, may be connected to items as they move through the supply chain. Massive volumes of data may be generated by wireless sensor networks that are connected to the Internet and used to track environmental conditions or find ways to increase production. Depending on an organization's requirements, many computer network designs are feasible. Computers connected by local area networks may be found at specific locations like business buildings or campuses of universities. Metropolitan area networks only serve a small region that is heavily inhabited. Data centers that are widely dispersed and usually controlled by various corporations are connected via wide area networks. The Internet connects billions of computers spread across every continent via a network of networks. Users may connect with others, including colleagues, customers, and others who have similar interests to their own or their professions, as well as information resources, such as big databases, via networking. Different intranets that are accessible via a browser might provide internet-type services inside an organization and for its exclusive use; for instance, an intranet may be implemented as an access gateway to a shared corporate document base. By encrypting the communications, extranets are created as so-called virtual private networks, enabling safe and private communication with business partners via the Internet. The technological component's goal is to make the complicated processes behind the scenes simpler and provide business users the ability to utilize their material to respond to questions.

4. People

Any information system must have qualified personnel. Managers of development and operations, business analysts, systems analysts and designers, database administrators, computer programmers, computer security experts, and operators of computers are examples of technical employees.

All employees inside a company must also get training on how to use information systems. As they utilize the Web, billions of individuals worldwide are learning about information systems. An information management initiative's success depends on having the proper personnel in place. The first step in guaranteeing that the initiative can develop from its infancy stage to maturity is to identify motivated people.

5. Data warehouses and databases

The main function of many information systems is to distribute data from databases. A database is a grouping of linked material that has been arranged to allow retrieval of specific records or sets of information in response to certain criteria. Employee data and product catalogs are common instances of databases. Databases help an organization's management and operational tasks. Archival data that has been gathered over time and stored in data warehouses may be mined for information to help create and promote new goods, provide better service to current consumers, or connect with prospective new customers. These data sets cover everybody who has ever made a credit card purchase, whether it was in person, by mail, or online.

1. Establish a data governance plan that specifies who will be in charge of managing the data and how it will be handled.
2. Identify data stewards and specify their responsibilities in detail. Use a data dictionary to define typical business concepts
3. Start a data audit and activities to improve data quality
4. To build awareness of the information management program, create a systematic communication strategy.
5. Establish new guidelines and procedures for the content component.
6. These procedures allow for the meaningful translation of data into useful information for the company.

A corporation must take a proactive approach when dealing with the marketing environment. They can achieve this by promoting in places where there is a high potential for customers, which will enable them to more effectively establish the type of environment in which they will thrive. Equal importance must be given to both the macro and micro environments, and responses to changes in either must be appropriate. In conclusion, it can be argued that a corporation has to take into account all of its micro and macroenvironmental elements before developing any marketing plan. Without a suitable information system, no marketing firm can operate efficiently. Every facet of marketing, including the customer, the market, the competitor, and the environment, should be covered by the information system. A company's MIS and marketing effectiveness are directly related to one another. Marketing excellence is the end consequence of wise marketing choices, and wise judgments can only be made when the organization's information system swiftly supplies up-to-date, trustworthy information.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Successful marketing planning and execution depend on both MIS and marketing environment analyses. Utilizing these technologies enables companies to acquire a thorough awareness of their market environment, make data-driven choices, and maximize marketing initiatives for long-term development and competitive advantage. Adopting these strategies encourages creativity and adaptation, enabling businesses to succeed in a constantly shifting business environment. MIS also improves the efficacy and efficiency of marketing activities. MIS gives marketing teams the tools they need to be more adaptable and responsive to market changes by automating repetitive operations, improving data administration, and offering real-time analytics. By combining marketing environment research with MIS, organizations are better equipped to see opportunities, manage risks, and maintain their competitiveness in a market that is changing quickly. Organizations may use this synergy to adopt tactics that are in line with their long-term company goals and make smart marketing choices.

REFERENCES:

[1] D. H. Shih, K. C. Lu, Y. T. Shih, and P. Y. Shih, “A simulated organic vegetable production and marketing environment by using ethereum,” *Electron.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/electronics8111341.

[2] Y. Petrunia, V. Chentsov, N. Życzyński, and V. Petrunia, “Marketing environment and marketing management of universities in Ukraine: National and regional dominants,” *Innov. Mark.*, 2019, doi: 10.21511/im.15(1).2019.01.

[3] V. Abraham and J. Joseph, “an Empirical Study on Direct Marketing As the Most Effective Form of Marketing in the Digitalized Marketing Environment,” © *Int. J. Res. Sci. Manag.*, 2019.

[4] M. A. Camilleri, “Higher education marketing: Opportunities and challenges in the digital Era,” *Acad.*, 2019, doi: 10.26220/aca.3169.

[5] R. Kusumadewi, “The Role of Marketing and Individual Environment Association in Elevating the Customer Value,” *Budapest Int. Res. Critics Inst. Humanit. Soc. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.33258/birci.v2i4.601.

[6] D. Chiguvi, E. Madondo, and R. Tadu, “The Credibility of Traditional and Online Media for the Promotion of Tourism in the Contemporary Tourism Marketing Environment in Durban South Africa,” *Bus. Manag. Stud.*, 2019, doi: 10.11114/bms.v5i4.4596.

[7] K. Gielens and J. B. E. M. Steenkamp, “Branding in the era of digital (dis)intermediation,” *Int. J. Res. Mark.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.ijresmar.2019.01.005.

[8] R. K. Bhatt and D. Gupta, “Essentials of marketing management in LIS,” *Libr. Philos. Pract.*, 2019.

[9] V. Charitsis, A. F. Yngfalk, and P. Skålén, "'Made to run': Biopolitical marketing and the making of the self-quantified runner," *Mark. Theory*, 2019, doi: 10.1177/1470593118799794.

[10] S. S. Salokhe, "Responsible agricultural inputs marketing: A key to save environment," *Indian J. Agric. Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.18805/IJARe.A-4985.

CHAPTER 11
INDUSTRY ATTRACTIVENESS AND MARKETING RESEARCH

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Industry attractiveness and marketing research are critical components in the strategic decision-making process of businesses. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of assessing industry attractiveness and conducting marketing research to inform effective marketing strategies. The abstract explores the concept of industry attractiveness, which involves evaluating the potential for profitability and growth within a specific industry. It delves into the factors influencing industry attractiveness, such as market size, growth rate, competitive intensity, and barriers to entry. Additionally, the abstract highlights the role of marketing research in gathering valuable insights into consumer behavior, market trends, and competitor activities. Understanding industry attractiveness and conducting comprehensive marketing research empowers businesses to identify lucrative opportunities, mitigate risks, and design customer-centric marketing strategies to achieve sustained success in a competitive market.

KEYWORDS:

Competitive Intensity, Economic Indicators, Industry Growth, Market Demand, Market Size, Profitability.

INTRODUCTION

Industrial attractiveness is the amount and simplicity of profit-making a sector of the economy provides in proportion to the risks involved. It is based on the quantity of rivals, their relative power, the size of their profit margins, and the pace of increase in the demand for their products or services[1], [2]. An extensive industry study is a labor-intensive project that takes months to accomplish. There are several organizations that serve as a source of information, including:

1. Market watchers
2. Workers
3. Suppliers of services
4. Customers
5. Suppliers

Industry Attractiveness Concept

The attractiveness of an industry as a whole may be assessed using a variety of common attractiveness metrics. The following are the criteria:

1. Growth

The potential for growth goes beyond specific goods or services. It basically comprehends the variables that influence demand for a variety of goods or services. The firm will be able to assess your company's development potential after it has a clear understanding of these aspects[3], [4]. Firm must comprehend typical customers and any other aspects affecting consumer growth or decline. Some typical elements could include the following:

Trends in demographics

Age profiles, sex, regional shifts, and other demographic patterns are examples of demographic trends. For instance, if individuals over the age of fifty-five are primarily using your services, your development potential is likely to be significant given that the proportion of persons over fifty-five is steadily rising. You work in a sector that is expanding[5], [6].

Social Movements

Social trends are changes in the ratio of work to leisure time or in the everyday activities that people engage in. For instance, if your company sells prepared meals as its main product, your development potential is likely to be considerable given the rising trend of consumers purchasing these items. Once again, you are a member of a developing sector[7], [8].

Trends in technology

In this sense, the term "technology trends" refers to the development of new, affordable technology that enables people to carry out tasks that would otherwise be impractical or too costly. For instance, given the rising widespread availability of this technology, your business's development potential is likely to be significant if it closely relates to the number of personal computers or Internet connections. Once again, you are a member of a developing sector[9], [10].

Scale

The scale of the industry is a crucial factor. Once an industry has grown significantly, it permits a variety of competitors. It fosters participation in the market from firms with a supermarket-style, basic product line, technological innovators, geographically-based, and single-product focus. This gives customers more alternatives and gives businesses more strategic options.

Depending on the capital intensity of the business, we may determine the real revenue amount that must be attained for there to be the proper critical mass to encourage variety of competition. The lower the capital investment needed to join a sector, the smaller the revenue base that each business must have. A contrast of the fast-food business to a capital-intensive manufacturing industry is an excellent illustration of suitable industry size. A potential owner would just need to take into account the demand and income base from their local neighborhood when looking at a fast-food company with a relatively minimal capital input. To make sure they can build a strong enough customer base, a potential owner of a capital-intensive manufacturing firm would need to think about national and maybe worldwide needs for their goods.

Profitability and Returns

Fundamentally appealing sectors are those in which the average rate of return on invested capital exceeds the average rate of cost of capital. An industry is more appealing the greater the disparity. Wealth is being produced in these sectors. danger and return are, of course, inversely correlated; the larger the return, the bigger the danger. We have learned over the last ten years that many service businesses generate attractive returns that are well above their cost of capital. We can discover unappealing results if we looked recently for any new high technology or Internet-based enterprises. We would need to assess the attractiveness of these sectors going forward over the next ten years as their markets expand dramatically.

Competitive Structure

A key component of strategic analysis is comprehending the competitive structure of an industry. The competitive factors that affect an industry's profitability are mostly determined by its structural characteristics. The competitive structure of the market is influenced by three key factors. They have to do with the degree of aggressive behavior demonstrated by current rivals, the possibility of future rivals, and the effect throughout the supply chain.

Supply Chain Influence

By pressing for cheaper pricing, better quality, or greater service, consumers have an effect on industry profitability. If customers are few in comparison to sellers, it is simple for them to switch suppliers, they can backward integrate, etc., then they have influence. By lobbying for higher pricing or poorer quality products and services, suppliers have an influence on the profitability of the sector. Suppliers have sway if, for example, there are few of them in comparison to the consumers, no replacement goods exist, the industry is not a significant client base, their product is essential to your company, it is difficult to switch suppliers, they can integrate ahead, etc.

Market Diversity

An industry is more appealing the wider the variety of market groups it serves with its goods. If the destiny of an industry depends on only one market sector, there is a huge risk involved. The reality that various market sectors may experience various development rates and demand cycles is what makes market variety so alluring. As a result, the demand for goods may be more even, and resources may be used more effectively.

Cyclic ability

To some degree, market variety affects cyclic ability. The less appealing an industry is, the more intense the cyclical nature of demand for its goods. Resource management may be very challenging due to the cyclical nature of demand.

Community Risk

Over the next several years, rules and requirements for industry in terms of occupational health and safety and environmental compliance will only become stricter. Evidently, industries are more appealing if there is no danger involved. Environmental and occupational health and safety risks are especially high for the manufacturing sector. These risks may be mitigated by excellent processes and employee experience, and in certain sectors, a specific business with these talents may have a competitive advantage. The need for these methods and expertise might be a considerable barrier to entrance for new participants.

DISCUSSION

Porter's Five Forces Model

In his book Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analyzing Industries and Competitors, Harvard Business School professor Michael E. Porter developed Porter's Five Forces of Competitive Position Analysis as a straightforward framework for assessing and evaluating the competitive strength and position of a business organization. A framework for analyzing industries and creating business strategies is the Porter Five Forces Analysis. It uses industrial organization economics to extract five dynamics that affect how competitive a market is and how desirable it is as a result. In this sense, attractiveness refers to the overall profitability of the sector. The combination of these five factors serves to reduce overall profitability in a "unattractive" sector. An industry that is close to "pure competition," in which possible earnings for all enterprises are reduced to normal profit, would be exceedingly undesirable.

This theory is predicated on the idea that a market's competitive intensity and attractiveness are determined by five factors. Porter's five forces may be used to determine who has the advantage in a given business scenario. Both the strength of a business's existing competitive position and the strength of a position that an organization would try to move into can be understood using this information. Porter's five forces are often used by strategic analysts to determine the potential profitability of new goods and services. The idea may also be used to identify areas of strength, to strengthen weaknesses, and to prevent errors by recognizing where power rests. Competition from outside sources is mentioned in three of Porter's five forces. Internal dangers make up the remaining. Porter used the word "micro environment" to describe these factors in contrast to the more all-encompassing phrase "macro environment." They are made up of the external factors that have an impact on a company's capacity to service its clients and turn a profit. Given the general shift in industry knowledge, a business unit often has to reevaluate the market whenever one of the factors changes. The attractiveness of the sector as a whole does not guarantee that every company will be profitable. Businesses may use their core strengths, business strategy, or network to generate profits that are higher than the sector average. The airline business is an excellent illustration of this. Although the profitability of the sector as a whole is poor, certain businesses have been able to outperform it by using innovative business methods.

Three of Porter's five forces come from 'horizontal' competition: the threat of substitute goods or services, the threat of seasoned competitors, and the threat of new entrants; and two come from'vertical' competition: the bargaining power of suppliers and the bargaining power of customers. Following is a discussion of the five forces:

Threat of new competitors

Profit marketplaces with high returns will attract new businesses. This leads to a large number of new entries, which ultimately lowers profitability for all businesses in the sector. The anomalous profit rate will go towards zero unless incumbents can prevent the entrance of new companies. Potential elements includethe presence of access obstacles. The market sector with the highest entrance barriers and lowest departure barriers is the most appealing. Few new businesses can open, and poorly performing businesses may readily leave.

A threat of inferior goods or services

Customers are more likely to switch to alternatives when items exist that are beyond the typical product limits. Potential elements include:

1. Replacement tendency of consumers
2. Relative cost performance of a replacement
3. Customer switching fees
4. Product difference as perceived by consumers
5. Number of marketable alternatives to the original product
6. Easy replacement. Information-based goods are especially vulnerable to substitution since online goods may readily take the place of tangible goods.
7. Inadequate product
8. Decline in quality.
9. Customer bargaining power.

The capacity of consumers to exert pressure on the company, which also influences the customer's sensitivity to price fluctuations, is referred to as the market of outputs. Companies might employ a loyalty program or other strategies to weaken their customers' purchasing power. Potential elements include:

1. Ratio of company concentration to buyer concentration
2. Degree of dependence on current distribution channels
3. Using leverage while negotiating, especially in sectors with large fixed costs
4. Similar to company switching costs, buyer switching costs
5. Available information about customers
6. Reduced prices
7. Current alternatives to current items
8. Pricing sensitivity of the buyer
9. Differential benefits of sector goods.
10. Supplier bargaining power:

The market of inputs is another term for the providers' negotiating position. When there are limited alternatives, the suppliers of the firm's raw materials, components, labor, and services may be a source of control over the company. Suppliers could refuse to collaborate with the company or demand exorbitant costs for special resources. The potential elements include:

1. Compared to company switching costs, supplier switching costs
2. Degree of input differentiation
3. Inputs' effects on price or differentiation
4. Availability of replacement inputs
5. Strength of the route of distribution
6. Ratio of firm concentration to supplier concentration
7. Employee cooperation
8. Competition among suppliers: the capacity to go toward vertical integration and exclude the customer.

Competitive competition intensity

The main factor affecting an industry's competitiveness in the majority of sectors is the level of competition between firms. The potential elements include:

1. Innovation for long-term competitive advantage
2. Online and offline businesses are in competition.
3. Cost of advertising on a scale
4. Competing approach that is effective
5. Ratio of firm concentration
6. transparency level.

Porter's Five Forces Model Advantages

The Porter's Five Forces model is a simple yet effective technique for determining who has the power in a given business setting. In order to make choices on whether to join a certain sector, whether to expand capacity in a particular industry, and how to establish competitive strategies, businesses may benefit from understanding the five variables that influence profitability in a particular industry. Understanding the strength of the company's existing competitive position as well as the strength of a position the firm is contemplating assuming is helpful. Firm can fairly use a position of strength, strengthen a situation of weakness, and avoid making mistakes if they have a clear grasp of where power sits. As a result, it is crucial to the planning of the company. The technique is often used to determine if new enterprises, services, or products have the potential to be profitable. When used to understand the distribution of power in different circumstances, it may, nonetheless, be quite instructive.

Marketing Research Concept

Market research is the gathering and evaluation of data on customers, rivals, and the success of marketing campaigns. In order to identify and define marketing opportunities and problems, generate, improve, and evaluate marketing actions, track marketing performance, and better understand marketing as a process, marketing research is the function that connects the consumer, customer, and public to the marketer through information. The information needed to solve these challenges is laid out in marketing research, which also develops the technique for gathering it, coordinates and performs the data collection process, processes the results, analyzes them, and then conveys the conclusions and their consequences.

According to Wikipedia, marketing research is "the process or set of processes that links the consumers, customers, and end users to the marketer through information and is used to identify and define marketing opportunities and problems; generate, refine, and evaluate marketing actions; monitor marketing performance; and improve understanding of marketing as a process. Identification and evaluation of the effects of altering marketing mix components on consumer behavior are the main objectives of marketing research.Marketing research is defined as: American Marketing Association claims thatthe systematic collection, recording, and analysis of data about issues pertaining to the marketing of products and services is known as "marketing research."

As stated by Philip Kotler,

"Marketing research is a systematic problem analysis, model building, and fact finding for the purpose of improved decision-making and control in the marketing of goods and services."

Paul Green and Donald Toll claim that

The systematic and unbiased search for, and analysis of, information pertinent to the recognition and resolution of any issue in the area of marketing constitutes marketing research. Marketing Research is the application of scientific methods in the solution of marketing problems," claim David Luck, Donald Taylor, and Hugh Wales.In market research, two kinds of data are used:

Primary data: This research business either produces the data itself or pays someone to do so.

Secondary data: This kind of study has previously been collected and arranged. Reports and studies by governmental organizations, industry trade groups, or other companies are examples of secondary information. The majority of the research acquired was probably secondary.

Marketing strategy advantages

1. The organization's communication with both present and future clients is guided by market research.
2. Market analysis aids in locating business prospects.
3. Market research assists in reducing hazards.
4. Market analysis gauges an organization's standing in the industry.
5. Potential issues are found and identified via market research.
6. Market research assists the business in making future plans.

7. The establishment of trends might benefit the company via market research.
8. Your market positioning is established with the use of market research.

Marketing Research Procedure

The stages involved in doing market research are as follows:

Identifying the Issue

Finding the purpose or issue for which research is to be undertaken is always the first step. .In many cases, a management issue serves as the starting point for study. It is necessary to comprehend this issue, identify its root, and design remedies. This involves gathering pertinent preliminary data and considering how it may influence the decision-making process. It also entails outlining issues after speaking with organizational decision-makers. The next step might be carried out effectively if the issue is clearly stated and the necessity for study is addressed.

Identifying the goal

Once the problem has been identified and it has been determined that research is necessary, it is crucial to decide who will do the study and what the tactics will be to address the issues. After consulting with organization specialists, this entails developing an analytical framework and problem-solving framework. By incorporating the pertinent information and secondary data, case studies are developed in this sample in accordance with the established framework.

Deciding on the best methodology

The research professional includes a special process after determining the unique requirements and investigating the case studies. It could include a mix of particular strategies including one-on-one interviews, online or email surveys, telephone surveys, secondary research, etc. This technique serves as a guide for the following fundamental phases in the research process:

1. Techniques for gathering and processing quantitative data
2. Determining if this information is needed
3. Scaling and measurement techniques
4. Creating a model questionnaire
5. Case studies and the sampling method
6. Creating an information analysis plan.

Experimental research and non-experimental research are the two main approaches that may be used to any research subject. You have the benefit of controlling irrelevant factors and modifying one or more variables that affect the process being used in experimental research. While observation is permitted in non-experimental research, action is not.

Data Gathering Method

For the purpose of gathering all pertinent data and information, this method involves both deskwork and fieldwork. The field work comprises conducting face-to-face interviews with individuals by visiting them in their homes or places of business or setting up group gatherings in any location of their choosing. Desk employment involves communicating with people over the phone, via emails, and during online meetings. Comparatively speaking, this can take longer than the field job. Data gathering mistakes are decreased when experienced and skilled executives are used.

Data Evaluation

The acquired data is edited, updated, and confirmed after the data collection step. The preparation of the data serves as the foundation for the research's most crucial step, which produces the findings. Therefore, an organization must check the accuracy of the data that has been gathered and, if necessary, modify or correct it. The final data is then separated in accordance with organizational requirements and entered into the CRM database in a more tabular format to facilitate easy search and combination. According to organizational standards, the complete process is carefully recorded so that it may be used in the future for decision-making or to adapt or modify any particular process or module. This paper includes the project's general design, outlining each step with the use of s, graphs, and s to increase impact and clarity.

Report on market research

The final study report is being written by the researcher at this point. This report will include all of your data, including an accurate account of the study method, findings, conclusions, and suggested next steps. The report needs to provide the decision-maker all the data they want to comprehend the project. Additionally, it must to be expressed in clear, simple terms. Finding the right balance between thoroughness and conciseness is crucial. The marketing executives must get the report so they may make suggestions and put them into practice.

A follow-up

A follow-up is the last phase in a marketing research process. At this point, the marketing executive alters the product, the pricing, the marketing strategies, etc. in accordance with the report's suggestions. Here, the researcher should ascertain whether or not his suggestions are carried out correctly. He ought to disclose if the marketing issue has been resolved or not. SWOT analysis may benefit from the use of Porter's Five Forces Model. It may be helpful in developing powerful marketing tactics. It's crucial to pay attention to the organization's market research department if you want your marketing techniques to be more successful. Market research assists the company in identifying the different aspects that have an impact on how the organization functions both internally and outside. The firm will undoubtedly be able to develop a successful marketing strategy if it does market research in a methodical manner.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Marketing research and industry attractiveness analysis are essential tools for companies looking for long-term success. Companies may find interesting possibilities and make educated choices regarding resource allocation and market entrance by thoroughly evaluating the attractiveness of the sector. Meanwhile, marketing research offers useful information that enables businesses to create customer-focused marketing plans, establish brand positioning, and cultivate long-lasting client connections. Businesses are better prepared to succeed in a dynamic and competitive business environment when they embrace industry attractiveness analysis and marketing research as crucial components of strategic planning. Additionally, marketing research helps companies to keep tabs on market trends, foresee changes in customer behavior, and keep abreast of market advancements. Companies may adjust their marketing tactics proactively to preserve a competitive advantage by keeping up with market developments.

REFERENCES:

[1] M. G. De Jong and U. Böckenholt, “Marketing Research,” in *Handbook of Item Response Theory: Three Volume Set*, 2018. doi: 10.1201/9781315119144-71.

[2] J. F. Hair, D. E. Harrison, and J. J. Risher, "Marketing research in the 21st century: Opportunities and challenges," *Rev. Bras. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.5585/bjm.v17i5.4173.

[3] M. Rambocas and B. G. Pacheco, "Online sentiment analysis in marketing research: a review," *Journal of Research in Interactive Marketing*. 2018. doi: 10.1108/JRIM-05-2017-0030.

[4] N. M. El-Bassiouny and N. Zahran, "Back to the future: historical nostalgia and the potentials for Islamic marketing research," *Journal of Islamic Marketing*. 2018. doi: 10.1108/JIMA-04-2018-0069.

[5] T. Andrei, "The Internet - Secondary Data Source in Marketing Research," *Econ. Ser.*, 2018.

[6] M. G. Dekimpe and B. Deleersnyder, "Business cycle research in marketing: a review and research agenda," *J. Acad. Mark. Sci.*, 2018, doi: 10.1007/s11747-017-0542-9.

[7] C. Krampe, N. R. Gier, and P. Kenning, "The application of mobile fNIRS in marketing research—detecting the 'first-choice-brand' effect," *Front. Hum. Neurosci.*, 2018, doi: 10.3389/fnhum.2018.00433.

[8] A. Lindgreen, C. A. Di Benedetto, J. Geersbro, and T. Ritter, "Past, present, and future business-to-business marketing research," *Ind. Mark. Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.indmarman.2018.01.022.

[9] M. Yang and P. Gabrielsson, "The Interface of International Marketing and Entrepreneurship Research: Review, Synthesis, and Future Directions," *J. Int. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.1177/1069031X18809988.

[10] R. W. Palmatier, "Advancing marketing strategy research," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science*. 2018. doi: 10.1007/s11747-018-0595-4.

CHAPTER 12
FUNDAMENTAL ASPECT OF SUCCESSFUL MARKETING: CONNECTING WITH CUSTOMERS

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Connecting with customers is a fundamental aspect of successful marketing and business growth. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of establishing meaningful connections with customers and the impact it has on brand loyalty, customer satisfaction, and long-term business success. The abstract explores various strategies and approaches businesses can adopt to connect with their customers, such as personalization, customer engagement, and exceptional customer service. It delves into the role of digital technology and social media in fostering customer interactions and building brand communities. Understanding the importance of connecting with customers enables businesses to build strong relationships, enhance customer retention, and create brand advocates in today's competitive market.

KEYWORDS:

Customer Focus, Differentiation, Market Research, Marketing Strategy, Product Quality.

INTRODUCTION

Customer value is the collection of advantages that consumers anticipate from a particular product or set of services. Customers purchase goods they believe to provide the most value to the customer. They seek to maximize value. Value is a reflection of the customer's perceived expenses, benefits, and costs, both real and intangible. It may be thought of as a synthesis of quality, service, and cost[1], [2]. The customer value trio is what Kotler refers to as. Value goes down with price and up with quality and services. The discovery, production, communication, delivery, and monitoring of consumer value are all aspects of marketing.Value is the cornerstone of the marketing strategy[3], [4]. The client, not the business, determines what they believe to be value. Therefore, a company's need for customer analysis is essential if it wants to understand the worth of its customers. Customers often estimate perceived value rather than correctly and impartially judging value and cost. The difference between all the advantages and all the expenses of a marketing offer in comparison to those of rival offers is known as consumer perceived value. Phil Kotler Customer perceived value is the collection of real and intangible advantages that a customer thinks about or imagines in a product or service.

Characteristics of Customer Value

1. Value as viewed by the consumer

The customer, not the business, determines what is valuable. Many times a firm may see a decline in its market share as a result of erroneous assumptions made by the company. For instance, despite P&G's assumption that customers would be happy with enhanced product attributeslonger shelf life and no breakagePringles did not provide any consumer value. These qualities were seen as having less significance by the buyer. They were apprehensive about paying a 10% price increase. As a consequence, when Pringles initially released the product to the market, their effort was a failure[5], [6].

2. Thorough customer analysis is necessary to create customer value.

Finding out what is valuable to the consumer is important for marketing. Customers' opinions of a product's performance are determined via customer surveys. Instead of only focusing on the need to enhance business/product performance, it is crucial to conduct customer surveys that assess consumers' perceptions of performance. It is crucial to ascertain which features clients value highly. Determine the significance of these characteristics to the clients and the degree to which the product meets these characteristics. To add value, they should later be included into the market offer[7], [8].

3. Determining the proper qualities:

It's important to determine the traits clients appreciate highly. Determine the significance of these characteristics to the clients and the degree to which the product meets these characteristics. To add value, they should later be included into the market offer[9], [10].

4. Physical or both:

Value is based on the perceived value of both physical and intangible advantages. The tangible advantages may include greater product quality, a lower price, etc. Better services might be one example of intangible advantages.

5. The core marketing

It is idea is that value is crucial to the marketing process because marketing plans are created with the value of the client in mind. Value makes it easier to design marketing strategies. Whether the product adds value for the consumer determines whether the marketing campaign is successful.

6. Creating pricing strategies

Before setting a price for a product, businesses must understand how the client perceives its worth. The cost of the product should not be the sole factor used to determine price; value to the client must also be taken into account.

7. Customer satisfaction

The customer satisfaction index is a crucial tool for determining how consumers feel they were treated favorably. The client would be able to determine if the product genuinely supplied the value that he experienced after using it. In essence, it just involves comparing the product's performance to what was anticipated.

DISCUSSION

Creating Customer Value

Customers and businesses both have different perspectives on what a customer is worth. The traditional model of value creation places a strong focus on the company and emphasizes innovation as a means of gaining a competitive edge. In order to acquire a competitive advantage, the modern model emphasizes the customer throughout the whole value generating process. The modern dynamics of value generation go beyond the established procedure. Value creation for the consumer must always be seen from their perspective.

Creating a value system where suppliers, clients, dealers, and allies collaborate to produce value is important to developing customer value.

The following areas are involved in creating customer value:

1. Superiority of goods and services

Producing goods that meet consumer wants is necessary for a business to create customer value. Delivering the items as promised is a requirement for conformance to quality. It emphasizes marketing and manufacturing quality, both of which contribute to the creation of consumer value. In other words, both the quality of the product and the quality of the service should be prioritized. High quality standards must be met in the execution of every marketing activity, including marketing research, sales training, advertising, and so on. The consumer will develop a favorable impression of you as a result.

2. Client satisfaction

Customer value creation depends on customer happiness. It is the person's sentiments of joy brought on by comparing a product's performance to what was anticipated. Any business's ability to succeed primarily hinges on how happy its clients are. An asset to the business and an unpaid sales representative of a company is a happy client. Customer satisfaction and retention depend on an understanding of their demands.

3. Quality and value in comparison to the opposition

Building customer value involves building a set of product requirements and standards for services that beyond those of rivals in meeting consumer demands. Instead of paying for the quality that the corporation wants the client to believe in, the customer pays for the perceived quality. Promoting perceived quality will aid the business in building customer value, ensuring repeat business, increased customer loyalty, and increased market share. The company must comprehend how customers perceive competitors, strengthen the customer's value chain or supply chain, customize experiences, and other strategies in order to compete, mount a robust defense against rivals, and generate customer value.

4. Management of customer value

As crucial as producing value for customers is managing it. The client must be prepared to pay for the acquisition and use of services. The consumer should see the value of the offer as better and relevant. Through regular contacts with its customers, or customer relationship management, the company should continually endeavor to generate and offer value to the consumer.

1. Innovations

2. Convenience in purchasing products

3. Usage of products with ease

4. Value-for-money recommendations

5. a company's reputation

Customer Value Elements

Customers' value may be divided into physical and intangible components.

A. Tangible Values Among the tangible values are

1. Functional values relate to the essential features of the product and its capacity to meet a certain client requirement. To improve their functional values, marketers often consider aspects including dependability, utility, durability, performance, resale value, and upkeep.
2. Aesthetic and sensory values relate to the artistic and visually appealing aspects of the product.
3. Easy accessibility, usage, and application of the product are all considered convenience factors. Microsoft's success was attributed to the Windows operating system, which people thought was very user-friendly.
4. Economic values are those that, in light of the price advantage, are seen to benefit the client.
5. Service values are what people believe the promptness and quality of the service to be worth. The value of consumers' services is increased when solid customer connections are maintained.

Immaterial Values

Among the intangible values are

1. Social values are qualities that represent a product's social acceptability and desirability. Environmentally conscious goods often reflect societal values.
2. The capacity of a product to satisfy the esteem and prestige of the buyer is referred to as status values. To increase consumer value, the majority of items targeted at the luxury market place an emphasis on the status value of the product.
3. Sentiment values describe a product's ability to evoke certain sentiments, emotions, or nostalgic memories while being used.
4. Belief values are the ideals that the product conveys in line with the opinions and beliefs of the client. The ‘vegetarian' claim made by Anchor toothpaste increases buyers' faith in the brand.

In the process of generating consumers' perceived value, physical value and intangible perception are both crucial.

Client Loyalty

The client is king in the current competitive market, and in order to keep him, the whole value package provided by the provider must better meet his needs than whatever the rivals can. Getting a new client is expensive, but maintaining an existing one is profitable. As more businesses became aware of this, loyalty programs were created. Loyalty programs might include gifts, extra points, and other incentives. Among the strategies to increase loyalty are:

1. Provide a warranty on the goods
2. Reasonable assurances
3. Pay attention to consumer problems and act quickly
4. Continually develop new goods
5. Develop a relationship with consumers. Customer retention is mostly dependent on relationship marketing.

Customer retention will result from maximizing customer happiness. As a result, a lot of businesses strive for complete client contentment. consumer loyalty is the propensity of a consumer to stick with a certain business and reject offers from other businesses.

Importance

According to estimates, acquiring new consumers costs five times as much as retaining existing ones.

1. Profit

Making money is what drives most businesses. Customers are not reluctant to spend extra for a product that meets their requirements. A devoted consumer is more likely to make more purchases, suggest the product or service to others, and is less price sensitive. According to studies, across a variety of sectors, a 5% increase in customer loyalty may result in profit increases of 25% to 85%. Knowing and excelling in the areas that matter most to the clients is crucial.

2. Higher costs

Customers that are happy and loyal are often willing to pay more for a service or product they believe in rather than sacrificing quality or performance to save a little money.

3. Spending on advertising is down

The cheapest and most efficient kind of promotion is happy, devoted clients. A devoted client is valuable to the business and serves as an unpaid sales advocate for it.

4. Decreases client complaints

Because loyal consumers are often happy, there are also less complaints. client happiness increases client loyalty, which is achieved by reducing customer complaints.

5. Less susceptible to the tactics of rivals

Loyal and content customers are less likely to be aware of competition activity. They are confident in their current offerings since they satisfy their long-term needs.

6. Improves a company's reputation

Loyal consumers help to improve the reputation of the company and the brand. Harley Davidson is a fantastic example of a company that values its consumers' loyalty since its patrons actively promote its goods. Customers who are unsatisfied not only lose money but are also likely to tell others about their negative experiences, which might damage the company's reputation.

7. Gaining market share

By aggressively recommending the product to others and buying more of it themselves, loyal consumers help the business build its market share. Therefore, businesses should invest more time in maintaining clients, cultivating client loyalty, and raising clients' proportion of purchases.

8. Promotes the introduction of new products

For a business with a large base of consistent, devoted clients, introducing new products is easier since they are inexpensive and well-received by the market.

9. Product life cycle lengthening

The durability of the product in the market is one of the most significant benefits of having devoted consumers. It has been observed that goods with devoted consumers often have longer product lives.

10. Reduces excessive and needless spending:

Businesses spend more effort and money obtaining customers than keeping them. An asset to the business and an unpaid sales representative of a company is a happy, devoted client. Businesses with loyal clientele may reduce unnecessary wasted spending. The firm's earnings will rise even more as a result of this.

Levels of Loyalty

There are many levels of client loyalty, as follows:

1. Suspect

Include all potential customers on your suspect list. They could or might not be aware of the products the business sells.

2. Prospects

They are prospective customers who are aware of the company's product offers and may be interested in purchasing it.

3. Customers

Customers include those who purchase a product from the business. Even though they bought the thing, they don't have any affinity for it or the firm.

4. Clients

When consumers are turned into clients, the company begins to make money at this level. Clients are loyal, repeat consumers who, despite their support being more reticent, have favorable attitudes, likenesses, and affinities for the company's goods and services.

5. Advocates

Clients who actively promote the brand and the company are called advocates. They endorse the merchandise to others. For every organization, having supporters for their goods or services is a great asset.

6. Partners

The relationship between the client and the company has the greatest degree of loyalty. Customers see the company and its goods as their own, and both party’s profit. This is the greatest level of customer dedication on exhibit. Partners are really loyal consumers.

Marketing Initiatives to Increase Loyalty

Building consumer loyalty may be done in a number of ways. The following are some crucial techniques for winning over clients and winning their loyalty to your brand:

1. Clientele database

Businesses may have a strong database of their consumers that includes information about their demographics, prior purchasing habits, and other crucial factors. This would not only enable the creation of products that are distinctive for a certain consumer group, but it would also please certain customers. For instance, a hotel may keep track of its devoted patrons, and when a patron orders meals or other room service, the hotel staff may inquire as to whether they would want to order their favorite. The consumer would be delighted as well as excited by this.

2. Schemes for Suggestions

Marketers may create recommendation programs to enhance the goods and services. One business, for instance, boosted customer loyalty by implementing a "mistake pointer" program that paid consumers for pointing out errors with the product or service. This program not only helped to enhance the service. Customers were delighted to discover that the errors they pointed out were promptly fixed.

3. Introducing clients by name

In particular, some savvy shops make it a point to acknowledge each client by name. For instance, the Dublin-based Quinn chain of supermarkets has two display units for its cash registers. One tells the consumer how much they spent and how many loyalty points they earned. The customer's identity is also disclosed to the checkout clerk but is hidden from view. This enables the cashier to grinned and call the client by name. On some days, patrons are encouraged to use nametags. Customers appear to adore it, and it provides staff members an opportunity to welcome them by name the next time.

4. On certain occasions, provide special gifts

Some vendors may give their loyal clients unique presents on certain occasions, such as birthday cakes or greetings. For instance, the Quinn grocery chain keeps track of the birthdays of its frequent customers in a database. When a frequent client checks out and the computer detects that it is their birthday, a signal displays on the checkout screen. It is announced that a birthday cake with the client's name on it should be delivered to the client at the exit door.

5. Premium Deals

Some marketers may sometimes entice customers away from rivals by offering premium deals. Extra units of the same product are included in premium offerings at no additional cost. This is feasible, particularly when it comes to fast-moving consumer products like food, toiletries, and other commodities. However, if the majority of rivals use this tactic at the same time, premium deals could not excite buyers.

6. Individualized marketing

A few businesses use one-to-one marketing. Particularly in B2B marketplaces, these businesses see their clients as partners. To create new goods or to enhance their services, businesses ask for the input of their consumers. The likelihood that a consumer will stay with a company increases if they get connected with it.

7. Loyalty Initiatives

Various loyalty programs may be used by businesses to retain clients. For instance, airlines may provide regular flyers with a particular rate. Businesses may also provide loyal customers presents and other rewards. However, it should be emphasized that not all profi clients must also be loyal, and vice versa. The company must thus exercise selection.A company must determine which of its clients are worth keeping and which are not in order to increase marketing efficiency. These consumers should get special care and attention. In other words, the company must assess the worth of its clients and then concentrate on MVCs.

8. After-Sale-Service

Effective after-sales support is now essential for maintaining a high level of customer satisfaction while gaining a competitive edge. Currently, the majority of items have technology that is standardized. Therefore, a firm may make a significant difference by offering efficient after-sale support, particularly in the case of durables, office equipment, and machinery.

1. The actions listed below must be taken by a business to provide top-notch after-sale service:
2. Choosing the best personnel to handle customer service after the transaction.
3. To increase their skills, the after-sale service workers will get training.
4. Motivation for the post-sale service by offering appropriate and timely rewards.
5. Programs for Priority Customers

Some businesses roll out programs for priority clients. The MVCs are the top clients. In terms of delivery, handling complaints, and other post-sale services, they are prioritized. Numerous businesses, particularly in the banking sector, use priority client programs. For instance, AXIS Bank has a list of priority clients and gives them extra services. On occasion, these customers also get special offers like free concert or movie tickets, among other things. Some banks, like Catholic Syrian Bank, provide individualized attention to their most important clients.

Customer feedback surveys

An organization may carry out post-purchase satisfaction studies. These surveys assist in determining the degree of client satisfaction. In order to increase customer satisfaction, important steps are followed, which aids in creating enduring relationships with devoted clients.

Client Lifetime Value

If a company takes care of its customers, the cliché goes, "the customer will take care of the business." Customer lifetime value is the net present value of the stream of future revenues anticipated throughout the course of a customer's lifetime of purchases.The average amount of money a customer spends with a company multiplied by the number of years the company plans to keep the client determines the lifetime value of that customer. Based on an average weekly expenditure and a customer's lifetime, we may calculate their lifetime worth. If a consumer spends Rs. 1000 on average each month and has a 10-year lifespan, their lifetime value is Rs. 300000. If the consumer is not happy, the loss is Rs. 300000 rather than Rs. 1000. Therefore, a company's most valuable resource is its consumers. It is crucial to comprehend how to raise client loyalty and increase consumer pleasure.

A little increase in customer loyalty may have a significant influence on turnover at a relatively low expense. Customer retention, profitability, and customer happiness are all positively correlated. A happy consumer is more devoted and dependable. The majority of businesses are making significant investments to boost performance in areas that affect consumer satisfaction, such as quality and customer service. The idea of lifelong customer values aids in increasing profitability and client retention. In today's cutthroat marketplace, it is more crucial than ever to satisfy all client demands. In a competitive market, gaining a new client is expensive, but maintaining an existing one is profitable. In this case, client loyalty to the product is successful. Customer loyalty refers to the propensity of customers to stick with a certain business.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Businesses that want to succeed in the cutthroat business environment of today must engage with their consumers on a strategic level. Companies may forge solid customer bonds, increase brand loyalty, and gain a durable competitive edge by implementing customer-centric methods, personalization, engagement, and great service. By creating client retention, advocacy, and ongoing prosperity in a commercial environment that is always evolving, investing in customer relationships will contribute to the long-term success and expansion of the company. Building connections with clients and turning them into brand promoters are also important aspects of connecting with them. Customers who are happy and engaged are more inclined to speak well about the company to others, which promotes organic growth.

REFERENCES:

[1] P. Rita, T. Oliveira, and A. Farisa, "The impact of e-service quality and customer satisfaction on customer behavior in online shopping," *Heliyon*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.heliyon.2019.e02690.

[2] B. Almohaimmeed, "Pillars of customer retention: An empirical study on the influence of customer satisfaction, customer loyalty, customer profitability on customer retention," *Serbian J. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.5937/sjm14-15517.

[3] M. I. El-Adly, "Modelling the relationship between hotel perceived value, customer satisfaction, and customer loyalty," *J. Retail. Consum. Serv.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jretconser.2018.07.007.

[4] D. Monferrer, M. A. Moliner, and M. Estrada, "Increasing customer loyalty through customer engagement in the retail banking industry," *Spanish J. Mark. - ESIC*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/SJME-07-2019-0042.

[5] A. Afthanorhan, Z. Awang, N. Rashid, H. Foziah, and P. L. Ghazali, "Assessing the effects of service quality on customer satisfaction," *Manag. Sci. Lett.*, 2019, doi: 10.5267/j.msl.2018.11.004.

[6] M. Pakurár, H. Haddad, J. Nagy, J. Popp, and J. Oláh, "The service quality dimensions that affect customer satisfaction in the Jordanian banking sector," *Sustain.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/su11041113.

[7] C. H. J. Wu and A. Mursid, "The relationship between personality, customer participation, customer value and customer satisfaction in tourism service," *Eur. J. Tour. Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.54055/ejtr.v23i.395.

[8] N. U. Hadi, N. Aslam, and A. Gulzar, "Sustainable service quality and customer loyalty: The role of customer satisfaction and switching costs in the Pakistan cellphone industry," *Sustain.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/su11082408.

[9] C. Lim, M. J. Kim, K. H. Kim, K. J. Kim, and P. Maglio, "Customer process management: A framework for using customer-related data to create customer value," *J. Serv. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/JOSM-02-2017-0031.

[10] P. Suchánek and M. Králová, "Customer satisfaction, loyalty, knowledge and competitiveness in the food industry," *Econ. Res. Istraz.* , 2019, doi: 10.1080/1331677X.2019.1627893.

CHAPTER 13
UNDERSTANDING THE IMPORTANCE OF CUSTOMER SATISFACTION

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Customer satisfaction is a vital metric in business that measures the extent to which customers are content with a company's products, services, and overall brand experience. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of customer satisfaction and its impact on business success. It explores the factors that influence customer satisfaction, including product quality, customer service, pricing, and brand reputation. The abstract also delves into the role of customer feedback and surveys in measuring and improving satisfaction levels. Understanding the importance of customer satisfaction enables businesses to prioritize customer-centricity, foster brand loyalty, and drive sustained growth in a competitive market.A satisfied customer is an asset to the firm and an unpaid sales ambassador of a company. If the performance falls short of expectations, then the customer is dissatisfied. If the performance matched the expectations, then the customer is satisfied.

KEYWORDS:

Customer Service, Market, Net Promoter Score (NPS), Product Quality, Service Quality, Surveys.

INTRODUCTION

The client is the only motivator and architect of modern company. Any business's ability to succeed primarily hinges on how happy its clients are. consumers who are completely happy generate more income than unsatisfied consumers. The consumer is thrilled if the performance meets or surpasses their expectations. Customer satisfaction is a measure of how well a company's overall offering meets a set of client demands. It gauges how clients see an organization's performance. - Alexander and Hill. Customer satisfaction refers to a person's emotions of happiness or disappointment as a consequence of comparing a product's performance to their expectations[1], [2].

Customer Adherence

According to Peter Drucker, any company's goal and objective should be to please its customers. A highly happy customer provides the business with a number of advantages. These are what they are:

1) Less responsive to pricing
2) A favorable attitude toward purchasing things
3) Positively promote the business and its goods to others.
4) Improvement of image
5) Improvement of profitability
6) Encourages customer loyalty brand adherence

For businesses to attract and keep clients, it is critical to comprehend their wants. It relies on how well client information is collected. It is necessary to translate this knowledge into product features. Customer loyalty is built through fostering trust and successfully managing interactions with customers. It is a procedure for converting customer data into fruitful client connections[3], [4].

Customer Dissatisfaction Factors

According to studies, the typical company loses between 10 and 30 percent of its clients annually, which has a detrimental effect on the company's sales and profitability. When there is a disconnect between the customer's expectations and the experience or service the company offers, the customer is dissatisfied[5], [6].

1. The discrepancy between services promised and services delivered constitutes the promotional gap.
2. The management of the business do not adequately comprehend the demands and priorities of the consumers. Without precise customer satisfaction evaluation, managers are very unlikely to make the appropriate choice.
3. The procedural gap is caused by the failure to transform client expectations into suitable operational procedures or systems. For instance, making a consumer wait a long time may make them unhappy.
4. The service offered differs from the service that was promised or described. When ensuring client happiness, worker behavior is crucial.
5. The perception gap is the difference between the level of service that customers perceive and the service that is actually offered. Since customers base their buying choices on what they believe to be true, it is crucial to understand this. Between what a company believes it is delivering and what consumers think they have gotten, there is a discrepancy [7], [8].

Customer Satisfaction Metrics

In order to fulfill the objectives, customer pleasure must be a marketing aim as well. It's critical to measure customer happiness in order to manage it well. It's true what they say: if you can't measure it, you can't manage it. Measuring customer satisfaction aids in the provision of trustworthy data, monitors performance improvement, and promotes efficient decision-making[9], [10].

1. Customer surveys

Customer surveys are a good way to track how satisfied customers are. Customer satisfaction is tracked via a self-completion survey at the time of sale or consumption that is based on a representative sample.

2. Internal benchmarking

Internal benchmarking may aid in the appropriate interpretation of survey data. Customer impression is mostly reflected in survey findings, and internal benchmarking aids in locating accurate data on the company's real performance. It helps in determining if the low ratings are the result of genuine issues or false impressions. The issues that matter most to consumers must be benchmarked.

3. Mystery shopping

To track client satisfaction, mystery shopping is especially useful in the retail industry. A mystery shopper purchases products and services while assuming the identity of a regular client. The main goal is to keep an eye on staff behavior and friendliness, which has an effect on customer happiness, and to report on the shopping experience while purchasing the company's and rivals' items.

4. Complaints

A helpful gauge for gauging client happiness is the number of complaints. They represent client opinion. It serves as a sign that consumer satisfaction is declining. It is crucial to promote client feedback on the company's performance, whether it be favorable or bad.

DISCUSSION

Steps in Customer Value Analysts

The adage "If business takes care of the customer, the customer will take care of the business" serves as the foundation for corporate success. Customer value analysis reveals the company's advantages and disadvantages in comparison to its rivals.

I. Finding the worth of the customer

Finding the concrete and intangible values that affect consumers is the first stage in a customer value analysis. Both physical and intangible values are represented by functional values, aesthetic/sensory values, convenience values, economic values, service values, social values, status values, sentiment values, and belief values. For each product, the physical and intangible values are different.

2. Evaluating advantages and qualities

The key characteristics and relevance of each of these values are assessed for the product by giving importance-weighting and rating in accordance after listing the tangible and intangible values. Additionally, these values are carefully evaluated and examined in order to determine how much each component is worth to the client.

3. Comparison of results

The product performance qualities of the firm and those of competitors are contrasted with regard to the customer value attributes.

4. Analyze the ratings for certain segments:

The organization is able to determine how much more or less consumers would pay for certain features or traits if they were added to or removed from the product offering thanks to the precise ratings of the value components.

5. Track changing consumer values:

Understanding what value the customer obtains from utilizing the company's product providing over time in comparison to the rivals' offerings requires regular review and monitoring of customer value over time.

Methods for Increasing Customer Value

1. Increasing the Relationship's Longevity

The more engaged a consumer is with a firm and its offerings, the more probable it is that they will remain a client. The organization is likely to extend the durability of the relationship and, as a result, the value of the client base by engaging and connecting with the consumers.

2. To increase wallet share

Increasing sales via new product offers and persuading customers to spend more through cross-selling and up-selling are two strategies for growing your customer base. By offering the product often, offering diverse items, and offering enhanced products, a business may expand its clientele. Understanding consumer profiles and purchasing behavior is crucial for this.

3. Increasing Customer Lifetime Value

The net present value of the predicted stream of earnings over the course of a customer's lifetime purchase is known as the customer lifetime value. client retention will increase as a result of better service, which will maximize earnings via client lifetime value.

4. Improve Customer Satisfaction

Companies must comprehend and have a thorough understanding of consumer expectations, and make an effort to tailor the product so that it matches the client's needs with the performance of the product.

5. Customers' needs

client service will improve and there will be more opportunity to grow the client base if you interact with the consumers by providing them with tailored product offers and engaging with them in a personalized fashion.

6. Concentrating on highly profitable clients

recognizing and using Pareto's principle, according to which 80% of revenues come from 20% of clients. The 20% of consumers who make high profits are the business's most valuable asset. When contrasted to the company's other clients, they may get preferential treatment. For instance, the airline industry gives preferential treatment to frequent flyers since they are the loyal and high-profit consumers.

7. Get rid of low-profit clients

To maintain a minimal customer income level, unsavory consumers might be either fired or persuaded to purchase more or pay more for the service provided.

8. Lowering the defect rate

It is important to make an effort to convince clients with product offerings that adequately meet their demands. The company's front-line staff needs to get training on how to better serve customers by comprehending their needs and providing answers to their questions.

9. Increasing Loyalty

The corporation may increase its customer base by attracting new consumers, retaining them as clients, promoting repeat business, and lastly turning them into brand ambassadors.

Customer Acquisition and Retention Process

Therefore, it is crucial to keep consumers, since doing so will increase customer loyalty and boost profitability. Following is a succinct explanation of the client acquisition and retention process:

1. Establishing a Relevant Market

The target market must be determined by the marketer. Nothing may be sold to anybody. The market needs to be properly focused. Some marketers could be knowledgeable, experienced, and skilled enough to handle a specific kind of company. Therefore, it is necessary to identify the relevant market on which the marketer intends to concentrate. The relevant market might include the markets for FMCG goods, cars, electronics, soft drinks, etc.

2. Determine the Market Segments:

The market segment must be determined by the marketer. All marketing choices are based on market segmentation. Market segmentation is the practice of finding several customer groups with various needs or preferences. The marketer may research the many segmentation bases, including behavioral, psychographic, sociographic, psychographic, and geographic segmentation.

3. The Best Market Segment to Choose

The marketer must choose the best segment after examining the segmentation principles. The marketer may sometimes choose a specialist market sector. The market segment is/are chosen based on a number of variables, including market competitiveness, product demand, consumer preferences, etc.

4. Creating a marketing mix

Depending on the market sector, the marketer must build the marketing mix. For instance, the marketing mix must be tailored to the target audiences if a marketer chooses an urban market segment with middle-upper and higher income levels. The product must have distinctive qualities, may cost more, may need more aggressive advertising, and must be distributed in metropolitan areas.

5. Controlling Customer Touchpoints

The consumer contact points must be managed by the marketer. Customer contact points are all interactions between a marketer and a customer, from order solicitation through post-purchase support. The consumer must be given considerate treatment in every connection. better sales and therefore better profitability would result from effective management of client interaction points. For instance, if a consumer complains about a product flaw, the marketer may replace the product as soon as possible or the product problem must be fixed to the customer's satisfaction.

6. Customer feedback surveys

In the case of durable goods, equipment, and machinery in particular, the marketer has to perform satisfaction surveys. Customer satisfaction levels are determined via satisfaction surveys. If customer satisfaction drops below a specific threshold, the marketer must adjust the marketing mix to better suit the demands of the target audience. The marketer might introduce new items to the market with the use of satisfaction surveys.

7. Create Loyalty Programs

To increase consumer equity, the marketer may create loyalty programs. To keep consumers who are loyal, a business may provide unique gifts or incentives. For instance, a restaurant may provide free appetizers, a free drink, or a special price. An organization may sometimes launch priority customer initiatives. The most important clients wear out the best clients. When it comes to product delivery, post-purchase support, or any other facility that consumers may need, priority customers need to be provided.

8. Keeping an eye on customer loyalty

Customer loyalty must be tracked by the marketer. This may be done by looking at the number of purchases, the frequency of orders, the recommendations made to others by repeat customers, etc. Monitoring client loyalty may reveal the rate of customer churn. The marketer must take the necessary steps to lower the customer defection rate and increase customer retention rate if it exceeds a certain threshold.

Management of Customer Relationships

In their book "Principles of Management," authors Philip Kotler and Gary Armstrong describe customer relationship management (CRM) as the process of maintaining specific data on each individual customer and all customer "touch points" in order to increase customer loyalty. Every encounter between a consumer and a business, such as a purchase, a payment transaction, a service visit, a satisfaction survey, etc., is included in the touch points. CRM combines all of the information that a company's marketing, sales, and services departments have about specific clients. CRM's goal is to increase customer equity.

CRM Benefits

1. Better customer service

With CRM, the business may provide its dependable and essential client's greater service. 20% of clients are reported to make up 80% of sales. Since they need more complex service than other consumers, it is worthwhile to target the significant clients.

For instance, AXIS Bank has a list of priority clients and gives them extra services. On occasion, these customers also get special offers like free concert or movie tickets, among other things. A few banks, notably Catholic Syrian Bank, provide priority clients individualized service.

2. Adapt market offerings

Depending on the data that the company has access to, a product or service may be customized. Through its contact center and website, the business may help customers and partners communicate. The creation of personalized goods is aided by such interaction.

3. Client Retention

CRM places a strong emphasis on staff training and development to help them become more customer-focused. Employees now care and are concerned about the important clients thanks to CRM training and development. As a result, the rate of client churn may be quite low.

4. Long-term Relationships are More Likely

Particularly in B2B marketplaces, some businesses regard their clients as partners. To create new goods or to enhance their services, businesses ask for the input of their consumers. The likelihood that a consumer will stay with a company increases if they get connected with it.

5. Enhances Client Equity

CRM's primary goal is to increase customer equity. Customer equity is the total lifetime worth of all consumers, and businesses prioritize marketing efforts for these clients. A company may boost customer equity by putting more of an emphasis on MVCs.

6. Competitive Benefit

CRM adoption gives businesses a competitive edge in the marketplace. They can easily take on the opposition. Gaining a competitive edge aid in boosting return on investment.

7. Corporate Identity

Additionally, the company's reputation is improved. Customers who are loyal become evangelists. The evangelists helped the business and its goods gain popularity. This makes it possible for a business to attract more clients.

8. Increased Return on Investment

The firm may achieve a greater return on investment thanks to CRM. This is as a result of devoted clients making more purchases. Additionally, the business generates revenue via cross-selling and up-selling. The value of shareholders rises due to the better return on investment.

Controversies in CRM

1. Cost component

The cost issue is one of the main obstacles to CRM. This also contains

1. The initial outlay for purchasing computer equipment, software, hiring staff, paying for advertising, and other costs associated with developing a CRM program.

2. Putting a CRM program in place.

3. Keeping a client database costs money.

4. CRM updating.

2. Assistance from senior management:

The support of the senior management is essential to the CRM program's success. In addition to deploying the CRM software, proactive management assists the business in effectively maintaining it during trying times. The CRM program might fail if the management does not support it.

3. Measure Outcomes

Measuring CRM's performance is one of its difficulties. The effectiveness of CRM cannot be determined by a single, universal formula. As CRM is a long-term, result-oriented strategy, using the right metrics to gauge customer satisfaction exactly is necessary.

4. Resources:

CRM's effectiveness is dependent on the availability of sufficient and appropriate resources, namely, financial resources, skilled and motivated staff, enough infrastructure, tools, and technology.

5. Utilizing the Correct CRM Technique

There are many ways to implement CRM, but choosing the right approach depends on the goals of the organization, the kind of business, the rivals, the level of competition, the resources available, and other factors.

6. Training

Using the right techniques for data warehousing, data mining, and providing relevant data for making decisions about marketing strategy, trained staff must improve their competencies to update the data warehouse, improve communication with customers, and connect with them. They must also resolve customer complaints, conduct customer satisfaction surveys, and measure satisfaction.

7. Technology use

CRM must be updated with the proper technologies to meet current company demands. Every business implements CRM systems differently; each one must be handled as a unique application, recognizing distinct problems and demanding distinct solutions. Furthermore, as CRM relies heavily on technology, continuous technological upgrades are important to its effectiveness. CRM failure may be caused by bad or missing data.

8. Create effective marketing strategies

Finding and understanding business problems before using the proper CRM approach is one of the difficulties of CRM, not the other way around. It is necessary to adapt CRM systems to the demands of the company in order to create effective marketing strategies that will help it find and keep its most important customers.

9. Greater Stakes

The company's reputation might be at jeopardy if CRM fails. The success of the CRM deployment will have a significant impact on the company's reputation and future. Failure to implement the CRM system, particularly in the service industry, might spell genuine catastrophe for the company.

10. Focus on the internal clientele

The people who execute a CRM project and how they utilize the technology are ultimately responsible for its success. Despite the fact that the CRM system is customer-based, the challenge is to concentrate on inspiring and enhancing the performance of the internal customer, which over time will assist to decrease staff turnover and, in turn, enhance relationships with the external customer.

11. Keeping up the CRM program

Only over the long term can the effectiveness of a CRM campaign be measured. Building and deploying CRM is difficult, but also maintaining it over the long term is difficult. CRM isn't used often because people aren't aware of it or don't believe in its value, both of which may be bad for business. The following steps should be followed in order to keep customers loyal to the business: defining the relevant market, identifying market segments, choosing the best market segment, designing the marketing mix, managing the customers' touch points, conducting customer satisfaction surveys, designing the loyalty program, and tracking customer loyalty. Customer relationship management entails gathering comprehensive data pertaining to its clients, which entails interacting with them on all levels. Every encounter between a consumer and a business, such as a purchase, a payment transaction, a service visit, a satisfaction survey, etc., is included in the touch points. CRM combines all of a company's marketing, sales, and customer support departments' knowledge about specific clients.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the success and expansion of a firm are largely dependent on client happiness. Companies may acquire a competitive advantage, encourage brand loyalty, and provide a solid basis for long-term success by prioritizing customer happiness and investing in providing outstanding customer experiences. Building durable customer connections and promoting sustainable company success need an understanding of the variables that affect customer satisfaction and proactive addressing of consumer requirements and preferences. In an ever-changing and customer-driven company environment, adopting customer-centric strategies and continually aiming to surpass consumer expectations are crucial to assuring a bright future. Surveys and client feedback are effective instruments for gauging and raising consumer satisfaction. It shows a dedication to customer-centricity and continual development when you pay attention to consumer input and act on it.

REFERENCES:

[1] P. Rita, T. Oliveira, and A. Farisa, “The impact of e-service quality and customer satisfaction on customer behavior in online shopping,” *Heliyon*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.heliyon.2019.e02690.

[2] M. Pakurár, H. Haddad, J. Nagy, J. Popp, and J. Oláh, “The service quality dimensions that affect customer satisfaction in the Jordanian banking sector,” *Sustain.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/su11041113.

[3] A. Afthanorhan, Z. Awang, N. Rashid, H. Foziah, and P. L. Ghazali, “Assessing the effects of service quality on customer satisfaction,” *Manag. Sci. Lett.*, 2019, doi: 10.5267/j.msl.2018.11.004.

[4] W. Wikhamn, “Innovation, sustainable HRM and customer satisfaction,” *Int. J. Hosp. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.ijhm.2018.04.009.

[5] D. Chicu, M. del M. Pàmies, G. Ryan, and C. Cross, “Exploring the influence of the human factor on customer satisfaction in call centres,” *BRQ Bus. Res. Q.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.brq.2018.08.004.

[6] P. Suchánek and M. Králová, “Customer satisfaction, loyalty, knowledge and competitiveness in the food industry,” *Econ. Res. Istraz.* , 2019, doi: 10.1080/1331677X.2019.1627893.

[7] S. F. Padlee, C. Y. Thaw, and S. N. Atikah Zulkiffli, “The relationship between service quality, customer satisfaction and behavioural intentions in the hospitality industry,” *Tour. Hosp. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.20867/thm.25.1.9.

[8] Y. Vakulenko, P. Shams, D. Hellström, and K. Hjort, “Online retail experience and customer satisfaction: the mediating role of last mile delivery,” *Int. Rev. Retail. Distrib. Consum. Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/09593969.2019.1598466.

[9] L. Vencataya, S. Pudaruth, R. T. Juwaheer, G. Dirpal, and N. M. Z. Sumodhee, “Assessing the Impact of Service Quality Dimensions on Customer Satisfaction in Commercial Banks of Mauritius,” *Stud. Bus. Econ.*, 2019, doi: 10.2478/sbe-2019-0020.

[10] E. Hirata, “Service characteristics and customer satisfaction in the container liner shipping industry,” *Asian J. Shipp. Logist.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.ajsl.2019.03.004.

CHAPTER 14
FUNDAMENTAL CHALLENGE FACED BY BUSINESSES: DEALING WITH COMPETITION

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Dealing with competition is a fundamental challenge faced by businesses across industries, as markets become increasingly crowded and dynamic. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of effectively managing competition and its impact on business sustainability and growth. The abstract explores various strategies that businesses can adopt to stay competitive, such as differentiation, innovation, pricing, and customer-centricity. It delves into the role of market analysis and competitor research in devising effective competitive strategies. Understanding how to navigate and respond to competition empowers businesses to adapt to market changes, retain market share, and secure a competitive advantage in a constantly evolving business landscape.

KEYWORDS:

Marketing Strategy, Product Differentiation, Pricing Strategy, SWOT Analysis, Target Audience, Value Proposition.

INTRODUCTION

The business must recognize and keep an eye on the activity of both its direct rivals and rivals offering alternatives to its goods. It is necessary to continuously gather data on the distribution, pricing, advertising, and product development strategies of rival companies. With the use of this information, the business will be able to identify the advantages and disadvantages of its rivals, which will allow it to create a marketing strategy that will give it a competitive edge[1], [2]. The processes the firm takes while assessing its rivals are as follows:

1. List the company's rivals.
2. Researching rivals
3. Planning an aggressive strategy

Finding Competition

The corporation must first identify its rivals before dealing with them. It seems easy for a business to recognize its rivals. For instance, HLL may name P&G as a key rival. Coca-Cola may be listed by PepsiCo as its primary rival, etc.

The spectrum of a company's actual and prospective rivals, however, is greater. For instance, a soft drink company would face rivalry from not just other soft drink marketers but also alternative goods like fruit juices and regional beverages like lassi and limbu paani. A company may be impacted by new rivals as well as technical advancements, which might render the firm's product outdated[3], [4].A company must analyze competition from both an industry and a marketing perspective in order to identify competitors:

The Concept of Industry Competition

An industry is a collection of businesses that provide a product or a class of items that are exact replicas of one another or similar replacements. Industries may be categorized based on:

1. The quantity and level of diversity among vendors.
2. Entry and exit restrictions
3. Cost Framework
4. Vertical Integration Level
5. Globalization Level.

The quantity of vendors and level of differentiation

The number of sellers and whether or not the product is distinct in the market may be used to define it. Five different sorts of industry structures may come from these two characteristics:

1. Direct rivalry

Perfect competition includes pure competition. When a market system satisfies all the requirements for perfect competition, such as: There are many buyers and sellers, thus neither can independently affect the price, supply, or demand. The nature of the product is homogenous or entirely similar. Both buyers and sellers are permitted free admission and leave. In the market, there is a single uniform price set by forces of supply and demand[5], [6].

2. Optimal Contests

The goal of perfect competition is utopian and unreal. It could only apply to certain agricultural goods for a limited time and might only apply to a particular market segment. The ideal competition structure must also meet the following requirements in addition to the four given above for pure competition[7], [8]. Complete understanding of pricing, product characteristics, market circumstances, etc. on the side of customers and sellers. Perfect factor mobility means that they are totally free to migrate from one market to another or from one industry to another. Government meddling in the manufacturing and delivery of goods is nonexistent. There is a standard cost of transportation, meaning that all vendors are equally close to or distant from the marketplaces.

3. Duopoly and Oligopoly

Few vendors dominate the market in an oligopoly. When there is a duopoly, two vendors dominate the market. The primary attributes are: The majority of big companies often generate a limited number of highly unique or very uniform items. Entry barriers are often high as a result of substantial initial investments in technology and equipment. The huge market stakes may also result in substantial departure barriers.It could be challenging for businesses that create highly standardized goods to charge more than the going rate. The only way to acquire a competitive edge is to cut manufacturing and distribution expenses while raising the quality of the service provided.Companies that create distinctive goods, like Sony, Mercedes-Benz, or Rolls-Royce, may control the market and demand premium prices for the distinctive qualities[9], [10].

4. Monopolies-dominated Competition

It is a market structure in which a sizable number of businesses create and market comparable but distinctive goods to sizable numbers of consumers. The suppliers of various items engage in monopolistic rivalry. FMCG goods including soaps, toothpaste, tea, and other items, as well as consumer durables like TVs and refrigerators, are examples of monopolistic competition. The items vary in terms of form, size, color, design, and other factors, but they are similar in nature in terms of functions and performance. Competitors concentrate on market niches where they can provide greater customer service and demand a higher price.

5. Monopoly

It is a market system in which a single seller has total control over the supply of a certain item. For instance, in many developing countries, public services like rail transportation, water supply, and power supply are subject to pure monopolies. The primary attributes are:

1. There is only one vendor, yet there might be several purchasers.
2. There are no suitable alternatives.
3. Other businesses face significant obstacles when trying to enter the industry.
4. There is no separation between the company and the sector.
5. The competition is nonexistent.

Customers may be taken advantage of by an unchecked monopolist who charges exorbitant prices and offers subpar service.

However, the monopolist may attempt to enhance the services or facilities if partial alternatives are offered and there is some threat of competition. In the interest of the public, a regulated monopolist must set lower prices and provide better services.

b) Barriers to entry and exit

Entry and exit obstacles vary across industries. It is simple to enter certain businesses, like the ready-to-wear clothing sector, but more challenging to enter others, like the heavy equipment sector. The main obstacles to entrance include:

1. High capital expenditures, like in the case of airlines.
2. Licensing requirements and patents, such as those in the pharmaceutical and medicine industry.
3. Reputation criteria, such as those that apply to cars.
4. Large-scale production economies, such as those seen in the cement, iron, and steel industries, etc.
5. Businesses may encounter exit obstacles like:
6. Responsibilities to clients, creditors, and staff under the law or morality.
7. The absence of alternatives. Governmental limitations.
8. A high level of vertical integration, etc.

Due to exit obstacles, businesses remain in the sector as long as they can pay their fixed expenses in whole or in part, as well as their variable costs. However, everyone in the industry's revenues is impacted by their continuous existence.

Cost Structure

Every industry incurs costs to carry out its operations. For instance, the aviation sector must make a significant initial investment in the purchase of aircraft, the steel business must incur significant manufacturing costs, and FMCG firms must incur significant distribution costs. Businesses strive to cut their biggest expenses. Businesses would have a competitive edge in the market if they could attain economies of scale at the lowest cost of production and delivery. Therefore, businesses need to discover methods to reduce expenses.

Vertical Integration Level

Companies benefit from upward or downward vertical integration. The following advantages of vertical integration are available:

1. Reduces expenses
2. Dispersal of hazards.
3. Command of processes.
4. Greater profits.
5. Integration, however, has a few drawbacks:
6. Higher expenses at certain value chain nodes.
7. Increased capital expenditure.
8. Increased labor expenses.

As a result, businesses are discussing the degree of integration. Many businesses use outsourcing, particularly for tasks that can be completed effectively and economically by specialized businesses.

Globalization Level

Some industries, like airlines, electronics, gems and jewelry, textiles, etc., have seen a greater level of globalization. They have simple access to international markets. Global operations provide the following benefits:

1. Reputation both domestically and internationally.
2. Best possible resource use.
3. Risks are dispersed.
4. Large-scale economies, etc.

Market Competition Concept

The market notion of competition may be used to find competitors. Companies who can meet the same client demands are considered rivals under this strategy. For instance, soft drinks, fruit juices, regional beverages like limbu paani and lassi, bottled water, etc. may all quench consumers' thirst. Marketers need to avoid seeing competition in a conventional way and work to overcome their "marketing myopia." Prof. Theodore Levitt is credited with coining the phrase "marketing myopia." Marketing myopia, according to Levitt, is a limited understanding of marketing in which the client is neglected in favor of giving undue attention to the manufacturing, the product, or the selling factors. An organization must examine both direct and indirect competition. Similar goods or near replacements are the main sources of direct competition. For example, rival soft drink producers or near replacements like fruit juices, milk-based beverages, local drinks, and bottled water provide direct competition for a soft drink company. Not too near replacements provide indirect competition. For instance, ice cream, tea, coffee, and in certain countries, even beer, may all pose an indirect threat to soft drinks. A company may find chances to seize and dangers or problems to overcome via the examination of market competition.

DISCUSSION

Analyzing Competitors

Once a company has determined who its primary rivals are, it needs learn about their plans, goals, and strengths and weaknesses. The following details must be thoroughly studied while examining a competitor's business:

1. **Competitor strategies:** A company must identify the major tactics used by rivals in the areas of distribution, price, marketing, and more. The company may find the strategic group with the use of such study. A collection of businesses that mostly adhere to the same plan is known as a strategic group. For instance, a strategic organization may have a limited product selection, high prices, and excellent service. On the opposite end of the spectrum, a company may provide a wide range of products, offer poor customer service, and set cheap prices. After determining the strategic groupings, a company may choose to compete in a certain group. And those businesses in that group end up becoming its main rivals.

2. **Competitor goals**: Once a corporation has identified its main rivals and their methods, it needs learn what those rivals' corporate goals are. One of the goals can be to maximize earnings.

1. To get a larger market share.
2. To boost sales in terms of quantity, income, etc.
3. The goals vary from company to company, based on:
4. The company's size and history.
5. Owners' or promoters' philosophies.
6. The company's financial situation, etc.

Some businesses may prioritize maximizing profits, particularly in the near term, whereas other businesses may prioritize maximizing market share.

3. **Competitor advantages and disadvantages**: A company must also learn about the advantages and disadvantages of the major market rivals. For instance, some businesses could provide excellent items supported by strong after-sale support. On the other hand, some businesses could create low-quality goods while neglecting after-sale support. There may be companies that fall in between these two extremes, producing high-quality goods yet lacking in customer service.The evaluation of such data would provide a company the opportunity to take on specific rivals. For instance, the company may go after companies who make subpar goods and/or provide subpar after-sale support. However, it could be challenging to compete with businesses that provide top-notch goods supported by first-rate after-sale support.To further understand consumer value analysis, a survey may be done. Customers may be asked to evaluate the rivals' products, prices, and services in the survey. In general, a company should take into account three key factors when assessing the competition:

1. Market share - The market share held by rivals, whether growing or shrinking.
2. Share of mind - The rivals that come to consumers' minds first.
3. Share of heart - The rivals that consumers would choose to purchase from.
4. A company could face competition from:
5. The rivals whose market share may be substantial but is dwindling for some other cause, such as poor service quality.
6. Low-level rivals' share of mind and heart may result from subpar goods and services or from a variety of other issues.

The Development of Competitive Strategies

The functions that businesses play in their target markets or the market share they have may be used to categorize them.The companies may be categorized as:

1. The company that has the biggest market share among its rivals is the market leader.
2. A market challenger is a rival who often has the second-largest market share and challenges the market leader and other rivals to lose market share.

3. Market follower: A rival who often trails both the market leader and the challenger.
4. Market nichers are the rivals who target niche markets that bigger companies often ignore.

To remain in the market, any market leader must implement competitive tactics. The following are the competitive strategies:

Market Leaders' Competitive Strategies

There is usually one market-leading company in each sector. In the relevant product category, the market leader has the biggest market share. In terms of pricing adjustments, product updates and launches, distribution coverage, and promotional initiatives, the market leader often takes the lead over the competition. Colgate for toothpaste, Maruti Udyog for automobiles, Nokia for cellphones, Cadbury for milk chocolate, and other brands are some of the market leaders in India.

1. The market leader must take action on three fronts in order to keep the top position in the industry:
2. Increasing the whole market.
3. Maintain its present market share.
4. Expand its existing market share.

Growing the Total Market: When the Total Market grows, the Market Leader often benefits the most. The market leader should seek for new customers, uses, and ways to utilize its goods in order to grow the market.

Fresh Users

Every product has the ability to draw in new customers who may not be familiar with it or who may be put off by its price or the absence of certain features. The following tactics might be used by a business to find new customers:

1. Market Penetration Strategy, which focuses on prospective customers who may utilize it but aren't doing so right now. Providing mobile phones to low-income communities is one example.
2. A new market segmentation strategy that focuses on prospective customers who have never utilized it. Consider face cream for men or bicycles for women.
3. Geographical Expansion Strategy, which focuses on luring new customers from other areas. Take distant learning classes, for instance.
4. New Uses: By finding and advertising new applications for the product, markets may be increased. Manufacturers of chewing gum, for instance, could advertise their product as "good for gums," "teeth whitener," "mouth freshener," and so on.
5. More consumption: Businesses may increase market size by promoting more product consumption. Increases in intake frequency or quantity both have the potential to increase use. For instance, by emphasizing certain health advantages in their marketing efforts, the tea, coffee, wine, and other industries promote increased consumption. In addition to advertising strategies, businesses might use additional strategies like enlarging the packaging.

2. **Protecting Market Share:** To protect its market share, a market leader must always keep an eye on what its rivals are doing. It should also analyze client needs in relation to what the market is providing in terms of product quality, pricing, etc. It is important to distinguish between responsive, anticipatory, and innovative marketing when meeting client needs:

1. A responsive marketer identifies and meets a stated need.
2. A marketer who is proactive foresees the requirements of consumers.

A creative marketer develops things that clients did not request, yet they receptively accept such offerings. As an example, Sony recently unveiled a number of new devices, such as the walkman, VCR, video camera, CD player, DVD player, and others. Therefore, in order to maintain their market share, market leaders must use imaginative and anticipatory marketing strategies. In the areas of product design, price, advertising, and distribution, they could take defensive methods. According to Philip Kotler, a market leader may use the following six defensive tactics:

Placement Defense

It entails strengthening the brand's power and making it almost impossible to attack. For instance, Nescafe has resisted various advancing brands by using this tactic to protect its market dominance.

Corner Defense

To fortify a vulnerable front or act as a foundation for a counterattack, the marketer commander should establish outposts. For instance, if a leader is being challenged by brands with cheap prices, it could likewise launch new brands with low prices to counter the attackers. In order to preserve the brand's reputation and raise more money for marketing initiatives, the market may even raise the original brand's price. Companies like Seagram have utilized this tactic to protect their market share by attacking the new entrants in the market with the release of low-cost brands.

Defense in advance

This is a more aggressive attack move made before a rival makes its own assault move. The market leader could launch a number of goods that can serve as signals to deter rivals from attacking. The company may use aggressive marketing tactics that would be difficult for prospective rivals to match.

Counterattack Defense

When assaulted, a market leader may initiate a counterattack. Invading the attacker's main territory would be a successful tactic since it would force the attacker to gather resources to defend its area.

Mobile Protection

The market leader may pursue market widening and market diversification under this approach, expanding into other regions that may serve as future centers of defense and offensive. A company may decide to concentrate less on its present product and more on similar items as a result of market expansion. Market diversification may cause it to reorient its attention toward other sectors.

3. Increasing its Current Market Share: Market leaders could use all of their energy to expand their market share. Gaining market share does not always translate into increased profitability, particularly for smaller businesses that could not benefit from economies of scale. A business should take into account the following aspects since the cost of gaining market share might significantly outweigh its net revenue: the potential to inspire government authorities to take antitrust action. the potential impact of greater market share on quality, both real and perceived. This is because an increase in consumers may strain a company's

resources, lowering the quality and value of its products. Additionally, consumers may believe that "bigger is not better" and believe that quality declines as a result of market expansion. the risk of using the incorrect marketing-mix approach. For instance, a company could use significant price reductions to gain market share, which might be harmful to the company's interests. the potential rise in expenses to society. As market share increases, the expense of legal labor, public relations efforts, and government lobbying increases.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, being competitive entails taking a proactive and calculated attitude. Businesses may achieve a competitive advantage and establish a solid position in the market by embracing difference, innovation, customer-centricity, and successful pricing tactics. Businesses may successfully cope with competition, maintain market share, and experience sustainable development and success by doing in-depth competitor and market research as well as extensive market analysis. In today's competitive and fast-paced business environment, understanding and reacting to competition is crucial for company sustainability and profitability. For the creation of successful competitive strategies, market analysis and competition research are essential. Businesses may proactively identify opportunities and dangers by understanding market trends, client preferences, and rival strengths and weaknesses. Additionally, companies need to be flexible and sensitive to market shifts and challenges from the competition. To be relevant and competitive in the rapidly changing corporate environment, constant monitoring and strategy adaption are necessary.

REFERENCES:

[1] D. J. Teece, “Business models and dynamic capabilities,” *Long Range Plann.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.lrp.2017.06.007.

[2] M. Geissdoerfer, D. Vladimirova, and S. Evans, “Sustainable business model innovation: A review,” *Journal of Cleaner Production*. 2018. doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2018.06.240.

[3] M. Kotarba, “Digital transformation of business models,” *Found. Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.2478/fman-2018-0011.

[4] A. W. H. Yip and N. M. P. Bocken, “Sustainable business model archetypes for the banking industry,” *J. Clean. Prod.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2017.10.190.

[5] F. Cosenz and G. Noto, “A dynamic business modelling approach to design and experiment new business venture strategies,” *Long Range Plann.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.lrp.2017.07.001.

[6] Ø. D. Fjeldstad and C. C. Snow, “Business models and organization design,” *Long Range Plann.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.lrp.2017.07.008.

[7] P. Maresova *et al.*, “Consequences of industry 4.0 in business and economics,” *Economies*. 2018. doi: 10.3390/economies6030046.

[8] Y. Khmara and J. Kronenberg, “Degrowth in business: An oxymoron or a viable business model for sustainability?,” *J. Clean. Prod.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2017.12.182.

[9] T. Ritter and C. Lettl, “The wider implications of business-model research,” *Long Range Plann.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.lrp.2017.07.005.

[10] D. J. Power, C. Heavin, J. McDermott, and M. Daly, “Defining business analytics: an empirical approach,” *J. Bus. Anal.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/2573234X.2018.1507605.

CHAPTER 15
COMPETITIVE STRATEGIES FOR MARKET CHALLENGERS

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Competitive strategies for market challengers are essential for businesses seeking to disrupt established markets and gain a significant share of market leadership. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of competitive strategies for market challengers and their role in reshaping competitive dynamics. The abstract explores various competitive strategies, such as market segmentation, product differentiation, pricing strategies, and strategic alliances, which challengers can employ to carve a niche in the market. It delves into the importance of agility and innovation in executing competitive strategies successfully. Understanding and effectively implementing competitive strategies equip market challengers to overcome barriers to entry, challenge incumbents, and achieve sustainable growth in highly competitive industries.

KEYWORDS:

Differentiation, Market Analysis, Market Segmentation, Niche Marketing, Product Innovation, Pricing Strategies.

INTRODUCTION

In an effort to take more of the market, the challengers in the market attack the leader and other rivals. This tactic has been used by Korean firms like LG Samsung and Hyundai to compete in India and other international markets[1], [2].Market competitors may use the following tactics.

1. Defining the Strategic Objective and Opponents

A market challenger must select who to target in order to achieve its strategic goal, which is to expand market share.Attacking the market leader is a risky but lucrative tactic, particularly if the leader is not providing good service to the market. To challenge the market leader, the challenger may launch new products. Attack the marketing strategies of companies of a comparable size, particularly those who don't do their marketing work well and those that are experiencing resource constraints. Attacking small local and regional businesses is a method the challenger might use to gain control of such businesses and grow its market share[3], [4].

2. Selecting a General Attack plan

A market leader may also select for a general attack plan, which consists of: Frontal Attack, when the attacker imitates the marketing mix of its rivals. Price reductions, aggressive marketing tactics, and special offers may even make it more aggressive. Flank Attack, in which the weak points of the rivals are attacked. Geographic and segmental strategic aspects may both be used to lead a flank strike. Under the geographic dimension, the challenger may successfully serve those regions that the leader may not pay much priority to. Similarly, under the segmental dimension, the challenger may attempt to concentrate on those market segments that the market leader may have disregarded. This tactic could be more successful, particularly for those with less resources than their rivals. Encirclement Attack: This strategy sees the challenger with the better resources make quick movements to seize a significant portion of the rivals. It entails conducting a massive offensive campaign against the quality, cost, distribution, and marketing of the product. Bypass Strategy: The challenger targets simpler markets in an effort to gain market share. One aspect of this approach is diversifying into unrelated goods[5], [6].

Guerrilla warfare is a tactic where a challenger may launch brief, irregular assaults on rivals in an effort to win market share. Price reductions and aggressive marketing would be the assaults. Guerrilla warfare is often used by smaller companies against a larger one. The conventional wisdom is that a steady stream of little assaults may have a greater overall influence on the competition than a few massive ones. If the challenger wants to succeed in defeating the opponent, the weaker strikes must ultimately be supported by a stronger attack[7], [8].

3. **Choosing a Specific Attack Strategy**: The challenger must adopt specific attack methods in addition to the five basic assault techniques listed.

1. Price reduction.
2. Better services.
3. New product development.
4. Product proliferation by introducing a wide range of products.
5. Providing great quality at affordable rates by focusing on cost-cutting and quality enhancement.
6. Providing goods of medium to poor grade at significantly reduced costs.
7. An increase in marketing expenses.

Market follower tactics: Several businesses choose to imitate competitors rather than take them on. Market followers may copy the marketing-mix strategies of the leader. The leader makes the same offers to the purchasers as they do. This is particularly true for sectors like FMCG, chemicals, and other industries where:

1. Product differentiation is minimal
2. Consumers are price conscious.
3. The difference is made by the service factor.
4. The market participants must:
5. Keep your present clients while bringing in new ones.
6. Reduce manufacturing and distribution costs.
7. Provide clients with clear benefits in terms of service and geographical ease.
8. Pay attention to certain market niches that both market leaders and market competitors tend to ignore.

Market followers have access to the following four major market strategies:

The market follower uses the leader's goods and packaging exactly as their own and sells it via dishonest dealers by promising them better profits. Cloner strategy: the market follower copies the leader's goods while making minor changes[9], [10]. The imitator strategy preserves distinction in terms of price, advertising, and distribution while the follower imitates the leader in certain regards. Utilizing an adapter strategy, the follower enhances the packaging and goods of the leader. If successful, such a follower develops into a market rival.

Market Nicher Technique

Small market segments make up a niche market. By establishing a consumer base whose demands are underserved by other marketers, some marketers may pinpoint niches. Smaller companies first join niche markets because bigger companies may lack the flexibility or motivation to do so since the niche sector is often so tiny. Large and well-known companies like Rolls Royce, Rolex Watches, and others engage in specialized marketing. Using a niche approach may be profitable even if the market may be limited because: There is little to no competition. As a result of his intimate familiarity with his target market, the niche marketer is ultimately better able to satisfy their demands than other businesses that haphazardly sell to similar niche categories. As a consequence of value addition and strong brand loyalty, the specialized marketer generates large profits.

Specialized Marketing Techniques

Companies looking to join a market should focus on a certain niche rather than the whole market at first. A market nicher is a small business that decides to focus on a certain niche of the market. They can do one of two things: Using a single niche strategy, one niche market is the focus of all efforts. When efforts are focused on two or more niche markets, this strategy is known as multiple niching. over lower danger, repeated niching is preferred over single niching. Companies need to develop an intelligence system to cope with competition. Companies must decide on the criteria that will be used to analyze the competition. The firm must follow the right procedures, which include steps like: identifying the rivals, analyzing the competitors, and finally designing an effective competitive strategy. Competition management is a difficult activity that calls for devoted money, system, and personnel resources. You may enhance your company model to attract more clients and consumers by discovering, evaluating, and planning against your competitors.

DISCUSSION

Brands And Branding

Today's commoditization of goods, media fragmentation, cluttering of advertising, and apparently endless market options make branding increasingly crucial. A brand is the result of consumers' experiences and expectations coming together. The purchase choice is influenced by a strong brand. It can fetch a premium price and sell the greatest possible number of copies at that premium. Without even being aware of the details of the characteristics of the items, it helps the buyers build trust and a set of expectations about the goods. A corporation's plan to develop a strong brand indicates that the company seeks to increase client loyalty in addition to product sales. Trust and an emotional connection to a certain product or business are created via branding. Customers find it simpler to make purchases because to branding. A successful branding strategy sends a clear, consistent message about the importance of the business. When a consumer decides to stick with a product made by the same business over one made by a rival, they are demonstrating brand loyalty. Brand loyalty often pertains to a product rather than a business. Because it boosts sales volume, brand loyalty lowers production costs because businesses with brand-loyal consumers don't need to spend as much on product promotion.

Branding is the use of a name, word, symbol, and/or unique design to designate the products or services of a single seller or group of sellers. A seller's items are set apart from those of rival sellers by their brand. The Webster Dictionary describes a brand as "A class of goods identified by name as the product of a single firm or manufacturer." The American Marketing Association defines a brand as "A name, term, design, symbol, or any other feature that identifies one seller's good or service as distinct from those of other sellers." Branding is the management process by which a product is branded. It is a comprehensive phrase that refers to a variety of tasks, including giving a product a brand name, creating a brand logo, and establishing and popularizing it.

1. Benefits of Brand Equity

The firm acquiring the brand may want to benefit from the parent brand's brand equity. the just released item. may benefit from the premium value obtained by the parent brand with an extended brand name. Because of this, the business may charge a premium price for the recently launched brand with the expanded brand name.

2. Customer Approval

Customers grow to trust and have faith in reputable companies. A new product may be readily accepted by clients when it is offered with the expanded brand name. This is due to the fact that consumers are familiar with the parent brand name and associate the new brand with the same value.

3. Cooperation from Dealers

The sellers or distributors could agree to stock and market the recently launched brand under the expanded brand name. This is due to the ease with which consumers may request the new brand, requiring little effort on the side of dealers or merchants.

4. Increasing Company Revenue

The firm's income may improve thanks to its brand. The business could have to spend less on marketing and distribution expenses, improving net revenue. For instance, Amul has grown the company's income by launching a variety of brand extensions in the areas of packaged milk, ice cream, ghee, and other products.

5. Increasing Customer Loyalty

Brand loyalty to the parent brand may also come from it. Customers may favor certain items sold under a given brand name due to its reputation. If not, customers can decide to move to a rival who has launched a number of goods in the same or a different product area.

6. Competitive Benefit

Brand gives the company a competitive edge. A business may transfer the positive brand perception of one brand to other items. As a result, the firm gains the confidence and loyalty of its customers and may be able to compete in the market.

7. Corporate Identity

Branding influences how a company is perceived. A firm may experience better success thanks to its brand in terms of market share, earnings, client loyalty, etc. As a result, the company's reputation among numerous stakeholders, including clients, partners, shareholders, etc., improves.

8. Produces Demand

The creation of market demand for the product is aided by effective positioning. A product's placement may persuade consumers to purchase it. For instance, Lux soap's positioning as "Beauty Soap of Film Stars" has been successful for the company since consumers purchase the product in the goal of becoming more attractive.

9. Enables Consumers' Freedom of Choice

Product positioning helps consumers choose the right product based on the perception that brand names like Nike have instilled in their minds.

10. Produces Value

Customers get value from positioning. A marketer may add or generate value for the consumer by emphasizing unique features of the product via successful positioning. For instance, Maggi Noodles' "Fast to Cook, Good to Eat" campaign added value for the consumer.

11. Aids in Premium Command

A company can charge a premium price in the market through its unique positioning because effective positioning helps to command goodwill in the market, which in turn enables the firm to charge premium price. Product differentiation through effective positioning helps a firm to compete on non-price platforms.

12. Status of Creation

For instance, Mercedes is positioned as a premium automobile, therefore Mercedes car owners enjoy prestige in society. Brand positioning gives people a sense of status.

13. Develops a brand's image

By marketing their products as "protection for gums and prevents tooth decay," toothpaste manufacturer Colgate has successfully built a positive reputation in the eyes of its target audience.

Brand Fidelity

Brand loyalty occurs when a customer chooses to repeatedly purchase a product produced by the same company instead of a substitute product produced by a competitor. Brand loyalty is defined as a set of conditions where a customer chooses to repeatedly purchase a product produced by the same company instead of a substitute product produced by a competitor.

Brand loyalty can be categorized in a number of ways, including behavioral and attitudinal approaches. George Brown, a behavioral researcher, divided consumers into four groups based on their brand loyalty status: hard-core loyal, split loyalist, shifting loyal, and switchers.

1. Consumers who consistently purchase just one brand are said to be hard-core loyalists.
2. Customers that are devoted to two or three brands are known as split locals.
3. Consumers that switch brands are known as shifting locals.
4. Switchers are customers that have no brand loyalty.

Benefits of a brand loyalty

Equity would not exist if loyalty were to a product rather than a brand.The cost of acquiring and serving consumers decreases. Most marketers make the mistake of attracting new customers while neglecting existing ones. Existing customers are typically easy to hold if they are satisfied. The challenge for any marketer is to reduce the outflow of customers and to create new ones.

Trade leverage: When introducing new sizes, new varieties, or brand extensions, trade leverage is especially crucial. Brand loyalty can sometimes dominate store choice decisions. Strong brand loyalty will ensure preferred shelf space because consumers will have such brands on their shopping lists.

New acquisitions: The old adage "you won't be fired for buying IBM" is based on the idea that a consumer base with segments that are satisfied and others that like the brand can give assurance to a prospective consumer, especially when the purchase is somewhat risky. A large satisfied consumer base provides an image of the brand as an accepted, successful product which will be around and will be able to afford service backup and product improvements.

Time to react to competitive threats: Brand loyalty allows the company a lag time to respond to competitive threats since loyal customers won't switch to new goods right away, allowing the company to make the required improvements.

Brand Favorite

Brand preference, a measure of brand loyalty in which a consumer will choose a particular brand in the presence of competing brands but will accept substitutes if that brand is not available, represents which brands are preferred under assumptions of equality in price and availability. Consumers appear to have a high willingness to pay for particular brands, even when the alternatives are undesirable.

Brand Equity

Brands with the most equity are the most profitable because their customers are more devoted, willing to pay more for the product, and have a closer relationship with the brand. Firms need to learn how to create, augment."Brand equity" refers to the value of a brand and is a collection of brand assets and liabilities associated with a brand, its name, and its symbol that increase or decrease the value that a product or service provides to a company and/or to that company's clients.According to David Aaker, brand equity may be categorized into the following five groups:

1. Brand fidelity
2. Name recognition
3. Perceived excellence
4. In addition to perceived quality, brand connections
5. Additional proprietary brand assets, such as channels of distribution and patents.

The foundation of brand equity is comprised of the five asset categories listed above.

1. Brand loyalty

The brand loyalty of the customer base is frequently the core of a brand's equity. In marketing, brand loyalty is the strongest measure of a brand's value; it can be demonstrated by repeated purchases of a product or service, of good word of mouth and advocation of a product or service, even with the availability of other alternatives.

2. Brand Recognition

The ability of a potential customer to recognize or recall that a brand is a part of a product categorythe customer must be able to recognize a firm's product in the retail stores or be able to recall its brand whenever he thinks of a product classis another factor that contributes to brand equity. Al Ries. Brand awareness is another factor that contributes to brand equity. It is the strength of a brand's presence in the consumer mind.

3. Appreciated Qualities

Perceived quality, which differs from satisfaction and attitude because it is intangible and reflects overall feeling about the brand, is built on the dimensions of reliability and performance and is the consumer's perception of the overall quality of a product or service.

Perceived quality is not the actual quality, product-based quality, or manufacturing quality. It varies from consumer to consumer depending on its intended purpose, relative to alternatives.

4. Brand Affiliation

It is important to position the brand in such a way that a distinct identity for the brand is created. Brand image is a set of associations or perceptions that consumers have for a brand. It also implies attitudes towards a brand, either positive or negative, which are built over time. It is not enough, just to have an advertisement.

5. Additional exclusive brand assets

Other proprietary brand assets include patents, trademarks, and channel relationships. Brand assets are most valuable if they deter competitors from eroding customer bases and loyalty.Perceived quality, for instance, will partially be based upon associations and even awareness. Consequently, the success of branding depends on the durability of the brands in the minds of the consumers.

The Benefits of Brand Equity

Both the company and its consumers may benefit from brand equity.

1. Brand equity gives clients value

Affecting their confidence in the purchase choice owing to either prior use experience or familiarity with the brand; enhancing consumer pleasure with the use experience. Helping customers to comprehend, process, and retain enormous volumes of information about items and brands.

2. Brand equity adds value to a company

Brand loyalty the perceived quality, well-known brand name, brand associations, and other proprietary brand assets can make customers more brand loyal. Price and Profit Margins - Well-known brands can command premium price and as a result higher margins. Brand Extensions: It can help to introduce new products under existing brands.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, for market challengers to disrupt existing markets, get past entry barriers, and create a presence in fiercely competitive sectors, they must have competitive tactics. Challengers may compete with incumbents and carve out a place in the market by adopting market segmentation, product differentiation, price tactics, and strategic partnerships. To successfully implement these strategies and achieve sustained development and success, a mix of innovation, agility, and customer-centricity is essential.

Accepting the challenger's role in altering competition dynamics encourages a vibrant and dynamic business environment that benefits both companies and customers. Furthermore, effectively implementing competitive tactics requires an inventive attitude.

Challengers must always look for innovative methods to enhance their goods, services, and operations in order to remain one step ahead of rivals and become market leaders.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. Chen and L. Liu, "Profiting from Green innovation: The moderating effect of competitive strategy," *Sustain.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/su11010015.

[2] A. Danso, S. Adomako, J. Amankwah-Amoah, S. Owusu-Agyei, and R. Konadu, "Environmental sustainability orientation, competitive strategy and financial performance," *Bus. Strateg. Environ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1002/bse.2291.

[3] F. Basbeth, A. Ramli, M. A. Bin Razik, R. M. Zain, and N. B. C. Nawi, "The role of multi dimensional EO in the competitive strategy - Performance link," *Res. World Econ.*, 2019, doi: 10.5430/rwe.v10n2p20.

[4] E. Savitri and A. Syahza, "Effect of human capital and competitive strategies against the financial performance of small and medium enterprises," *Int. J. Sci. Technol. Res.*, 2019.

[5] A. M. Ojala, "Business schools' competitive strategies: whose goals, which aims?," *Management Research Review*. 2019. doi: 10.1108/MRR-06-2018-0232.

[6] G. J. Kilduff, "Interfirm relational rivalry: Implications for competitive strategy," *Acad. Manag. Rev.*, 2019, doi: 10.5465/amr.2017.0257.

[7] S. Nakamura, "Competitive Marketing Strategy," *Japan Mark. J.*, 2019, doi: 10.7222/marketing.2019.028.

[8] R. A. Mohammad, B. A. Balchat, and R. Shujairi, "Relationship between the competitive strategies and supply chain management of financial companies for securities," *Int. J. Supply Chain Manag.*, 2019.

[9] S. Echchakoui, "An analytical model that links customer-perceived value and competitive strategies," *J. Mark. Anal.*, 2018, doi: 10.1057/s41270-018-0043-9.

[10] S. B. Alkasim, H. Hilman, and A. M. bin Bohari, "The mediating effect of competitive strategy on the relationship between market development, product development and performance of manufacturing based SMEs in Nigeria," *J. Bus. Retail Manag. Res.*, 2018, doi: 10.24052/jbrmr/v12is02/tmeocsotrbmdpdapombsin.

CHAPTER 16
SIGNIFICANCE OF BRAND ELEMENTS IN MARKETING PLAN

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Brand elements are essential components that contribute to a brand's identity and recognition in the market. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of brand elements in shaping consumer perceptions and fostering brand loyalty. The abstract explores various brand elements, such as brand name, logo, tagline, colors, and brand mascots, and their role in creating a cohesive and memorable brand identity. It delves into the importance of consistency and authenticity in designing brand elements to establish a strong brand presence. Understanding the impact of brand elements enables businesses to build a robust brand image, differentiate from competitors, and establish a lasting emotional connection with consumers.Brand components make it easier to develop brand equity by encouraging brand association, brand loyalty, and brand image. Any brand/marketing manager's first responsibility is to choose a brand name and brand logo since they are the foundational components of a brand.

KEYWORDS:

Marketing Focus, Marketing Intelligence, Marketing Strategy, Product Orientation, Sales Orientation.

INTRODUCTION

Brand components, often known as brand identities, are everything connected to the brand, such as logos, symbols, characters, jingles, celebrities, products, and signs[1], [2]. These are the key brand components.

Manufacturer

Brand name is the term used to describe designating a product or service by adopting a unique name, a corporate name, a common number, etc. The main responsibility of brand management is choosing a brand name[3], [4].. Any other name for rose is OK. Brand recognition is very important. Brand names such as Mercedes, Nike, Cartier, and others demand a great deal of respect and goodwill. The brand name has to be appropriate for the product, simple to say, attractive to the target market, etc.There are several methods for choosing a brand name.

Specific Brand Names

A corporation with many brands may use unique brand names for various items. For example, HUL uses a variety of unique brand names for their soaps, including Lux, Liril, Lifebuoy, and others. This approach has been used by several companies, including P&G, Nestle, Cadbury, Suzuki, GM, and others. Companies may employ several brand names for goods of varying quality that fall under the same product category. For instance, HUL utilizes the brand names Wheel for washing powder of lesser grade and Surf Tor for powder of greater quality. The organization does not tie its reputation to a single brand name, which is the major benefit of an individual brand name approach[5], [6]. If a certain brand fails in the marketplace, the company's reputation may not be harmed.

Broad Corporate Name

This strategy is used when a business utilizes the broad corporate name to refer to all of its many product categories. This brand name approach, for instance, is used by the Tata Group for a number of its goods, including Tata Tea, Tata Coffee, Tata Salt, Tata Steel, and others. The key benefit of this technique is that it fosters consumer confidence in well-known companies like Tata Group, Sony, Philips, etc.

Corporate-cum-Individual Brand Names

In order to establish a distinctive brand identity, some businesses may mix their corporate name and individual brand name. For its brands including Cadburys Dairy Milk, Cadburys Five Star, Cadburys Perk, Cadburys Bournvita, and others, Cadburys uses this technique. This strategy's key benefit is that it gives the brands access to corporate brand equity. Additionally, the corporation could spend less on introducing and promoting its products[7], [8].

Family Brand Names

A family brand name is used when a corporation uses the same brand name for many brands within a single product range. For instance, Gujarat Cooperative Milk Marketing Federation uses the Amul brand name for a variety of goods, including Amul Butter, Amul Ice-cream, Amul Chocolates, Amul Ghee, and Amul Milk. Additionally, MaggiNoodles, Maggi Ketchup, and other ready-to-eat/serve food products are all sold under the same brand name by Nestle. The key benefit of this method is that introducing comparable goods within a certain product line is less costly. The business may also create a unified marketing strategy for its family of brand names [9], [10].

Distinct Brand Names in International Markets

MNCs may offer the same brand in international markets under several brand names. For instance, Skoda marketing its automobile brand as the Skoda Octavia in European countries while selling the same vehicle as the Skoda Laura in India.

Brand Logo

A brand may be recognized visually thanks to its logo. As logos, people employ images, mascots, simple alphabets, and graphic designs. All of the aforementioned examples of brand logos include the 'swoosh' of the Nike brand, the curving 'M' of McDonald's, the alphabet 'IP' that distinguishes the Unilever corporation, the 'AMUL lady with the polka dress' of the Amul brand, and 'Gattu' of Asian paints. A brand's logo helps with recall, brand relevance, distinctiveness, brand association, distinction, and brand equity.

Standards for Selecting Brand Elements

As many of the following traits as a brand may have been desirable.

1. **Simplicity:** The brand name ought to be short and simple to say. Simple names don't have to be commonplace; they only need to be appropriate for the product. For instance: Lux or Nirma.
2. **Memorability:** A strong brand should be able to stick in consumers' memories. The brand should have a memorable name that appeals to more people in order to stay in

their thoughts. To promote brand memory, the brand's owner may use a significant quantity of advertising.

3. **Appealing:** The brand name has to be catchy. For instance, the audience finds some brand names to be very enticing. It could be associated with a location like Gwaliar Suitings. It could be somewhat related to the product, like Tips and Toes.
4. Able to Describe characteristics: The brand may be able to discuss its qualities, characteristics, etc. Action Shoes, Thumps Up, Fair & Lovely, All Clear, Duracell, etc. are a few examples.
5. **Suitability:** The brand name, mark, design, or other element of the visual must be appropriate for the product. For the soft drink, for instance, the Thumps Up symbol and the brand name may work effectively. Ice creams may do well with the Go Cool brand name.
6. **Clarity:** There must be no ambiguity in the brand identification. There shouldn't be any overlap with other brands. To prevent misunderstanding among customers, brand names, colors, patterns, trademarks, etc. must be easily recognizable.
7. **Permanent use:** Brands have to provide perpetual use. The name, colors, designs, and other elements should not need to be changed over time. As a result, the brands must be described using appropriate names and markings.
8. **Profitability:** The trademark should be readily registrable in accordance with the Trade and Merchandise Act of 1958. If a brand's application for registration is denied, others may readily copy it.
9. **Differentiated:** The brand must stand out from those of rivals. The name, design, logo, and other elements must be original. It should elicit the response "Oh, this is wonderful" from viewers. Exceptional brands include Maybac, Omega Watch, Mountblanc Pens, Rolls Royce, Rolex Watches, and Raymond.
10. **Universal Usage:** The brand should make use of it possible. Other nations shouldn't raise objections to it. The brand should be easy for foreign customers to recognize and remember. The ubiquitous brands include things like Pepsi, Colgate, and Coca-Cola.

Adapt

The brand should adapt to any future additions to the product range. So, rather becoming Pizza Hut or Domino's Pizza, the name of McDonald's made more sense when a fast-food restaurant needed to add morning items to its menus. A brand is a designation for the product, such as a name, phrase, phrase, design, symbol, or other attribute. Technically speaking, that is true, but beyond that, a brand is a sentiment or a quality that consumers and users can readily associate with a certain product. Customers discover the happiness and unique experience in the specific business or in its product distinctly and not with other producers. Brands of a firm and consumer knowledge of them are often taken into consideration when assessing a business. A brand creates a lasting image of your company and its identity in the minds of prospective consumers, rather than necessarily capturing an instant sale. A brand is the perception you provide to your clients. According to social psychology, self is the notion or understanding of who you are, while personality is your reputation and how others perceive, view, or know you.

Simply putting the Brand on the market is branding. Simply explained, branding is the expression of the brandthe personalityof the firm. Branding is utilized to create a sense of emotional connection between consumers and businesses. The brand name, logo, or symbol is surrounded by an aura of intangible attributes that evokes feelings of engagement, better quality, and prestige. Successful branding initiatives create strategic awareness wherein consumers not only identify your brand but also comprehend the unique features that set it apart from the competition. when customers stick with your brand over time and make repeat purchases. Consumer behavior, which is influenced by a person's preferences, leads to brand loyalty. Regardless of price or convenience, loyal consumers will regularly buy items from their favored brands. When a client continuously buys the same product because they think it to be the best option available among the alternatives, this is known as brand loyalty.

DISCUSSION

Product Strategies and Consumer Adoption Process

The process of creating a marketing strategy is difficult. It involves designing practical strategies, including those for products, prices, distribution, and sales promotions. We will cover a variety of topics related to product planning, product development, and product management throughout the life cycle in this course. Anything that may be supplied to a market and could satiate a need or demand is considered a product in marketing. Products are referred to as goods in retail. Products are purchased as raw materials for manufacture and sold as completed commodities. The most common types of commodities are basic resources like metals and agricultural goods, but they may also include anything that is readily accessible on the open market. In project management, products are the formally defined project deliverables that include or assist in achieving the project's goals. In the insurance industry, the contracts' policies are seen as goods that the insurance provider is selling. A product is a collection of material and intangible qualities that satisfy customers.

Terms defining a product

According to Skinner, "A product is any good, service, or idea that satisfies need or wants and can be offered in an exchange." According to Philip Kotler, "A product is anything that can be offered to a market for attention, acquisition, user, or consumption that might satisfy a want or a need."

The Product Life Cycle Stages

The notion of the product life cycle is crucial to marketing. It is a business study that seeks to pinpoint a collection of typical phases in the existence of commercial goods. In other words, the 'Product Life cycle' PLC is used to map the product's lifecycle, including the phases that a product goes through throughout its lifespan.A product's life cycle may be divided into the following stages:

1. Development

The beginning of the product life cycle is at this point. The product has not yet been made available on the market. The product is still being development. Investment in research and development is a feature of this stage. Because the product is still relatively new to the market, the establishing stage is characterized by a modest growth rate of sales. During this phase, the product is firstly advertised. Public perception is crucial to a product's success. People won't purchase a thing if they are unaware of it. Depending on the effectiveness and client demand for the product, monopolies might develop. In this period, businesses often lose money rather than earning a profit. Users may not be aware of the product's full potential if it belongs to the new product class. Consumers should be given more information about the product via a variety of channels in order to secure that position in the market. The stage has the following features:

1. Minimal opposition
2. In most cases, businesses lose money.

3. Promotion rates increase
4. Most expensive products
5. High expense of marketing.

3. Growth

Sales start to increase as soon as the product is acknowledged by the market. This is the most important phase and aids in establishing the brand in the marketplace. The product begins to expand during the growth stage. At this point, a significant amount of money is spent on advertising. The company wishes to focus on emphasizing to the customer how superior its product is to those of its rivals. Profits begin to flow and growth occurs after the invention is accepted by the market. Companies may experiment with fresh concepts and innovation if there is a monopoly in place in order to continue sales growth. The time to attempt to raise the product's market share is during the growth stage, which shows a quick rise in both sales and earnings. It constantly fluctuates from product to product.

4. Maturity

The maturity stage is the third step of the product life cycle. Market saturation results from fulfilled consumer demand and comprehensive distribution networks. The product has now gained widespread acceptance, and expansion has slowed. But soon enough, rival products will put pressure on a popular product at this stage. If the product successfully completes the Introduction and Growth phases, it will spend a considerable amount of time in the Maturity stage, when the manufacturer will have to start investing again in order to protect the product's market position. Sales increase quickly during this phase before starting to gradually settle. Differentiating the product from the same items given by rivals is the key to surviving this stage. Sales are starting to stabilize, so the company has to differentiate its product from the competition. Profits decline when the growth stage comes to a close, signaling the start of the maturity stage due to aggressive market rivalry. The mature stage of the development process is also the most crucial. Sales increase quickly during this phase before starting to gradually settle. Differentiating the product from the same items given by rivals is the key to surviving this stage. Sales are starting to stabilize, so the company has to differentiate its product from the competition.

5. Decline

Actual sales eventually start to decline as a result of new product competition and shifting customer preferences. A corporation will lose its ability to compete, or a shift in customer preferences or lifestyles will make the product obsolete. At this point, the product's sales start to decline. Either the product has been purchased by everyone who wanted to, or it has been replaced with newer, more creative items. Due to the slump, several businesses opt to remove their goods from the market. The only method to improve sales at this time is to decrease expenditure in order to decrease expenses. The business now has to determine how to terminate the life of the product.

Restrictions on Plc

The exact product life cycle that was just outlined is followed by very few products. Even after going through the first five phases, many products fail. Even some phases may be skipped. One product can, for instance, go directly from the Introduction stage to the Maturity stage. The PLC's issue is with this. The path a product takes is not predetermined. Therefore, each product has to be thoroughly studied and monitored closely during its whole life. Without sufficient oversight and research, the product is unlikely to ever go beyond the first stage. The Product Life Cycle cannot be used to accurately anticipate sales or to predict how long each phase will last. Sales of a product will almost certainly fall if a marketer thinks that it is close to entering the fall phase and ceases aggressively promoting it. If it had been handled as if it were still in its Maturity period, this may not have occurred. Growth may continue for a very long period if a product is actively improved on a regular basis. To determine which stage a product is in and if that stage can be prolonged, successful marketers must consult a broad variety of data and research. While this approach is practical and thought-provoking, students still need to make judgments based on a solid grasp of the available information. The product life cycle is criticized for lacking scientific backing and being ineffective in unique circumstances. Because various items' characteristics vary, so does their life cycle.

Product Life Cycle Management: Designing and Managing Product Strategies

From introduction through growth, maturity, and decline, a new product moves through a series of phases. The product life cycle is a series of events that affect the marketing mix and marketing strategy because they are linked to changes in the marketing environment. The relationship between product revenue and profitability and the phases of the life cycle may be seen. Each phase's length will be determined by the product, its novelty, its features, and the company's marketing plan. The company may influence and manage different phases of the life cycle to its benefit by using the right marketing methods. The following list of marketing tactics is utilized at different stages:

The company aims to create a market for the product and increase product awareness during the launch phase. The following marketing tactics will be used:

1. Establishing product branding and quality standards as well as securing intellectual property protection like patents and trademarks.
2. Pricing may be high skim pricing to recoup development costs or low penetration pricing to gain market share quickly.
3. Up until the product is accepted by customers, distribution is restricted. At this point, the major goal is to find it via all practical means of dissemination.
4. Promoting to innovators and early adopters is the goal. Marketing communications is to increase customer awareness of the product and inform prospective buyers about it.

2. Growth

The company aims to expand market share and develop brand preference throughout the expansion period. Sales and earnings for the corporation start to rise at this point, and so does competition. At this point, the product has widespread recognition, and some customers continue making the same purchases. In this phase, businesses concentrate on increasing market share and brand preference. It is the stage of market acceptability. However, because of the rivalry, the firm spends more on advertising to persuade clients, which causes earnings to drop at the conclusion of the growth period.

1. Maintaining product quality while adding new features and support services.
2. The company maintains pricing since there is no competition and rising demand. You may use the same pricing scheme.
3. Channels for distribution are added when demand rises and consumers are willing to buy the goods.
4. Broader audiences are the target of promotion. The primary goal of the firm's promotional initiatives is to reach a larger audience of prospective clients in order to increase market share.

3. Maturity

When a product reaches maturity, the rapid sales growth slows. Competitors with comparable items can emerge. Right now, maintaining market share while increasing profit is the main goal. Since brand recognition is high at this stage of development, sales are still increasing, but more slowly than in the past. There are now more businesses offering the same things. Therefore, instead of focusing on producing profits, businesses provide sales incentives to entice retailers to give their product greater shelf space than that of rivals. This helps them maintain market share and lengthen the life cycle of their products. At this point, regular customers often make purchases.

1. To set the product apart from those of rivals, product characteristics may be improved.
2. Due to the increased competition, prices can be cheaper.
3. Distribution intensifies, and rewards could be provided to promote preference over rival items.
4. To raise awareness, promotion places an emphasis on product difference.
5. Stage of decline

The business has a number of alternatives when revenues fall. The decline stage is explained by declining sales, shifting patterns, and bad economic situations. Sales decrease when the market gets saturated at this point. It could also be because of a shift in consumer tastes or technological obsolescence.

1. Maintain the product and maybe give it a fresh lease of life by giving it new features and applications.
2. Harvest the product, cut expenses, and keep supplying it, maybe to a devoted niche market.
3. Discontinue the product, liquidate any remaining stock, or sell it to another company that will keep selling it.

Decisions about the marketing mix in a falling stage rely on the business plan. For instance, the product will stay the same and the price will be lowered if the corporation decides to harvest. In the event of liquidation, supplies will be drastically decreased.

Process of Consumer Adoption

Adoption is the choice of a person to use a product on a regular basis. The first step in this progression of events is customer awareness of a new product, which is followed by trial use and ends with full and consistent use of the new product. The majority of customers, late adopters, and laggards, together with innovators and early adopters, eventually create a bell-shaped pattern that represents the adoption process. All potential clients go through a five-stage mental process from learning about a new product to either becoming devoted customers or rejecting it. Any product, service, or concept that someone perceives as novel is an innovation. Despite the fact that the concept is not new, it may have a lengthy history in the eyes of the person who adopts it. It takes time for innovations to permeate the social structure. The innovation diffusion process, according to Rogers, is "the spread of a new idea from its source of invention or creation to its ultimate users or adopters."

Final adoption in this definition refers to the consumer's decision to use the product extensively and consistently. The adoption process is described as "the mental process through which an individual passes from first hearing about an innovation to final adoption." Technology in particular requires a unique feature to stand out to the general audience when it comes to new goods. The adoption of a new product by a consumer may depend significantly on the five key features of the product. The mental process that a person goes through between first learning about an invention and eventual acceptance is the focus of the consumer adoption process. There are five phases that new product adopters have been shown to go through:

1. Awareness

The customer learns about the invention, but they don't know much about it. when the product is known to the prospective customers but they are not fully informed about it. The most crucial stage is Awareness, and here is where marketers spend the most time and money. How can a business expect customers to purchase a something or service if they are unaware that it exists? To ensure that the ideal perception is created and the product is wanted, advertising the product to customers requires a lot of effort. Print or media advertisements are two examples of advertising.

2. Interest

Interest constitutes the next level. The customer learns about the product at this point and starts looking for information. The internet is a common tool for information research. A company's website provides a prospective consumer with information about the company's appearance, characteristics, cost, methods of payment, and much more. Today's online advertising is greatly influenced by technology, which ensures engaging content and data collecting. Consumer interest in learning more about the invention is piqued. when a product captures the customer's interest and she actively seeks to learn more about it.

3. Evaluation

The customer weighs trying the innovation against other options. At this point, the customer is sufficiently informed about the product to weigh its relative merits and assess it in relation to a number of criteria, including price, appeal, what the competition is providing, etc.

4. Trial

To increase his or her perception of the innovation's worth, the customer gives it a try. The customer uses the goods at this point to determine if the claims are true or false. Samples or actual purchases of the goods by the customer might serve as trials. Many emerging companies want to get to this point as quickly as feasible.

5. Adoption

The client chooses to use the innovation fully and often. At this point, the customer has decided whether to stick with the product or go back to her previous one. From a cognitive to an emotional to a behavioral or cognitive state, the client transitions.

Individual variations in innovation adoption

1. Innovators. While innovators aid in product visibility, most prospective customers do not often see innovators as normal consumers.
2. Initial Adopters. This group acts as the market's de facto opinion leader.
3. Ahead of Majority. A bit sooner than expected, 34% of the market—which represents the "typical cons Umer"—will likely embrace new technologies.
4. Majority late. This group is skeptical and only accepts advances once the majority of the market has done so.

5. Laggards. The different phases of the product life cycle must be taken into account when planning and constructing the marketing mix tactics since this group is wary of change and doesn't adopt until the product is no longer seen as innovative. Understanding the five phases of customer acceptance is also crucial. It will be simple for firms to develop appropriate marketing mix strategies, particularly if these phases are well explored.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the identity, recognition, and perception of a brand in the market are significantly shaped by brand components. A strong brand identity that stands out from rivals and connects with customers is created by a business's name, logo, slogan, colors, and mascots. Brand components' consistency and authenticity boost customer loyalty and help companies create enduring emotional connections with their target market. Businesses may develop a strong brand image, increase consumer engagement, and experience sustainable success in a competitive market by putting a priority on the design and strategic use of brand aspects. Building brand awareness and establishing the company's identity in customers' thoughts requires consistency in the use of brand characteristics across multiple marketing platforms. Additionally, brand components must to be genuine and consistent with the brand's personality and values. Consumer trust is increased through authenticity, which also generates a stronger emotional bond.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Norouzi, “An integrated survey in affiliate marketing network,” *Pressacademia*, 2017, doi: 10.17261/pressacademia.2017.604.

[2] S. Lee, “A study on traditional market decline and revitalization in Korea: Improving the Iksan Jungang traditional market,” *J. Asian Archit. Build. Eng.*, 2017, doi: 10.3130/jaabe.16.455.

[3] M. Biegańska, *Introduction to packaging design and evaluation*. 2018.

[4] A. Kokovikhin, I. Kulkova, and J. Wang, “Strong HR Brand as a Sign of Leadership in Business,” in *Springer Proceedings in Business and Economics*, 2018. doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-74216-8_32.

[5] R. O’Meara and A. Bevan, “Transmedia Theory’s Author Discourse and Its Limitations,” *M/C J.*, 2018, doi: 10.5204/mcj.1366.

[6] S. Naha, “Sport in emerging markets,” in *Managing Sport Business: An Introduction: Second edition*, 2018. doi: 10.4324/9781315265476-7.

[7] M. T. Jan, A. Haque, K. Abdullah, Z. Anis, and Faisal-E-Alam, “Elements of advertisement and their impact on buying behaviour: A study of skincare products in Malaysia,” *Manag. Sci. Lett.*, 2019, doi: 10.5267/j.msl.2019.5.033.

[8] M. Anbarasi and S. P. Kumar, “Production and marketing of coffee crops with special reference to coffee plantations in Dindigul district,” *Int. J. Recent Technol. Eng.*, 2019, doi: 10.35940/ijrte.B1378.0882S819.

[9] A. L. Zenteno-Bonola, D. Aguirre-Brito, N. O. Calderón-Ríos, and L. Ordoñez-Hernández, “Strategies oh the marketing of the footwear industry in San Mateo Atenco Plaza Azul,” *J. Bus. Adm. Bus. Econ. Mark. Account.*, 2019, doi: 10.35429/jbab.2019.5.3.24.37.

[10] L. Bivainienė and T. Tamošiūnas, “Theoretical and empirical aspects of the manifestation of stakeholder participation in city brand development activities,” *Soc. Tyrim.*, 2019, doi: 10.21277/st.v42i1.260.

CHAPTER 17
STRATEGIC PROCESS: NEW PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

New product development (NPD) is a strategic process that involves the creation and introduction of innovative products or services to meet evolving market demands and customer needs. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of new product development and its impact on business growth and competitiveness. The abstract explores the stages of the NPD process, including idea generation, concept development, market research, product design, testing, and commercialization. It delves into the importance of market analysis, customer feedback, and cross-functional collaboration in successful NPD. Understanding the significance of new product development enables businesses to stay ahead of the competition, drive innovation, and create value for customers and stakeholders.

KEYWORDS:

Market Research, Market Segmentation, Product Design, Product Development Process, Product Launch, Product Life Cycle.

INTRODUCTION

The product is the primary component of the marketing strategy. A corporation must decide what product it will provide in the market before making choices regarding price, advertising, and distribution. The corporation must research market positioning and trends prior to launching new products. In other words, research into marketing eventually leads to research into products. In actuality, a comprehensive understanding of the firm's product or service is often where planning and creation of the marketing mix starts. Benefit-producing products are not usually physical objects[1], [2]. Bank services, airline services, travel firms, and educational institutions all supply items. The corporation must research all facets of the market before releasing a new product. The whole process of introducing a new product to the market is known as new product development in business. Products may be material or intangible and are a collection of advantages supplied in return. In the NPD process, there are two parallel paths: one includes concept creation, product design, and detail engineering; the other involves market research and marketing analysis[3], [4].

Generating Ideas

The creation of a product concept is the initial stage. Basic research may be used to generate concepts for new goods utilizing a SWOT analysis[5], [6]. To get knowledge about potential new product lines or feature sets, organizations may also utilize their R&D department, rivals, focus groups, staff members, salesmen, corporate espionage, trade s, or anthropological discovery techniques. By developing ideas that take affordability, ROI, and extensive distribution expenses into consideration, one may set oneself apart from the competition by using fundamental internal and external SWOT assessments as well as current marketing trends. Many concepts are developed about the new product. Many of these concepts are put into practice. Ideas come to us in a variety of ways. An idea is generated for a variety of causes[7], [8]. New concepts may come from:

1. Carrying out market research to determine what customers want and need.
2. Requesting consumer ideas.
3. Asking staff members for recommendations.
4. Generating ideas for potential new products.
5. Looking for innovative product ideas in many areas, including domestic and foreign markets.
6. Getting agent or dealer opinions on the services provided by rival companies.
7. Examining the latest offerings from rivals

Idea screening

Compile a list of potential product ideas and present it to the relevant business decision-makers, such as the management team. Based on their potential to produce money, as well as the time and resources you have available to actually build the items, discuss the benefits and drawbacks of each concept and reduce the list to only a few of the finest ones. Prior to allocating resources to faulty conceptions, the goal is to get rid of them[9], [10].

Market Testing

To launch a new product in a little market on a very small scale is known as test marketing. If the new product is a hit in this market, it is then widely distributed. In contrast, if the product fails in the test market, the corporation learns why it did not succeed. It updates the new product as needed and reintroduces it to a niche market. The business will stop using the new product if it fails once more. Large-scale marketing is less risky when done in test mode. It is a safeguard. It takes a lot of time. In particular, it must be done for expensive goods. The business should now:

1. Test the product in real-world scenarios
2. Interview customers in focus groups or introduce yourself at a trade
3. Correct issues as required
4. To ascertain consumer approval, produce a test run of the product and sell it there.
5. Get input on which concept is the most attractive from clients, staff members, and business partners. By phone or email, ask for consumer feedback.
6. Ask colleagues and business partners which of the goods they believe to be the most beneficial or useful in an email. Limit the list to no more than one or two product concepts.

DISCUSSION

Factors Contributing New Product Development

The creation of new products is influenced by several variables. The majority of new product development factors are tied to external environmental factors, but the most crucial internal element is any potential excess capacity that a company may have at any particular moment. Although businesses shouldn't take up stuff to satisfy their excess capacity, a disproportionate amount do. However, a number of environmental variables influence the creation of new goods. The following has been discussed:

1. Mission and goals of an organization

Because it represents their target environment or client segmentation, it is essential to examine the purpose and vision of these firms. Sonata, for instance, focuses on reaching out to primarily underprivileged women in their mission statement. These companies' product offerings reflect their corporate goal and vision as well.

2. Competitor Advantage

The process of developing new products in an organization is influenced by the company's age and the time of entrance. It's also vital to remember that entering a less developed market offers a chance for the creation of new products.

3. Client preferences

The changing consumer lifestyle, which results in a shift in the customer's tastes and expectations, is the driving factor behind new product creation. Customers' expectations and tastes are shifting due to a variety of factors, including the changing role of women, the rise of the nuclear and stand-alone family, and a proliferation of electronic media. The majority of today's new items, including clothes, shoes, leather clothing, fragrances, designer clothing, appliances, other durable goods, and even credit cards, are a consequence of this shift in customer tastes and lifestyle.

4. Technological Advancements

The technical advancements in the market and business are another consideration. For instance, it is highly improbable that many of today's products would have made it to the Indian market if Mrs. Indira Gandhi's government had not decided to expand the television network to cover 70% of the Indian population, launch its own satellite INSAT 1B, and start color telecast in 1982. For instance, Maggi noodles wouldn't have been as popular. The quartz watch was created as a result of the watch industry's use of chip technology, and Titan Watches has effectively leveraged it to disrupt the Indian market. The company has to develop deeper relationships with technical institutions, universities, and other R&D laboratories in order to benefit from the advances in technology and maintain its competitive edge.

5. Administration Policy

The creation of new products may also be encouraged or facilitated by government policy. An example of a government policy that may spur businesses to introduce new goods is one that promotes competition and entrepreneurship. A prime example is how Hindustan Motors and Premier Automobiles began looking for ways to strengthen their own market positions once the Indian government permitted board bending in its industrial license policy and Maruti became a popular favorite. They introduced two new goods, each of which was aimed at the more affluent end of the market. In a similar vein, government policies mandating chemical companies undergo environmental audits has increased demand for pollution control machinery. Thus, both the internal and external environments influence how new goods are developed.

6. It's a contest:

There is ongoing rivalry in the outside world. A company must do extensive study on the product that the market competitor is selling. By reviewing the business website, brochures, print advertising, internet advertisements, and other marketing materials, the firm must assess how they are selling the product. Firm must think about how its product is similar to or distinct from that of its competitors. The company may learn how to promote its own product successfully by seeing what marketing strategies the competitor may be doing and not using. When a company releases a new product into the market, it must assess what advantages the product gives prospective customers or what demand it satisfies.

7. Finding the ideal Customer

The target market for a company's marketing initiatives should be the consumer most likely to purchase its goods. The firm must take into account the reasons why a consumer may want or desire its product and use this information in its marketing communications. Instead of attempting to build a market for a product, it is far simpler to target the ideal consumer who has a need and desire for the product. Determine how your product provides a greater purpose for the group, for instance, if a rival offers to that demographic. Then, utilize this knowledge to promote to parents. To discover more about its target market, the company could wish to perform some market research. Focus groups and surveys are two methods that a company may use to better understand the requirements and preferences of the target market.

8. A differentiating feature

Customers will choose to purchase from you over your competitors if you have a compelling USP. Analyze how your product meets a demand more effectively, more quickly, or more easily than the competitors. Utilize your USP to develop marketing messaging, establish a brand for your product, and set it apart from competing or comparable items. When a company is investigating its rivals, it should thoroughly review the aspects of the products. It should closely monitor the way the competition markets its goods. The company may highlight the distinctions between its goods and those of its rivals. The company should pinpoint an advantage that the product provides over the competitors.

9. Product evaluation

It's possible that how you see the product and how prospective buyers see it are completely different. Your marketing efforts may be directed by gauging customer opinion via focus groups or by getting testers' input. You may change the packaging before the product is released if a focus group reveals that the colors you are employing are not appealing to prospective buyers. The product may not function for one use but excel in another, according to product testers. Use this information to target your marketing efforts for the customers for whom the product performs best or to improve the product before introducing it.

10. Participation of the media and public relations

Public relations and media coverage may be quite important when it comes time to the product launch. Buzz building is aided by media coverage in periodicals, newspapers, or news programs that appeal to your target demographic. A lot of people can consider publicity to be more important than the commercials and marketing materials that they are aware your company produces. It is a third-party endorsement for your goods.

11. The cycle of a product

Every product has a life cycle. The cycle's phases include introduction, development, growth, maturity, and decline. The marketing efforts that are made throughout the stage are directly impacted by knowing and keeping track of where your product is in its life cycle. For instance, marketing at the product's introduction is focused on reaching the target market and generating demand, but marketing during the product's growth stage entails fostering brand preference.

Developing New Products: Challenges

Planning for product development is still essential to an organization's sustainability. The following are some major obstacles and, therefore, success factors:

1. Social Difficulties

Products are created to fulfill a certain need or desire. The economic growth of other nations varies, thus the need or desire we have could not have materialized in other nations to support a viable target market. varied cultures mean varied tastes in cuisine, grooming routines, living arrangements, leisure activities, lifestyles, and clothing. There could be few English speakers. The translation of brand names may not be accurate. Countries may not be interested in a certain product or service that is doing well outside.

2. Developmental Pace

Product development is based on the tenet of "faster and faster." Utilizing digital design, analysis, and collaboration technologies may help companies create goods more quickly and get them to market. Engineers may convert concepts into digitalized virtual designs for testing and visualizing a new product in three dimensions in months as opposed to years by using collaboration software, file-sharing software, and other tools.

3. Platform Versatility

Every product expert would agree that a product's platform adaptability is a crucial success element in the market. This is the effect of adopting modular product design to provide clients a wider range of products. Tools for computer-aided engineering and design make it simple to reuse previously finished design files. With the help of all these files, product design is now more rapid, affordable, and efficient than ever.

4. Management of Complexity

A product's complexity sets it distinct from an application. By analyzing interaction networks, complex systems are engineered. Network modeling techniques have been established as a consequence of research to look at a network of interconnected components that make up developing complex systems. The difficulty of designing multi-component, complex systems, often known as systems engineering, continues to be a crucial success element.

5. Offshoring and Outsourcing

Optimizing internal capabilities, supplier skills and capacity, global operations, and new markets is the largest obstacle yet to be overcome. Sometimes outsourcing results in significant cost savings, other times it results in little cost savings, but more significantly, it truly aids in using international product development networks, primarily to reach new markets in other regions and use international talent pools. Let's examine the outsourcing options in more detail.

The need for geographical proximity between participants in product creation has decreased thanks to modern communication methods and the Internet. In fact, there is a growing geographical separation in product development, with various components being developed in various places across the world before being brought back together for integration and testing. The main difficulty with this paradigm is mastering global project management. The potential to globalize will increase as the difficulties do due to global inflation, rising currencies, weakening economies, and dried up venture capital. Building captive centers all over the world and outsourcing are two quick ways to benefit from globalization. Although both have advantages and disadvantages, outsourcing is often considered to have the greatest possibility for the whole product engineering ecosystem due to its scope of extension and flexibility.

6. Global Rivalry

Global rivalry often has a significant influence on the difficulties in developing new products. A business may make significant investments in a new product without being aware that a rival firm in another country would soon introduce a comparable one. Because product creators want to launch their new products before their rivals, shepherding them from idea to market is sometimes done under extreme time constraint.

7. Time:

One of the biggest difficulties businesses now face in developing new products is time. The uncertainty around a new product's failure is reduced when it is introduced at the appropriate moment. It is important to pay attention to the market and release products when there is a demand for them.

8. Market Opportunity

A business has to be aware of its rivals, both present and prospective. Only two goods will be commercially viable in the current economic scenario. You won't be able to effectively join the market or maintain your market leadership unless your product is far better than your competitors' offerings.

9. Technological Developments

One of the biggest difficulties in developing new products nowadays may be the rapid evolution of technology, according to experts. A technology arms race might create uncertainty for product creators. The upcoming development may be unknown to product creators. Investors in a business risk losing a substantial investment if it selects a road to functioning using a technology that could become quickly outdated.

10. Price:

For the company, determining the appropriate pricing for the product before releasing it on the market is another difficult task. For a product to survive in the market, having the proper pricing is crucial. It might be difficult to set a product's pricing at the ideal moment.

11. Opposition to change

The majority of consumers are inherently conservative and dislike change. The majority of consumers, with the exception of the new early adopters, whose excitement for new goods knows no boundaries, see innovation as hazardous and find new, untested items less alluring than tried-and-true alternatives. Therefore, any creative product, especially one with a significant technology component, will encounter opposition and have poor sales until prospective buyers begin to see it as safe.

12. Promotion:

Every marketer's task is to promote a new product in either a new or existing market, since doing so is essential to ensuring the product's continued success. Companies who don't actively advertise their goods are seldom recognized by the market, and clients thus have no idea what they are buying. The companies' use of marketing strategies, from print publications to social media platforms, is only one rung on the stairway to new product creation. Promotion is so essential for the success of a new product.

Companies that produce products and services are required to determine the cost of their offerings. One of the most crucial choices a management must make is the pricing of the company's goods. The most important component of marketing management is pricing. As the source of income for a businessperson but an expenditure for the customer, pricing is a profit-planning activity. While the customer wants to spend as little as possible for his purchase, the businessman wants to earn the greatest price possible for the good he sells. As a result, one of the most important and challenging choices a firm's management must make is choosing the price. One of the main factors in determining a product's pricing is cost. It is one of the three main variables that affect price. Customers and competition make up the other two elements. Pricing is a strategy used by a company to determine its selling price. It often relies on the company's regular prices as well as how much the buyer thinks the product is worth in relation to similar items. The selection, estimate, and assessment of costs, comparative analysis, and market conditions are all factors that differ in importance depending on the pricing approach. The cost of a product or service is known as the price. To put it another way, it is the monetary worth that a customer trades for the advantages or enjoyment of owning or utilizing a product or service. Price is referred to as one of the components of the "marketing mix" in the context of marketing, which also includes quality, design, advertising, promotion, and distribution. The selection of a suitable price is crucial for a company's performance since there is an important distinction between pricing and the other components of the marketing mix: price generates income while the other components result in expenses. Pricing is the process of figuring out what a business will get in return for its goods. Manufacturing costs, the marketplace, competition, the state of the market, brand, and product quality are all variables that affect prices. In the theory of microeconomic price allocation, pricing is also a crucial variable. Pricing is one of the four Ps of the marketing mix and a crucial component of financial modeling. The other three of the four Ps are cost centers; only price generates money. The other Ps of marketing, however, will work to reduce price elasticity, which will allow price rises to generate more revenue and profits.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, for companies looking to succeed in a cutthroat industry, new product creation is a strategic need. Companies may provide value for consumers, stand out from rivals, and ensure a profitable future by investing in innovation, market research, and cross-functional teamwork. In a corporate environment that is always changing, embracing the NPD process equips organizations to generate development, stay relevant, and stay ahead of the curve. Effective NPD requires cross-functional cooperation between teams from marketing, R&D, and sales. The inclusion of many viewpoints guarantees that the finished product is well-rounded and satisfies the requirements of both the consumer and the company. Additionally, flexibility and constant development are essential for effective NPD. Companies may improve their NPD processes and be nimble in reacting to market changes by learning from both successes and mistakes.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Bazrkar, S. Iranzadeh, and N. F. Farahmand, “Identifying and selecting the strategic process using the cross-efficiency approach based on satisfaction level and extendded balanced scorecard,” *Int. J. Qual. Res.*, 2018, doi: 10.18421/IJQR12.01-05.

[2] J. J. Ortells, J. W. De Fockert, N. Romera, and S. Fernández, “Expectancy-based strategic processes are influenced by spatial working memory load and individual differences in working memory capacity,” *Front. Psychol.*, 2018, doi: 10.3389/fpsyg.2018.01239.

[3] L. N. Miller, “University community engagement and the strategic planning process,” *Evid. Based Libr. Inf. Pract.*, 2018, doi: 10.18438/eblip29351.

[4] A. Abbaspour, A. H. Amirkhani, A. A. P. Ezzat, and M. J. Hozori, "Identifying and describing sub-processes in the strategic intelligence process by qualitative content analysis in an inductive way," *J. Intell. Stud. Bus.*, 2018, doi: 10.37380/jisib.v8i1.302.

[5] U. K. Bamel and N. Bamel, "Organizational resources, KM process capability and strategic flexibility: a dynamic resource-capability perspective," *J. Knowl. Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.1108/JKM-10-2017-0460.

[6] L. Lembinen, "Academic library directors' strategic decision-making process," *Lib. Q.*, 2018, doi: 10.18352/lq.10224.

[7] P. Gradinaru, "Approaching Model of the Strategic Management Process of the Company," *Bul. ştiinţific Univ. din Piteşti. Ser. Ştiinţe Econ.*, 2018.

[8] B. Nemeth, N. Dew, and M. Augier, "Understanding some pitfalls in the strategic foresight processes: The case of the Hungarian Ministry of Defense," *Futures*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.futures.2018.06.014.

[9] P. Mielcarek, "The strategic renewal process – the challenge of creatingand capturing value," *Manag. Sci.*, 2018, doi: 10.15611/ms.2018.4.04.

[10] S. J. Conway *et al.*, "Strategic Review Process for an Accountable Care Organization and Emerging Accountable Care Best Practices," *Population Health Management*. 2018. doi: 10.1089/pop.2017.0149.

CHAPTER 18
SIGNIFICANCE OF PRICING STRATEGIES IN DRIVING BUSINESS PROFITABILITY

Dr. Somprabh Dubey, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- somprabh.dubey@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. (Prof.) Ashok Kumar, Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- dr.ashok@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Pricing strategies are essential components of a company's marketing mix, shaping the perceived value of products or services and influencing consumer behavior. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of pricing strategies in driving business profitability, market positioning, and customer perception. The abstract explores various pricing strategies, including cost-based pricing, value-based pricing, skimming, penetration pricing, and dynamic pricing. It delves into the importance of understanding market dynamics, consumer preferences, and competitive landscapes in devising effective pricing strategies. Understanding the role of pricing strategies empowers businesses to optimize revenue generation, gain a competitive advantage, and achieve sustained success in a diverse and ever-changing market.

KEYWORDS:

Cost Management, Gross Profit Margin, Net Income, Operating Expenses, Profitability Analysis, Return on Investment (ROI).

INTRODUCTION

Different pricing techniques may be used by organizations to set the product's price. The following significant pricing techniques are covered:

Cost-Based Pricing: The price is established by adding a profit component to the product's manufacturing costs. Cost of the item serves as the primary criterion for setting a price. In order to do this, the cost of producing or purchasing the item is included as a defined sum or percentage when determining the price. Despite its continued widespread usage, this pricing technique is in some respects rather dated and somewhat denigrated. Customers are more interested in the value the product offers them than they are in how much it cost to manufacture itwhich is often used in retailing when the retailer wishes to know roughly what the gross profit margin of each transaction will be, is one example. There are two variations of this: full cost pricing, which accounts for both variable and fixed expenses, and markup pricing, which adds a percentage. The alternative is direct cost pricing, which combines variable expenses with a markup of some proportion. The latter is only used during times of intense competition since it often results in long-term losses. This strategy has the benefit of letting the company know that its expenses are being met. The biggest drawback of cost-plus pricing is that it could result in uncompetitive prices for goods[1], [2].

Marginal-Cost Pricing: With this approach, the price of a product is determined at what it would cost to produce an additional unit of production. This policy limits the producer's ability to charge for each unit of a product sold to the addition to total cost attributable to materials and direct labor. When sales are sluggish, businesses often set prices that are near to their marginal costs[3], [4].

Economical Pricing: This is a straightforward cheap cost. A product is marketed and promoted for the least amount of money possible. In supermarkets, you may often find budget brands of soups, pasta, etc. In order to provide the customer a comparatively cheaper price to load an aircraft, budget airlines are renowned for keeping their overhead costs as low as possible. The first few seats on a flight are sold for relatively little money, and the bulk of the remaining seats are in economy, with the final few seats on a journey commanding the greatest price. Sales increase during recessions because to economy pricing. It differs from a value pricing method, which we will discuss momentarily[5], [6].

Product Life Cycle Pricing: Every product has what is known as a life cycle. A product moves through the cycle's introduction, growth, maturity, and decline phases throughout time. A small business would often maintain higher pricing while sales are flourishing and the organization is in the development stage. Customers will probably pay the higher price, for instance, if the company's product is special or of better quality than similar items. A business that charges high prices for its goods while it is still growing can also have a highly sought-after new technology[7], [8].

Customer-based pricing: This refers to setting prices based on what a business anticipates consumers would be willing to pay. Here are a few often used customer-based pricing schemes.

The goal of penetration pricing is often to grow a product's market share, giving the chance to raise the price after this goal has been accomplished. Setting a relatively low initial entrance price, often lower than the anticipated established price, in order to draw in new clients is known as penetration pricing. Due to the cheaper pricing, the plan hopes to persuade consumers to switch to the new product. The most frequent association of penetration pricing with a marketing goal is an increase in market share or sales volume. Penetration pricing is probably going to provide less profits in the near run than it would if the price were set higher. However, having a larger market share has certain important advantages for long-term profitability, therefore the price approach is often justifiable. A lower price than competing items is a competitive advantage when a product enters a market with little to no significant product difference and price elasticity. This strategy is often employed to assist the introduction of new products[9], [10].

Price skimming: Skimming is the practice of setting a high price before other businesses enter the market. This is often utilized for the introduction of new products that, typically because of technical characteristics, face little to no competition. "Early adopters" who are willing to spend more for the newest or finest goods on the market often purchase such things. With this strategy, there are some additional issues and difficulties. Price skimming as a tactic won't work for very long since other companies will soon release items that put pressure on the price. For a novel new product, distribution might be difficult. The increased margins that may be achieved by price skimming may have to be reduced in order to persuade retailers to carry the product. Another issue is that a company may impede the volume increase of the demand for the product by price skimming. This may allow rivals more time to create substitute items in preparation for the period of time when market demand is the highest. Skimming is often utilized in electronic markets when a new range is initially released into the market at a premium price in order to cover the expense of investment in the original research into the product. This tactic is only used for a brief period of time to recoup the majority of the expenditure required to create the product. Other pricing strategies like economy or penetration must be used by a supplier in order to increase their market share. This approach might leave the product with a high price compared to the competitors, which can have several drawbacks.

Pricing exclusion:

The act of charging a different price for the same product in various market sectors is known as price discrimination. For instance, this might be for several classes, such as age groups, or for various operating hours. Whether to utilize a single price or numerous prices for the same product is a crucial decision in pricing. Utilizing a single pricing offers a number of advantages, including the fact that it is straightforward, easier for both staff and consumers to understand, and less likely to lead to a hostile relationship between marketer and client. A single price also presents certain difficulties: if it is set too high, some consumers would not be able to purchase the goods; if it is set too low, the company may miss out on sales from clients who would have spent more if the price were set higher. Differential pricing refers to setting different rates for various customers while maintaining a consistent level of product quality and output. The market must be divided into several sectors with various price sensitivities, and the pricing strategy must be used in a manner that prevents consumers from becoming perplexed or enraged.

Pricing with Temporary Discounts: To boost sales, small businesses may also employ pricing with temporary discounts. Coupons, cent-off deals, seasonal price cuts, and even bulk purchases are examples of temporary discount pricing tactics. For instance, to minimize product inventory after the holidays, a small garment company may offer seasonal price discounts. A buy-two-get-one-free deal might be part of a volume discount.

Competitor-Based Pricing: In this pricing strategy, the price is mostly influenced by competitor prices. Customers have a large selection of vendors to choose from when there is fierce rivalry in a market. They could choose to purchase from the vendor who charges the lowest price or the one who provides the finest customer service. However, clients will undoubtedly be aware of what is a fair or typical pricing in the market. In a market where there is competition, the majority of businesses lack the clout to raise prices above those of their rivals. They often establish prices that are in line with those of their immediate rivals, a practice known as "going-rate" pricing. These companies are essentially "price-takers" since they have to accept the going market price set by supply and demand. Using competitive pricing has the benefit of ensuring that selling prices are comparable to those of competitors, preventing price from becoming a competitive disadvantage. The key issue is that the company has to find another approach to draw clients. It must compete using strategies other than pricing, such as offering distinctive customer service or having more availability.

Additional tactics

Target price

It is a pricing strategy in which a product's selling price is determined to provide a given rate of return on investment for a particular volume of production. The target pricing strategy is most often employed by public utilities, such as electric and gas providers, and businesses with significant capital expenditures, such as automakers. Target pricing is useless for businesses with modest capital expenditures since, using this equation, the selling price will be overstated. A corporation may experience an overall budgetary loss on the goods if the whole amount is not sold since the target price technique is not based on the demand for the product.

Time-based pricing: This flexible pricing method, which is largely used by Internet-based businesses, was made feasible by information technology advancements. Dynamic pricing enables online businesses to adjust the prices of identical goods to correspond to a customer's willingness to pay by responding to market fluctuations or vast amounts of data gathered from customers - ranging from where they live to what they buy to how much they have spent on previous purchases. The airline sector is often used as an example of dynamic pricing success. In fact, it uses the strategy so masterfully that the majority of passengers on any one airline have purchased tickets at various price points for the same trip.

Value-based pricing, or VBP, is the practice of setting a product's price based on its customer value rather than its manufacturing costs or any other criteria. When the value to the consumer is much greater than the cost of delivering the product or service, this pricing model is typically used. For instance, the cost of making a software CD is about the same regardless of the program on it, but the pricing varies depending on the projected perceived value from the buyers. The customer's options will affect how much value they believe they are receiving. Utilizing competing software, finding a manual workaround, or refraining from doing an action are examples of alternatives in business. You must understand your customer's company, his business expenses, and his perceived alternatives in order to use value-based pricing. Other names for it include perceived-value pricing.

Product-Line Pricing: Product-line pricing involves setting and modifying prices for several goods that are part of the same product line. Instead of concentrating on the profitability of a single product, a marketer should aim to optimize earnings across the board.

Pricing Captive

Captive pricing includes setting a low price for the entry-level item in a product range while setting a higher price for the necessary accessories or enhancements.

Exorbitant Prices

When a product line includes many high- and low-quality variations of the same item, premium pricing is often applied. It implies charging extra for goods with better quality or more versatility.

Bait Pricing

Bait pricing is when a marketer sets the price of one item in a product line low with the goal of selling another item in the line at a higher price.The marketer anticipates that the cheaper item will draw consumers into the shop, where they will then hopefully buy the more expensive item.

Price Lining

Price lining entails a company setting a small range of pricing for certain categories or product lines.The fundamental premise of price lining is that demand for different groupings or sets of items is inelastic. Customers that find pricing to be appealing will keep making purchases despite minor price fluctuations.

DISCUSSION

Process Of Setting a Price

Setting a price strategy and policy for the product for the first time to develop it may be a difficult undertaking for an entrepreneur. Price serves as more than simply a label for a product or service; it informs clients about the targeted value positioning of your company and also impacts your profitability. The price of your product or service is more than simply a numerical representation; it generates income and affects whether you make sizable profits or incur losses. Therefore, the profitability depends on how well a pricing plan is designed and implemented.

The stages in the pricing process are as follows:

1. Selecting the price target:

The firm must choose the pricing aim before deciding how to position its market offering. The five main goals that may be pursued are product-quality leadership, greatest present profit, maximum market share, and survival. Setting a price is made simpler by having a clearer goal. The goals that a business has set for its pricing strategy are known as price objectives. Creating price goals is a crucial activity since they serve as the foundation for choices about future pricing phases. The pricing goals must be in line with the marketing and organizational goals. Numerous functional areas, including finance, accounting, and manufacturing, are affected by pricing goals. A marketer may utilize one or more multiple price targets as well as short- and long-term pricing objectives.

2. Establishing the product or target market's demand:

The firm must establish the market's demand. The price the company decides will have a varying effect on the degree of demand and the business goals. Price and demand are often inversely connected, with higher prices resulting in lower demand and vice versa. The kind of goods, the kind of target market, and the circumstances surrounding the purchase all influence how important pricing is. Value combines a product's cost and quality characteristics, which buyers use to distinguish one brand from another. A marketer may more accurately determine the target market's perception of pricing by having a thorough understanding of the significance of a product to consumers as well as their expectations of quality and value.

3. Calculating the cost:

The business must calculate the expenses. The company wants to charge a price for this that covers the costs of product manufacturing, distribution, and sales as well as provides a respectable return for the risks and work put into it.

4. Competitor analysis:

The business must evaluate the costs, pricing, offerings, and potential responses of its rivals. The pricing and product attributes of the company's closest rivals should be taken into account, and their value to consumers should be assessed. After that, it might choose to charge more, the same as a rival, or less. Knowing the pricing of the competition puts marketers in a better position to set their own prices; finding rivals' prices may be a frequent task of marketing research. The costs of competitors are often carefully held secrets that might be difficult to learn. To make sure that their company's prices are the same as or lower than those of their rivals, marketers in an industry where price competition is prevalent require competitive pricing intelligence. To give its products a premium image, a company may price its goods slightly above the competition, or it may use pricing as a strategic instrument and price its goods below those of rivals.

5. Choosing a price strategy:

At this point, the company must choose a pricing strategy. When making a choice, take into account the product or service's pricing, the costs of alternatives, and the distinctive attributes as perceived by the consumer. One or more of these factors should be taken into account in the pricing strategy chosen. Cost, demand, and competition are the three main factors that might influence pricing. An organization often takes into account a number of factors. The kind of product, the industry's market structure, the brand's market share position in relation to rival brands, and client attributes all have an impact on the bases that will be employed.

6. Setting the cost:

Firm must finally set the price. Here, it must take these things into account: 1) The effect of other marketing initiatives, such as advertising and brand quality, in relation to competition.2) The pricing strategy of the company; 3) The effect of the price on distributors and dealers, for example.

Price Drops and Price Hikes

In certain circumstances, the business could decide it would be wise to start a price reduction or an increase. In both situations, it must consider potential customer and rival responses.

Starting Price Reductions

A company could think about lowering its pricing under a number of circumstances. Excess capacity is one such situation. In this instance, the company needs more clients but is unable to get them by expanded sales efforts, improved products, or other actions. In order to increase sales, it could abandon its "follow-the-leader pricing" strategy of charging about the same as its top rival. However, as the airline, fast-food, construction equipment, and other sectors have seen recently, lowering prices in a sector with over capacity may result in price wars as rivals fight for market share. Falling market share in the face of fierce price rivalry is another circumstance causing price adjustments. Automobiles, consumer electronics, cameras, watches, and steel are just a few examples of American sectors that have lost market share to Japanese rivals whose high-quality goods were less expensive than their American equivalents. American businesses adopted more aggressive pricing strategies in response.

Setting off price rises

Profits may rise significantly after a good price hike. For instance, a 1 percent price rise would raise earnings by 33 percent if sales volume is unaltered and the company's profit margin is 3 percent of sales. Cost inflation is a significant contributor to price rises. Profit margins are squeezed by rising expenses, which forces businesses to pass cost increases on to consumers. Overdemand is a further factor for price increases: When a business is unable to meet all of the demands of its clients, it may decide to increase prices, limit product distribution, or do both. To keep up with growing expenses, businesses have a variety of options for raising their pricing. By eliminating discounts and introducing more expensive products, prices may be increased nearly undetectably. Or, prices might be forcibly increased. The business must not come seen as a price gouger by passing price hikes on to consumers. Companies also need to consider who would be most negatively affected by price increases. Customers have long memories, and they will ultimately stop doing business with organizations or even whole sectors that they believe to be overcharging them.

There are methods for preventing this issue. One is to continue to feel that any price rise is reasonable. A corporate communication campaign explaining to clients why prices are increasing should be used to promote price rises. Customers should be informed in advance wherever feasible so they may compare prices or shop elsewhere. Putting low-visibility price changes initially is another effective strategy: Examples include discontinuing discounts, raising minimum order amounts, and reducing the output of goods with poor margins. Long-term project contracts or bids should include escalator provisions based on things like rises in recognized national pricing indices. The sales team should assist corporate clients in finding cost-saving measures. The business should, wherever feasible, look for solutions to meet rising expenses or demand without increasing prices. It may, for instance, think up more affordable methods to manufacture or market its goods. Instead of boosting the price, as candy bar producers sometimes do, it may reduce the size of the product. It may omit particular product features, packaging, or services, or replace less costly ingredients. Or it may "unbundle" its goods and services, taking out previously included items and charging them individually. For instance, IBM now charges separately for its training and consulting services.

Reactions of rivals to pricing adjustments

Competitive responses to price increases made by a corporation are uncommon. If the opponent is the market leader or an active challenger, reactions could be intense and hostile. Competitors may decide not to follow the price hike, which would disadvantage the initiator, or they may opt to follow the lead and lower prices, negating the initiator's advantage.

1. A price increase that no rival matches might drive buyers away from rival products. A price decrease that is reciprocated by the opposition won't boost the initiator's sales but can lower industry profitability. If rivals equal a business's price increase but do not match a firm's price decrease, the company will have succeeded in its goal.

2. A company's strategic goals determine how it responds to pricing changes made by competing companies. If a company's strategic goal is to hold or harvest, it is probable that it will follow the price rise of its rival. It will be able to generate bigger sales without having consumers think of it as a business that drives up prices. If a company's strategic goal is to build, it won't follow its competitor's price hike. Due to its cheap pricing, it will be hoping that part of the clientele of the rival would migrate to using its goods. In contrast, a firm would adopt a competitor's price reductions if its strategic goal is to expand or maintain market share since, in the absence of such a move, its consumers will migrate to the competitor's less expensive offering. And if a company's strategic goal is to harvest, it will disregard a competitor's price reduction since it doesn't really care about luring in new consumers; rather, it wants to maximize revenues from any existing clientele. As a result, a corporation must be aware of its rivals' strategic goals if it wants to understand how they will respond to pricing changes. By closely observing how rivals are positioning and advertising their goods, a business may have a good understanding of their strategic goals. To discover more about their strategic goals, it should also speak with their distributors, merchants, and perhaps recruit some of their staff.

3. If a business increases prices in response to rising inflation, rivals will do the same because rising inflation affects them as well and because consumers anticipate price increases in response to rising inflation. However, rivals' responses would rely on their own strategic goals, so they would not necessarily follow suit if a corporation increases prices because its goal is to harvest.

4. If a business has extra capacity, it would match a competitor's price reduction since failing to do so would force its consumers to transfer, something the business could not afford given its current excess capacity.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the effectiveness and market position of a corporation are significantly influenced by its pricing strategy. Businesses may promote growth, profitability, and client loyalty by matching pricing to customers' perceptions of value, using creative strategies, and being sensitive to market changes. In a diversified and competitive business environment, organizations that recognize the strategic relevance of pricing are better able to maximize their revenue production, stand out from rivals, and provide long-lasting value to their clients. It is crucial to comprehend market dynamics, customer preferences, and competitive environments in order to choose the best pricing approach. Businesses can see opportunities, adapt to changes, and make informed choices thanks to a comprehensive study. Additionally, it's crucial to regularly assess and analyze the efficacy of pricing schemes. Companies may maintain their competitiveness and relevance by periodically making modifications and fine-tuning based on client input and market developments.

REFERENCES:

[1] S. S. Deshpande, "Various Pricing Strategies: A Review," *J. Bus. Manag.*, 2018.

[2] W. Chen, H. Liu, and D. Xu, "Dynamic pricing strategies for perishable product in a competitive multi-agent retailers market," *JASSS*, 2018, doi: 10.18564/jasss.3710.

[3] C. Gibbs, D. Guttentag, U. Gretzel, L. Yao, and J. Morton, "Use of dynamic pricing strategies by Airbnb hosts," *Int. J. Contemp. Hosp. Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.1108/IJCHM-09-2016-0540.

[4] T. Li, Y. Chen, and T. Li, "Pricing strategies of logistics distribution services for perishable commodities," *Algorithms*, 2018, doi: 10.3390/a11110186.

[5] F. Morimura and Y. Sakagawa, "Information technology use in retail chains: Impact on the standardisation of pricing and promotion strategies and performance," *J. Retail. Consum. Serv.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.jretconser.2018.08.009.

[6] J. Wu and Q. Huang, "Myopic and Far-Sighted Pricing Strategies in a Duopoly Market with e-WOM Effect," *Int. J. Electron. Commer.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/10864415.2018.1485087.

[7] "Pricing Strategies," in *Sports Finance and Management: Real Estate, Media, and the New Business of Sport, Second Edition*, 2018. doi: 10.4324/9781315119663-10.

[8] Z. Zhang, Q. Zhang, Z. Liu, and X. Zheng, "Static and dynamic pricing strategies in a closed-loop supply chain with reference quality effects," *Sustain.*, 2018, doi: 10.3390/su10010157.

[9] J. Luo, H. Zhang, and H. Li, "Pricing strategies in online book industry: a comparative study," *Inf. Syst. E-bus. Manag.*, 2018, doi: 10.1007/s10257-017-0346-y.

[10] W. L. WANGUI, D. KIRAGU, and A. WACHIRA, "Effect of Pricing Strategy and Growth of Selected Hotels in Nyeri County, Kenya," *Int. J. Acad. Res. Accounting, Financ. Manag. Sci.*, 2018, doi: 10.6007/ijarafms/v8-i1/4046.

CHAPTER 19
EXPLORING VARIOUS TYPES OF MARKETING INTERMEDIARIES

Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhimanyu.upadhyay@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. Abhishek Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhishekkumar@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Marketing intermediaries play a crucial role in the distribution and promotion of products and services, bridging the gap between producers and consumers. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of marketing intermediaries and their impact on the efficiency and effectiveness of the marketing process. The abstract explores various types of marketing intermediaries, such as wholesalers, retailers, agents, and distributors, and their roles in reaching target markets, managing logistics, and providing valuable market insights. It delves into the benefits and challenges of working with marketing intermediaries and the strategies businesses can adopt to build successful partnerships. Understanding the importance of marketing intermediaries empowers businesses to optimize distribution channels, enhance customer reach, and achieve market success in a competitive and diverse business environment.

KEYWORDS:

Agents, Brokers, Distributors, Retailers, Sales Representatives.

INTRODUCTION

Only after taking into account all relevant criteria can a choice about marketing middlemen be made logically. The method will be determined by the type of the product. The following three factors should be taken into consideration when choosing a distribution channel: maximum geographic market coverage; maximum advertising efforts; and least expensive option.For existing items, choosing an intermediate will follow a different process than for new ones. The intermediaries in the marketing process are the wholesaler and the retailer[1], [2]. They serve as a conduit between the producer and the buyer.Selling goods directly to customers is known as retailing. Peddlers peddled their items in the first markets many thousand years ago, which is when retailing first emerged[3], [4]. Retail businesses fail at a relatively high rate due to intense competition. The most crucial area of competition is price, but there are other considerations as well, such as location's convenience, the choice and arrangement of the goods, the establishment's appeal, and reputation. Vending machines, door-to-door and telephone sales, direct mail marketing, the Internet, budget stores, specialty shops, department stores, supermarkets, and consumer cooperatives are just a few of the various forms that retailing today takes.

Retail is the selling of products and services directly to consumers by people or companies. The supply chain, an interconnected system, includes retailers. A retailer makes bulk purchases of items or products from manufacturers, either directly or via a wholesaler, and then resells the smaller purchases to customers at a profit. Retailing may be carried out door-to-door, through delivery, or at established sites like shops or markets. Subordinate services like delivery are part of the retail industry. When a service provider attends to the requirements of a sizable number of people, such as for the general public, the word "retailer" is also used. Shops may be found in malls, on streets with few or no residences, or on residential streets[5], [6].Shopping streets could be pedestrian-only zones. A retail street may sometimes have a complete or partial roof to shield patrons from the elements. Non-shop retailing includes mail order and online retailing, a sort of electronic commerce utilized for business-to-consumer interactions. Retail is the selling of products to consumers for their own use and consumption rather than for resale. The supply chain ends with the retail transaction. Retailers try to sell the same number of items that manufacturers sell to them in huge numbers to customers.

Various Retailer Types

The following retail business types are covered

1. Department Store

This sort of retailer might look as a collection of smaller retail shops run by one firm, but it is often the most complicated and offers a large selection of items. The department store merchants provide goods at different price points. This kind of retailer enhances customer service by facilitating the purchase of a wide range of items from a single shop[7], [8]. These are very big businesses that sell a wide variety of "soft" and "hard items; sometimes resemble a group of specialty stores. A merchant of such a shop offers a wide selection of categories at an average price. They provide excellent customer service.

2. Supermarkets

Typically, this kind of business focuses on providing a variety of food and drink goods. But many now provide goods from the marketplaces for home, clothing, and electrical goods as well. Due of their large purchasing power, supermarkets frequently sell products at inexpensive costs[9], [10].

3. Warehouse retailers

These stores are often found in commercial or retail parks, where space leases are less expensive. This makes it possible for this kind of shop to stock, present, and sell a wide range of goods at extremely affordable costs.

4. Specialty Shops

This kind of retailer may provide the consumer with professional knowledge and a high degree of service since they specialize in certain sectors or items. By providing accessories and extra relevant items at the same location, they also provide value. A typical speciality shop concentrates on a single category and offers high-quality customer service. A specialized shop would be one that sells dog food as its only product. However, this structure also includes branded retailers. For instance, if a shopper enters a Reebok or Gap store, they will only discover Reebok and Gap merchandise there.

5. E-tailer

This kind of store allows clients to order things online and have them delivered. This kind of store can provide a larger geographic consumer base and is very practical. E-tailers often have reduced rent and administrative costs, allowing them to provide highly competitive rates.

6. Convenience shop

Typically found in residential neighborhoods, this sort of shop provides a restricted selection of goods at high costs because to the convenience factor. They are primarily seen in populated regions. They provide a small selection of items at higher than usual costs, along with quick checkout. Given that it often operates with extended hours and stocks every day, this shop is excellent for last-minute and emergency purchases;

7. Discount shop

This kind of shop provides a range of items at reduced prices. By reselling end of line and returned items at reduced costs, they provide inexpensive pricing on less trendy brand products from a variety of providers. These shops often provide a broad range of goods and services, but they mostly compete on pricing by providing a vast selection of goods at reasonable and low costs. Retailers often carry fewer trendy brands.

8. Boutiques and concept stores

These establishments resemble specialty shops. Concept shops are often quite tiny and carry only one brand. The company that owns them manages them.

9. Hypermarkets: They provide a wide selection and plenty of special goods with slim profit margins. Comparatively speaking to other retail models, the running costs are lower.

10. Malls

They have a variety of retail stores in a single location. Under one roof, they provide goods, food, and entertainment.

11. Vending Machines

This is a piece of automated equipment that clients use to insert money and purchase goods.

12. Street Stalls

These are businesses with very little space since they are often built on any open ground along a busy street; they are typically long-term structures. They are owned by small partnership companies or individual shops.

13. Stalls in marketplaces or Bazaars

These are little stores located in marketplaces that have been especially built, such the Crawford Market in Bombay or the New Market in Calcutta. There is hardly much room. The fact that potential customers are always walking by is a significant benefit of such a stand. These booths can be transient, as with weekly markets in rural areas, or they might be permanent. These companies often controlled by partnerships or individual proprietors.

14. Second-hand Dealers

These often deal in the sale of books, clothing, furniture, automobiles, and other items. They are quite successful because they meet the demands of the majority of consumers who cannot afford to purchase brand-new products. They are owned by sole proprietorships or partnerships.

15. Hawkers and Peddlers

They go from one location to another with a relatively little inventory that they purchase from wholesalers or neighborhood shops. Usually, you can find them on busy street corners. They often provide products that are of lower quality and at alluring prices. There is no doubt about any promise provided or complaint made since they are seldom seen again in the same location. Rarely is the cost set in stone. Fruit, toys, pencils, handkerchiefs, hairpins, combs, and other items are the kinds of things that are sold by peddlers, who carry the products themselves rather than using a handcart or an animal to convey and display them. While hawkers may collaborate, the peddler typically works alone.

16. Co-operative Retail shops

Just as department shops and chain stores were founded in order to reduce the middleman's profit, people have established their own businesses in an effort to do the same. In order to provide products and services to its members at a reasonable cost via its shop, a co-operative organization is created in which members spend their cash. In addition, the members get interest on their investment. Representatives of the members run the shop. Because they would not be able to contribute the required capital, customers with extremely low-income levels are not the best candidates for consumer cooperatives, while consumers with high income levels are not interested in the economies that can be achieved via such shops. Therefore, these cooperatives are especially suitable for lower middle-class clients. The creation of cooperative stores like the Sahakari Bhandar, which often gives goods to customers at cheaper costs than those found in other shops, has increased in recent years all around India. They are providing a wonderful service in this regard.

17. Mail-Order Business

These are companies that do business over the mail, expanding the scope of their activities by operating in a larger geographic area. The biggest issue with mail order businesses in India is the variety of languages spoken across the nation, which makes it difficult for these businesses to expand beyond a small local region. As a result, they may have to focus on the big cities while running their company in English since it could be costly to operate in several languages in various locations.

DISCUSSION

Concept of Wholesaling

The selling of products or items to retailers, industrial, commercial, institutional, or other professional business customers, or to other wholesalers and associated subsidiary services is known as wholesaling, jobbing, or distributing. Generally speaking, it refers to the selling of commodities to any person other than a typical customer. The phrase "Cash and Carry" is used to refer to a wholesale warehouse in the United Kingdom, especially one that is accessible to the public after paying a membership. "Wholesale" is defined by the United Nations Statistics Division as the resale of new and used goods to retailers, industrial, commercial, institutional, or professional users, or to other wholesalers, as well as the act of acting as an agent or broker in purchasing goods on behalf of or selling goods to such people or businesses. In addition to physically assembling, sorting, and grading products in big lots, wholesalers also regularly break bulk, repack, and redistribute products in smaller amounts. While most wholesalers run their businesses out of individual locations, there are certain wholesale marketplaces where all the merchants meet where wholesale marketing for foods may take place. Wholesalers have historically been closer to the markets they serve than the supplier of the goods.

Duties of wholesalers

Wholesalers are companies that handle commodities in the middle of the supply chain, between the manufacturer and the customer, although historically they have only ever handled in bulk, such complete carcasses or wheels of cheese. They have delegated to the merchants the task of disassembling entire "units" into smaller portions. It is common for numerous wholesalers to be engaged in the transfer of the products, passing them on from one to another, since the transit and storing of commodities is a highly complicated and drawn-out operation. These merchants are referred to as middlemen since they act as a link between the producer and the retailer. A wholesaler is required because he handles the following marketing tasks:

1. **Assembling**: A wholesaler gathers products from several producers in large quantities and stores them in one location. He gathers things from several locations well in ahead of need. Additionally, he is permitted to import things from abroad. The assembly work done by wholesalers entails gathering agricultural goods in tiny amounts from a variety of widely dispersed small-scale farmers in order to handle them more profitably. When it comes to produced items, the assembly process entails combining inventories from many producers of the same line of products.

2. **Warehousing or storage**: The function of retaining stocks is closely tied to the function of assembling. The timing difference between production and consumption has been observed. The flow of products is not continuous, either during production or consumption. Therefore, items must be kept in reserve to prevent recurring shortages. Typically, there is a significant lag between the production and consumption of items. Therefore, goods must be kept in storage for a long period of time. A wholesaler keeps products in his warehouse and provides them to merchants as needed. He balances supply and demand to keep product pricing stable. He makes time useful.

3. **Dispersion**: A wholesaler sells items in tiny amounts according to the preferences of retailers, distributing the assembled goods to a wide number of shops dispersed across various locations. 'Breaking of bulk' is the term for this.

4. **Transportation**: A wholesaler organizes the delivery of products from manufacturers to his warehouse and from the warehouse to retailers. He reduces transportation expenses by transporting items in bulk. Many wholesalers use their own tempos and trucks to transport products swiftly throughout the country. So a wholesaler enhances the items with location usefulness. Wholesalers buy products in bulk from producers and ship them to their own storage facilities. Additionally, they arrange for the delivery of items from their warehouses to the stores of the merchants.

5. **Financing**: A distributor often sends manufacturers a down payment with their purchases. He pays them cash and buys from them in large quantities. Additionally, he often sells merchandise to merchants on a credit basis. He gives money to both manufacturers and merchants in this manner. The wholesaler offers a pretty long period of credit to the retailer that needs financial support. Manufacturers often want to keep their capital out of completed items, book debts, and other similar situations. The wholesaler accepts delivery of the products and requests from the producers a relatively brief term of credit. Furthermore, the wholesaler, who keeps completed items from manufacturers in his own warehouse, bears a significant portion of the financial burden of retaining inventories. As a result, the manufacturer is relieved of the expense of carrying stock.

6. **Bearing risk**: A wholesaler bears the risk of harm to commodities during storage and shipping. He also is responsible for the risks associated with bad loans and variations in demand. He acts as a buffer during the delivery of the commodities. Every time a product is possessed, risk is there. The wholesaler takes on the loss risk that is expected to result from the drop in product prices. The distributor also bears the risk of harm to, quality degradation of, spoilage, theft, or loss by fire of products housed in the warehouse.

7. **Grading and Packing**: A lot of wholesalers grade the assembled products into several categories, pack them in tiny batches, and label them with their own brand names or trademarks. They carry out the grading, packaging, and branding tasks in this fashion. Wholesalers' separate goods of various classes based on factors such as quality, size, form, moisture content, etc. In addition, they disassemble the packed cases into smaller quantities and repack them for distribution to shops.
8. **Pricing:** A wholesaler foresees market circumstances and demand. He contributes to setting the resale value of products.
9. **Supplying Market Information**: Wholesalers tell retailers about the products that are offered on the market. Additionally, they gather data from the merchants regarding changes in customer preferences, styles, purchasing patterns, etc., and then provide it to the producers.
10. **Dispersing and Selling**: The wholesalers simply keep the items they have gathered in stock so they may distribute them to the retailers, who are often dispersed across a wide region. When retailers run out of inventory, they replace their stock by purchasing items in smaller amounts from these wholesalers. As a result, wholesalers assist in the marketing distribution process.

Concept of Logistics

Logistics is the control of the movement of resources from their place of origin to their site of consumption in order to satisfy specific needs, such as those of clients or businesses. Physical resources like food, materials, equipment, liquids, and personnel may be handled with abstract resources like time, information, particles, and energy in logistics. The integration of information flow, material handling, manufacturing, packaging, inventory, shipping, storage, and often security is typically required for the logistics of physical goods. Dedicated simulation software can model, evaluate, visualize, and optimize the complexity of logistics. In logistics for import and export, minimizing the utilization of resources is a typical driving force. The science of planning, executing, and maintaining force mobility and maintenance is known as logistics. In the broadest sense, the elements of military operations that deal with: a) design and development; b) movement, evacuation, and hospitalization of personnel; c) acquisition or construction; d) maintenance, operation, and disposition of facilities; and d) acquisition or provision of services the total control over how resources are gathered, kept, and transported to the necessary destinations. Finding possible suppliers and distributors, assessing their accessibility and efficiency, and then forming partnerships and signing contracts with the businesses that give the most value for the money are all part of logistics management. A business may decide to manage its own logistics if doing so is more affordable.

Logistics Market Choices

In order to fulfill consumer needs and yet turn a profit, marketing logistics entails organizing, distributing, and regulating the flow of tangible products, promotional materials, and information from a manufacturer to a market. Understanding and putting into practice a successful marketing logistics plan about product, pricing, location, and promotion are necessary to maintain an organization's competitive advantage. These four marketing logistics tasks assist the company in reaching its target market and providing the goods or services it is selling to these clients. The following are significant logistical considerations to be made:

1. Processing of Orders

Most businesses want to reduce the time between receiving an order, delivering it, and receiving payment, or the order-to-payment cycle. The longer this cycle lasts, the less satisfied the customers are, and the less money the firm makes. An order processing system gathers order information from customer service representatives or directly from customers, maintains the information in a central database, and, if necessary, distributes order details to the accounting and shipping departments. Systems for processing orders provide inventory and order tracking information at every stage. Long-term company success depends on satisfying customers, and reliable and precise order fulfillment is essential to consumer happiness. Systems for processing orders aid in ensuring that all of your clients' orders are fulfilled promptly since automated systems may lessen order processing mistakes. This may improve client satisfaction and increase revenue for your business.

2. Warehousing

Since the cycles of production and consumption are seldom synchronized, every business must keep produced items until they are sold. Goods may be supplied to clients more rapidly with additional stocking sites, but storage and inventory expenses increase. The business may consolidate inventory and employ quick shipping to meet orders to cut down on these expenses. From the beginning of the Industrial Revolution through the 19th century and into the 20th century, warehouses were a significant component of the urban environment; the structures persisted even after their primary purpose had altered.

3. Inventory

Salespeople want their businesses to have adequate inventory on hand to promptly meet all client requests. This, however, is not economical. As the customer service level gets closer to 100%, the cost of inventory rises quickly. Before making a choice, management must determine how much sales and earnings will grow as a consequence of maintaining greater stocks and guaranteeing quicker order fulfillment times. The practice of effectively managing the continuous movement of items into and out of an existing inventory is known as inventory management. In order to avoid the inventory from rising too high or falling too low and jeopardizing the company's ability to run, this procedure often entails managing the transfer of units in. From the standpoint of the aggregate worth of the items contained as well as the tax burden produced by the inventory's cumulative value, competent inventory management also aims to regulate the expenses related to the stock.

4. Transportation

The mode of transportation chosen has an impact on the cost of the product, the performance of on-time deliveries, and the state of the items upon arrival, all of which have an impact on customer satisfaction. Thanks to containerization, shippers are increasingly combining two or more modes of transportation and placing products in boxes or trailers that are simple to switch between them. The terms "piggyback" and "fishyback" are used to characterize the usage of rail and trucks, as well as "train ship, water and rail," and "air and trucks." Each synchronized mode comes with unique benefits. Shippers have a choice of common, contract, or private carriers. A shipper turns into a private carrier if it has its own fleet of trucks or airplanes. An independent company that offers transportation services to other people on contract is known as a contract carrier. A common carrier offers services between fixed locations on a regular basis and charges uniform prices to all shippers. Any firm that generates the majority of its revenue from retailing is referred to as a retailer or retail shop. Retailing refers to any business that sells to customers, including manufacturers, wholesalers, and retailers. Selling products or services to customers who intend to resell them or utilize them for commercial purposes is referred to as wholesaling. Manufacturers, farmers, and merchants are not included. Retailers and wholesalers are different in a number of ways. First, since they work with corporate clients rather than end users, wholesalers are less concerned with advertising, ambiance, and location. Second, a greater trading area is covered by wholesalers than by retailers, and wholesale transactions are often bigger than retail ones. Third, the laws and taxes that apply to wholesalers and retailers vary. Logistics is becoming more and more important since it helps marketing activities run more smoothly.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Marketing intermediates continue to be a crucial part of the marketing process because they help companies expand their market reach, improve their distribution, and learn crucial industry information. Companies may expand their market presence, increase client reach, and find long-term success in an ever-changing business environment by using the skills of marketing intermediates and forming solid relationships. Businesses may remain adaptable, responsive, and competitive in today's broad and dynamic market environment by understanding and working successfully with marketing intermediates. To guarantee compatibility with brand values and objectives, firms must carefully choose and manage marketing intermediates. Successful collaborations depend on solid relationships, support and training, and open lines of communication. Additionally, the emergence of e-commerce and direct-to-consumer business models has changed the market, leading companies to investigate new distribution channels and reevaluate the function of intermediaries.

REFERENCES:

[1] D. Kalauni and A. Joshi, “Production economics, marketing and critical success factors of Large Cardamom in Bhojpur, Nepal,” *Cogent Food Agric.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/23311932.2019.1701358.

[2] P. J. Kshirsagar, S. M. Shigawan, S. S. Wadkar, and V. G. Naik, “Post-harvest losses of alphonso mango in South Konkan region- An economic analysis,” *Int. Res. J. Agric. Econ. Stat.*, 2019, doi: 10.15740/has/irjaes/10.1/90-95.

[3] O. A. Bilovodska, O. F. Gryshchenko, and L. O. Syhyda, “The marketing channel structure: A case of chemical industry company,” *Period. Eng. Nat. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.21533/pen.v7i2.556.

[4] B. Kelly, E. Boyland, L. King, A. Bauman, K. Chapman, and C. Hughes, “Children’s exposure to television food advertising contributes to strong brand attachments,” *Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/ijerph16132358.

[5] M. Haghiri, “Market Making and the Role of Intermediary Firms in Marketing of Genetically Modified Livestock Products,” *Asian J. Econ. Bus. Account.*, 2019, doi: 10.9734/ajeba/2019/v12i130141.

[6] M. A. Benmehaia, “Farmers’ income risks and marketing channel choices: Case of date palm processing in Biskra, Algeria,” *New Medit*, 2019, doi: 10.30682/nm1903d.

[7] O. Gromova, A. Derhousova, T. Glushenko, and D. Biletska, “Problems and prospects of development of intermediary business in Ukraine,” *SHS Web Conf.*, 2019, doi: 10.1051/shsconf/20196706020.

[8] A. Siddiquee, H. Sammy, and M. Hasan, “Rice marketing system, profitability and middlemen’s role in two districts of Bangladesh,” *J. Bangladesh Agric. Univ.*, 2019, doi: 10.3329/jbau.v17i4.44627.

[9] C. Huang Yin, E. Goh, and R. Law, "Developing inter-organizational relationships with online travel agencies (OTAs) and the hotel industry," *J. Travel Tour. Mark.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/10548408.2019.1568951.

[10] G. Liu, P. Gao, Y. Li, and Z. Zhang, "Research on the Influence of Social Media Short Video Marketing on Consumer Brand Attitude," 2019. doi: 10.2991/icsshe-19.2019.192.

CHAPTER 20
UNDERSTANDING THE ESSENCE OF BUSINESS COMMUNICATION

Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhimanyu.upadhyay@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. Abhishek Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhishekkumar@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Business communication is a fundamental aspect of organizational success, encompassing the exchange of information, ideas, and messages between individuals and groups within and outside a company. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of effective business communication and its impact on productivity, collaboration, and stakeholder relationships. The abstract explores various forms of business communication, such as verbal, written, non-verbal, and digital communication, and the importance of clarity, transparency, and empathy in communication practices. It delves into the role of business communication in decision-making, problem-solving, and building a positive corporate culture. Understanding the essence of business communication empowers companies to foster meaningful connections, inspire innovation, and achieve excellence in a competitive and interconnected business landscape.

KEYWORDS:

Audience, Body Language, Business Writing, Communication Channels, Feedback, Formal Communication.

INTRODUCTION

A marketing idea from the 1990s called "integrated market communication" was promoted as being crucial for survival in the twenty-first century. The emergence of integration drives marketers to examine and value every aspect of marketing[1], [2]. It was anticipated at the outset that combining media strategies would enhance awareness more quickly and broaden the breadth of exposure. Integrating all facets of marketing communication, including advertising, sales promotion, public relations, and direct marketing, into one cohesive system as opposed to treating them separately is the goal of integrated market communication, a management concept. It guarantees that all marketing messages are seamlessly integrated and connected[3], [4].

According to the American Association of Advertising Agencies, integrated marketing communications "recognizes the value of a comprehensive plan that evaluates the strategic roles of a variety of communication disciplines, including advertising, public relations, personal selling, and sales promotion, and combines them to provide clarity, consistency, and maximum communication impact."

Benefits of IMC

1. Outstanding reach.
2. Beneficial for both domestic and foreign launches.
3. Reasonably priced.
4. Broad reach.
5. Informs the customer.
6. Aids in increasing brand value.
7. An effective and tried-and-true communication method.

The drawbacks of IMC

1. Not all markets can benefit from customized communications.
2. It is inevitable that sometimes unwanted coverage may occur.
3. The variety of modes and media is limited.
4. There is a limited and sluggish potential for cognitive gain retention.
5. A medium limitation. It is impossible to express all of the features and advantages.
6. Media advantages do not materialize in the absence of economic growth and an increase in per capita income, and sometimes, consumers become resentful owing to a lack of purchasing power [5], [6].

IMC components or tools

The seamless coordination and integration of all marketing communication methods and sources inside the firm is known as IMC Mix, which ensures maximum effect at little expense. The marketing channels, B2B and B2C markets are impacted by the approach[7], [8].

Primary IMC Components

What follows is an explanation of IMC's primary elements.

1. Advertising is the non-personal presentation of a concept or a thing. Personal selling is greatly augmented by advertising. In the contemporary India that is defined by intense market rivalry, rapid technological advancements, and changing consumer tastes and fashion, advertising has grown in significance. To communicate the characteristics and advantages of the product, use web, print, and moving media[9], [10].

As it generates, it plays a proactive part in the integrated marketing communication mix.

1. Strong visual
2. Top-of-mind cognition
3. Dispute the competitors
4. Encourage an optimistic outlook.

2. **Publicity**: Publicity is a presentation that is not personal. It is a product of the editor's desk. It just attempts to educate the audience about the events, people, businesses, etc. Since the publicity originates from the media owner, the advertiser has no influence over it. Publicity may be positive or negative. Large companies have a distinct department dedicated to public relations or publicity that handles both. Getting a placement in the targeted media is the key to publicity. Therefore, the utilization of publicity offers the seller a number of benefits, including:

1. It is cost-free to use.
2. Since it originates from the editor's desk, it offers more information than advertising.
3. Consumers place greater trust in publicity than in advertising.

Public relations:

An Identifying, establishing, and maintaining connections between a company and the public that are mutually advantageous is the definition of public relations as a management function. Public relations are a strategy for influencing public perception of a company, its goods, or its services. Investors, potential clients, corporate entities, consumers, and analysts may all be reached directly via PR. Public relations takes into account a variety of audiences and using two-way communication to monitor input and modify both the organization's activities and its message for optimal advantage. It serves to improve the organization's reputation. By connecting the firm and its audience for mutual gain, public relations helps both parties.

1. 1.To eliminate misunderstandings, doubts, uncertainty, and false impressions in the minds of various social groups is the primary goal of public relations.
2. To keep up a positive company image.
3. To have the public's support for the company's future.
4. To uphold one's societal obligations.

4. **Sales promotion**: Direct inducements that provide additional incentives to increase or hasten the passage of the product from manufacturer to customer are known as sales promotions. Devices used in sales promotion include giveaways, discounts, freebies, premiums, and point-of-purchase literature. Promotion of sales involves taking action. It encourages consumers to purchase the products covered under incentive programmers. Sales marketing includes not just customers but also retailers, wholesalers, and dealers. It serves as a bridging mechanism between salesmanship and advertising. Sales promotion is thus a useful tool for an advertiser in a competitive marketing environment to overcome a number of short-term marketing challenges. Sales promotion refers to marketing strategies that use unique, short-term tactics to entice customers to act or carry out a certain action. Marketers often provide something of value in the form of a cheaper cost of ownership for a bought product or the addition of more value-added content as a reward for responding.

5. **Personal Selling**: Personal selling refers to all one-on-one interactions with clients with the aim of presenting the product, persuading the buyer of its worth, and completing the sale. The function of personal selling differs from company to company based on the kind and size of the business, the sector it operates in, and the goods or services it is promoting. Many marketing leaders are aware that both sales and non-sales staff members sometimes represent their company as salesmen. Personal selling is a kind of advertising in which one party engages in relationship-building with another party in order to benefit both parties. Most of the time, a salesperson derives "value" from their sales, while customers get value from their product consumption. Relationship marketing has replaced the old transactional approach that was utilized for this aim. Due to the direct relationship between the salesman and the prospect, personal selling is the most successful approach to close a deal. Messages may be customized for specific contexts, real-time feedback can be analyzed, and message methods can be adjusted in response to the input.

6. **Packaging**: A well-designed container may persuade potential customers to purchase the goods. A well-designed box may convey the product's kind and quality. As it

1. Provides information about the product, packaging is crucial in changing customers' perceptions.
2. Goods protection during handling and transportation
3. Maintenance of the items' quality.
4. Product advertising.

7. **Internet:** The Internet has emerged as a significant element in the promotional mix, just as direct marketing has. Almost unknown in the 1980s, this new medium suddenly became widely used in the 1990s, gaining traction faster than any other medium in history among households, companies, and other organizations. Websites provide a novel method of disseminating news, entertainment, and advertising, and they have given rise to a whole new area of marketing: internet commerce. The practice of buying and selling products and services online is known as e-commerce. In other words, rather than just being a route for communication, the Internet has evolved into a marketing channel in its own right thanks to

businesses like Amazon.com, CDNow, eBay, and others that offer their products to customers all over the world. The Internet's greatest strength may be its interaction. Businesses may create databases that help them satisfy the unique requirements of people by connecting with customers, prospects, and other individuals one-on-one. This helps them develop a devoted consumer base.

8. **Sponsorships**: A lot of marketers extensively depend on sponsorship to foster favorable perceptions of a business. Sponsorships may improve a company's or product's visibility, foster loyalty among a particular target market, make a product stand out from the competition, provide merchandising possibilities, show support for a particular community or ethnic group, or have a positive financial effect. Similar to advertising, sponsorships are started to create enduring relationships. Organizations may use gross impressions or cost-per-thousand measures to compare sponsorships with advertising. However, it may be quite difficult to quantify the worth of sponsorships. When contemplating sponsorships, businesses should weigh the organization's long-term objectives against the sponsorships' short-term PR benefit. Two-thirds of all sponsorships are in the sports industry.Trade shows and exhibitions are among the earliest methods of boosting product sales. Trade shows and exhibitions offer chances for face-to-face interaction with prospects, help new businesses establish a stable customer base quickly, and let small and midsize businesses that may not be regularly visited by salespeople get to know suppliers and vendors. Due to the fact that many trade shows attract media attention, they are now often used as platforms for the unveiling of new goods and the promotion of executives. The government of India established the India Trade Promotion Organization to arrange trade shows and exhibits.

DISCUSSION

Importance of IMC

1. **knowledge:** IMC techniques are crucial for raising consumer knowledge of the items' availability and brand identity. It alerts prospective customers to the new product types that are currently on the market.

2. **Information**: When a product is first entering the market, information about it is required. The product's characteristics must be known to potential customers. IMC offers this information via a variety of methods so that the customer may make the best choice when purchasing the items.

3. **To boost sales**. The organization's sales are more likely to rise with a good communication mix. Increased sales provide for economies of scale in manufacturing, allowing the seller to lower costs and raise profits.

4. **To alert the middlemen**. IMC serves as a conduit for communication between sellers and middlemen like dealers and agents. Through sales literature, leaflets, brochures, price lists, and other materials, these middlemen are continually updated.

5. **Market expansion:** IMC assists the seller in growing their company from a local to a regional to a national level. This growth increases his popularity and awareness throughout the nation.

6. **More niche media.** It was formerly believed that the demands of every advertising could be met by mass media. But consumers nowadays tend to be much more selective: they block out the things they believe they don't need and stick with the things they desire as a result of ever-increasing advertising clutter, shorter attention spans, and increased resistance to advertising. Therefore, using IMC, businesses may keep

customers' attention by using a variety of communication strategies.The following steps are used to frame integrated marketing communication:

Integrated marketing communication will probably be expected to contribute in a variety of ways to achieving the marketing goals. As a result, the primary processes in developing IMC are:

1) Identifying the target market

One of the first phases in IMC design is defining the target audience. One must go much beyond typical demographic factors when considering the target audience. Additionally, it's critical to "plan ahead" and consider the following query.

2) Establishing the communication goals

Setting the communication goals is the next stage. Different communication goals may include boosting revenue, building brand loyalty, and growing a company. Therefore, the seller must assess each of these goals and decide which he plans to accomplish.

Deciding on the message

A successful message should capture interest, keep it, arouse desire, and prompt action. Although few communications really guide customers from awareness to purchase, the AIDA framework outlines the necessary characteristics of an effective message. The marketing communicator must choose what to say, how to say it, and who should say it when putting the message together. Therefore, the communicator should concentrate more on the message's substance, presentation, and structure.

4) Choosing the communication method:

Communication channels may be divided into two categories: personal and non-personal.

Personal Communication Channels

These channels allow for direct communication between two or more persons. They might speak to one other in person, over the phone, via letter, or even through an online chat. Personal communication channels are successful because they enable personal feedback addressing.

Non-Personal Communication Channels: At the majority of year-end events, the media serves as a non-personal communication channel. Media includes:

1. Print media, such as magazines, newspapers, and direct mail.
2. Broadcast media, such as radio and television.
3. Electronic media, such as CD-ROMs, web pages, videotapes, and audiotapes.
4. Use display media, such as billboards, fliers, banners, signs, and hoardings. Most impersonal communications are sent through sponsored media.

5) **Budgeting**: This is one of the most crucial choices in the IMC process. The money allotted for communication mix determines how successful the IMC is. The marketer creates the budget while considering the characteristics of the target audience, the goals, the nature of the competition, and the funding resources.

6) **Selecting the promotion mix**. Determining the advertising mix is crucial after deciding on the budget. The term "promotional mix" refers to the mixture of many tactics, including people selling, public relations, and advertising. The communication mix must vary

according to the various marketing environments. A media that works well in one market may not work as well in another.

7) **Promotion mix implementation**: The marketer next arranges to put the communication mix into action. In order to convey the marketing message, the vendor must use the appropriate medium.

8) **Continue.** In this case, the advertiser must evaluate the results in terms of sales and purchases. There is no need to worry whether the performance complies with the communication goals. However, if the performance falls short of the communication goals, remedial action must be performed.

Commercial Communication

Communication, which is defined as the exchange of ideas, messages, or information by voice, signals, or writing, is very essential to organizations. Organizations couldn't operate without communication.

The Process of Communication

Various forms or methods of communication

Body language, facial emotions, and gestures are all examples of nonverbal communication. Every spoken communication always contains nonverbal information that listeners infer on their own.Oral communication is the most comprehensive kind of communication since it involves verbal exchange.Writing down the message is known as written communication skills. It may be distributed to a larger audience and offers readers the opportunity to comprehend and understand the contents over time. The P.O.W.E.R. Plan may be used to plan, organize, compose, edit, and revise each communication.Interpersonal communication is face-to-face communication that takes place in the present and enables quick response. In particular in teams-based businesses, interpersonal communication is crucial to managers' everyday tasks.An organization's formal information flow may follow routes that are horizontal, vertical, or both. Plans, performance reviews, delegating, and training are topics covered in the majority of downward communications. Most upward messages are about complaints, poor performance, or cries for assistance. The coordination of activities or resources is the main emphasis of horizontal communications. Informal routes, sometimes referred to as "the grapevine," are used inside an organization to spread informal, social, and private communications. If not contained at an early stage, the grapevine is impulsive, rapid, exaggerated, and difficult to stop.

Communication Models

Every activity that occurs in an organization is impacted by and entwined with communication. Therefore, it is important to focus on developing communication through a variety of paradigms.

Johari window: To increase understanding within a team or in a group context, the Johari Window is a communication technique that may be employed. The Johari Window may also be used to strengthen a group's relationships with other groups based on disclosure, self-disclosure, and feedback. The tool was created by Joseph Luft and Harry Ingham, and it is based on two main concepts:

1. People may establish trust with one another by sharing personal information, and 2. By getting comments from others, people can better understand themselves and deal with personal concerns.

Model AIDA

AIDA is an acronym for copywriting that means: Using it will assist you in making sure that any kind of writing, whose goal is to persuade the reader to take some action, is as powerful as possible.

1. Attention/Attract

In today's media-heavy society, it is important to be prompt and grab people's attention. Use strong language or a visual to grab the reader's attention and compel them to stop reading and continue reading what you have to say. Make your messages and marketing appealing and engaging.

2. Interest

At this level, one must pique the audience's interest in the product or service and encourage them to consider their ownership options.

3. Desire

The curiosity and Desire components of AIDA work in tandem. As you pique the reader's curiosity, you also need to show them how what you're providing may really benefit them. The fundamental strategy for doing this is to speak to their individual needs and desires.

4. Action

Lastly, make it crystal clear what action you want your customers to take. AIDA often prompts consumers to "Purchase" something.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Business communication is essential to an organization's success because it fosters stakeholder connections, cooperation, and innovation. Businesses may encourage a happy and productive work atmosphere, spark creativity, and achieve greatness in today's competitive and interconnected business world by adopting clarity, openness, and empathy in communication strategies.

Companies that prioritize good business communication are better able to adapt, prosper, and build long-lasting value in a dynamic and ever-changing business environment. In the process of making decisions and addressing problems, business communication is crucial. The sharing of pertinent information and the participation of all parties in the decision-making process are ensured through effective communication. Additionally, employee engagement and company culture are shaped through business communication. Employees are more motivated to offer their thoughts and insights when there is open and honest communication, which develops a feeling of belonging.

REFERENCES:

[1] C. Bannier, T. Pauls, and A. Walter, “Content analysis of business communication: introducing a German dictionary,” *J. Bus. Econ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s11573-018-0914-8.

[2] S. Stadler, “Laughter and its functions in Japanese business communication,” *J. Pragmat.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.pragma.2018.12.011.

[3] M. Chan, *English for business communication*. 2019. doi: 10.4324/9781351060035.

[4] I. I. Klimova, G. V. Klimova, and S. A. Dubinka, "Students' communicative competence in the context of intercultural business communication," *XLinguae*, 2019, doi: 10.18355/XL.2019.12.01.16.

[5] C. Iluzada, "Teaching Love as the Foundation for Business Communication: A Strategy for Spiritual Formation and Concept Cohesion.," *Christ. Bus. Acad. Rev.*, 2019.

[6] S. Lee, "Integrating Rhetorical Criticism into Business Communication as an Interdisciplinary Approach," *Bus. Commun. Res. Pract.*, 2019, doi: 10.22682/bcrp.2019.2.1.5.

[7] A. Ustinova and A. Kachina, "The relationship between emotional intelligence and types of humor in business communication," *Organizatsionnaya Psikhologiya*. 2019.

[8] K. E. Rourke, R. F. Halsey, S. Sokuvitz, and P. R. Wilson, "Strategic business communications for graduate accounting students: A fully integrated learning experience," *J. Educ. Bus.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/08832323.2018.1504736.

[9] E. Darics and V. Koller, "Social Actors 'to Go': An Analytical Toolkit to Explore Agency in Business Discourse and Communication," *Bus. Prof. Commun. Q.*, 2019, doi: 10.1177/2329490619828367.

[10] T. Guo and Z. Zhao, "The Discourse Analysis of E-Business Instant Communication from the Perspective of Politeness Principle," *Int. J. English Linguist.*, 2019, doi: 10.5539/ijel.v9n2p174.

CHAPTER 21
ADVERTISING GOALS FOR MEASURED ADVERTISING RESULTS MODEL

Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhimanyu.upadhyay@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. Abhishek Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhishekkumar@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The DAGMAR (Defining Advertising Goals for Measured Advertising Results) Model is a strategic framework that guides advertising campaigns by setting specific and measurable objectives. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of the DAGMAR Model in developing effective advertising strategies and measuring advertising effectiveness. The abstract explores the four stages of the DAGMAR Model - awareness, comprehension, conviction, and action and how they facilitate the progression of consumers through the buying process. It delves into the role of clear and attainable advertising objectives, target audience analysis, and the use of measurable metrics in assessing campaign success. Understanding the essence of the DAGMAR Model enables businesses to design focused advertising campaigns, optimize marketing budgets, and achieve tangible outcomes in a competitive and results-oriented advertising landscape.

KEYWORDS:

Behavioral Objectives, Communication Goals, Conviction, DAGMAR Model, Measured Advertising Results, Response Hierarchy.

INTRODUCTION

Russel H. Colley suggested the DAGMAR advertising model in 1961, using the AIDA idea. Term Defining Advertising Goals for Measured Advertising Results is referred to as DAGMAR.Before making a purchase, a prospect follows these 4 phases, according to DAGMAR:

1. Awareness
2. Comprehension
3. Conviction
4. Action

It's critical to realize that DAGMAR focuses on establishing advertising goals rather than more broad marketing objectives. A solid advertising objective should be a documented, quantifiable task with a beginning point, a specific target demographic, and a time frame[1], [2]. A firm must be aware of both the present situation before to the commencement of advertising and the new situation after the campaign's conclusion in order to assess the efficacy of the campaign. This entails conducting a poll of the intended audience to assess its level of awareness, understanding, and conviction[3], [4]. This makes it easier to set campaign objectives that can be achieved. as to raise product awareness from 10% to 35%, for instance.Here is how the DAGMAR procedure works:

1. Increasing product awareness is the first phase in the advertising process. Since not everyone may be interested in every product, identifying the target demographic is essential to making sure an advertising effort is successful [5], [6].

2. The second level is comprehension, where the goal is for buyers to fully grasp the benefits of the product. Advertising that clarifies the advantages and qualities of the specific product being presented will boost consumer understanding of the product [7], [8].
3. The following step is to develop a customer's belief and favorable attitude about the product after they are aware of and comprehend it. Getting the buyer to acquire a favorable attitude toward the product is the goal of this stage, according to David Mercer's description in the book Marketing. Understanding the advantages is just one aspect of the situation. Why should a buyer purchase this specific product from this specific retailer? 4. Increased income is the main goal of marketing and advertising for small businesses. That implies that the client must purchase anything, or do any other action that leads to a purchase. Making a call, shopping, or requesting further information are a few examples. Realistic action plans for advertising campaigns may be defined with the aid of a marketing knowledge [9], [10].

Step Three of DAGMAR: Assess Advertising Effectiveness

The DAGMAR advertising model's first stage was setting the campaign's objectives. The campaign's efficacy and outcomes are measured in the last phase by determining whether or not the objectives were achieved.

To assess levels of awareness, understanding, and conviction, another survey may be necessary. Consumer choice is also influenced by a variety of subtle elements. The appropriately illuminates the point. Both internal and external variables contribute to persuading customers.

Advertising is a multi-billion-dollar business with one primary objective: encouraging consumers to purchase goods in an ethical manner in order to raise awareness and provide information in a cutthroat marketplace.

Media Choice

To get the needed coverage and exposure levels among a target demographic, the process of selecting the most cost-effective medium for advertising is known as advertising media selection.

Various Media

Media planning for advertising

Scheduling is the term used to describe the scheduling pattern for advertising, which is shown as plots on an annual flowchart. These show how advertising must appear at predetermined times to match with profitable selling hours. Continuity, Flighting, and Pulsing are the traditional scheduling models.

Continuity

Although seasonal items are sometimes included, this approach is largely for non-seasonal goods. Over the course of the campaign, advertising runs steadily with minimal fluctuation. There may be minor breaks at regular intervals as well as longer breaks, such as an advertisement every week for 52 weeks followed by a hiatus.

This kind of advertising is often used for services and packaged products, which need to constantly remind their target audiences to think about them before making a purchase.

DISCUSSION

Marketing Communication and Promotion Tools

Marketing communication is the process of conveying messages to the public with the goal of promoting a company's goods. Market promotion is another name for marketing communication. Personal selling, public relations, publicity, trade shows and exhibitions, advertising, internet promotion, sales promotion, audio and visual, direct marketing, and brands are just a few of the components that make up a successful marketing communication.The goal of the marketing communication strategy is to build a picture of the product in the minds of consumers by attracting their attention, piquing their interest, and generating sales. It is acknowledged that some individual aspects overlap to some extent. Any marketing communication's primary goal is to attract and keep consumers. However, there are many additional crucial goals, including:

1. To Educate
2. To convince
3. To Recall

A company has to be very clear about the goals it has for its marketing communications. The following are some examples of marketing communication:Advertising on television, radio, in movies, in newspapers and magazines, outdoors, with branding and slogans and logos and packaging, and through direct marketing and direct mail. The marketing communication may make use of the following while advertising new television series or films:

1. Outdoor advertising is the ideal method of advertisement for any new product, film, or television series. e.g., using massive or enormous outdoor movie posters.
2. Using television, one may see a trailer for a forthcoming film or television show.
3. Websites are used to showcase or give detailed information on a certain movie, its director, producer, and casting.
4. The use of radio by advertising allows them to increase public awareness and enthusiasm. regarding the movie's release dates.
5. Newspapers are used to advertise the movie's showing date, time, and location.

Communications in Marketing

Marketing communication is essentially a marketing promotion process, and the UK chartered institute of marketing describes the promotional mix as "the set of tools that a business can use to effectively communicate the benefits of its products or services to its customers." By coordinating all seller-initiated efforts to establish channels of information and persuasion in order to assist the sales of a product or service, or the expectation of a concept, Brink and Kelly define marketing communication. Alderson and Paul Green define marketing communication as "Promotion is any marketing effort whose function is to inform or persuade actual or potential consumer about the merits of the product or the service at the same price." William Stanton defines marketing communication as "promotion is the elements of an organization marketing mix that are used to inform and persuade the market regarding the organization products and services."

Marketing communication is crucial to the promotion of products and services. The main goals of marketing communication are to influence consumer behavior in favor of the product or service. In general, integrated marketing communication's primary goals are:

1. **Customers' Education**: Integrated marketing communication may be used to educate the public. For instance, some advertising is done to inform the audience on how to utilize the product, how to handle it, etc.
2. **Competitors:** The marketer may refute the assertions made by the main rivals. For instance, aggressive advertising is used to directly or indirectly refute statements made by rivals.
3. **Reminder**: A reminder goal may be required if target consumers already see a company's product or service favorably. Because delighted clients may become the subject of competition appeals, the reminder purpose is essential.
4. **Attitudes**: Marketing communication is necessary to create or strengthen attitudes in the target audience's thoughts. The marketer anticipates that the target market will adopt a favorable perception of his brand. Positive brand perception contributes to a rise in sales. The marketer may address any unfavorable opinions consumers may have about the goods via promotional strategies like trade shows and personal selling.
5. **Persuasion:** When businesses provide comparable goods, they must not only let their clients know that they are available, but also convince them to purchase them. The marketer attempts to provide justifications for why his product is better than others on the market by using persuasive messaging.
6. **Marketers:**Marketers must provide the target audience with information about the product. Making people aware of the product is strongly tied to providing information. Product information is crucially needed, particularly when a product is presented on the market or when product notification is performed. Potential buyers must be aware of a product's characteristics, uses, etc. Customers' buying decisions may be aided by accurate product information.

Marketing communication's importance and significance

A product's marketing message may persuade consumers to purchase it. The primary goal of marketing communication is to boost product sales. Consumers may get information about the product's performance, features, and quality via marketing communications. Following is a concise summary of the marketing communication's main significance:

1. **Informative Promotion**: An educational promotional component aims to increase product awareness among consumers. The promotional material is detailed and provides information about the product's performance, attributes, and features. For new items introduced with informative advertising campaigns, informative promotion is particularly helpful in bringing their existence to consumers' attention and assisting them in making purchases. Local newspapers, periodicals, and other local publications are a few examples.
2. **Promotion that is intended to persuade**: Our product is superior than others. The goal of persuasive marketing is to persuade and entice customers to purchase a product. The most effective strategy for persuasive marketing is advertising. Reassuring advertising is another name for reminding promotion. Reminding promotions' primary goal is to remind current consumers about the product.
3. **Competition**: Effective marketing communication is crucial in this situation. The product should be better promoted than rivals in the cutthroat marketing landscape of today. Additionally, proper advertising was needed.
4. **Support for Existing Products**: Supporting an existing product is crucial in marketing communications. The business may assist the product to boost sales with the aid of advertising and creative promotional techniques.

5. **Improve Reputation or Image**: Every aspect of marketing communication, including advertising, public relations, publicity, personal selling, direct marketing, and online promotion, has the potential to enhance or create the company's reputation. Many businesses have gained popularity in the market thanks to excellent marketing promotion. Some businesses develop their brand images for the global market. The list of national and international businesses that are included in it includes Hindustan Liver, Colgate, Sony, Philips, Hero Honda, Godrej, Toyota, Roles royles, and others.
6. **Demand Stimulation**: A business may increase demand by using the proper marketing communication strategies, such as advertising, sales promotion, personal selling, trade and fair displays. The basic goal of marketing communication is to stimulate demand.
7. Reaching the intended audience is of utmost importance in marketing communications. Products with varied attributes must appeal to various target markets. A population of one to twelve years old wears children's clothing, for instance.

An essential component of the marketing mix is marketing communication. In order to affect attitudes and purchasing behavior, information must be shared between the vendor and a prospective customer or other channel participants.

As a component of a company's marketing mix, marketing communication serves to educate, convince, and remind the public about the company and its goods. The promotion mix is made up of several marketing communication elements or approaches. Marketing communication mix is another name for the promotion mix. It is possible to describe marketing communication as the fusion of several marketing communication or promotion factors, such as:

1. Advertising
2. Promotion of Sales
3. Public affairs
4. Publicity
5. Selling on the side
6. Direct Selling
7. A trade show

Promotion of Sales

Richard C. Scott A., too. has defined the word "sales promotion" as "a varied collection of incentive tools, typically short-term, intended to encourage greater and/or quicker purchase of specific goods and services by consumers or trade." Sales promotion, according to Philip Kotler, is defined as "those marketing activities other than personnel selling, advertising, and publicity that stimulate consumer purchasing and dealer effectiveness, such as displays, demonstrations, expositions, and various other non-current selling efforts, not in ordinary routine."

It belongs to the marketing communication section. Promoting sales may assist with the launch of new products. Through sales promotion, a company's product may attract consumers, satisfy customers, boost sales during slow times, raise advertising, and compete with rival products.

Strategies for Sales Promotion:

Three categories of sales marketing techniques exist:

1. Push technique:

It entails persuading members of the trade intermediary channel to use promotions and personal selling techniques to "push" the product through the distribution channels to the final customer. The manufacturer advertises the product via a reseller, who then advertises it to a third reseller or to the end customer. Trade-promotion goals include convincing wholesalers or retailers to carry a brand, providing shelf space for a brand, promoting a brand in advertising, and/or promoting a brand to consumers. Allowances, buy-back guarantees, free trials, competitions, specialty advertising products, discounts, displays, and premiums are common push strategy methods.

2. Pull technique:

It is an effort to persuade customers to use the marketing channel to "pull" the product from the producer. The corporation targets customers with its marketing communications initiatives in the hopes of generating interest in and demand for the product among end users. This tactic is often used when distributors are hesitant to stock a product since it encourages as many customers as possible to visit retail locations and ask for the item, which moves it through the channel. Samples, coupons, cash refunds and rebates, premiums, advertising specialties, loyalty programs/patronage incentives, competitions, sweepstakes, games, and point-of-purchase displays are common pull strategy approaches.

3. Combination Technique:

It combines the two aforementioned policies. Car dealers often provide an excellent illustration of a combo approach. Dealer incentives and cash-back offers are constant topics of discussion while promoting cars.

Selling on the side

Direct selling is referred to as personal selling. Face-to-face contact is a part of it. This may be done by "Knocking on Doors," by scheduling meetings, over the phone, setting up conferences, or by doing workshops. A more expensive kind of marketing communication is personal selling. Personal selling involves using expensive instruments, is a technical challenge, and has a hefty price tag. It makes the human selling component of product marketing highly expensive and difficult. One of the finest methods for spreading the goods in personal selling is salesmanship. Advertising does not have the same persuasive power as personal selling when it comes to winning over clients. However, many businesses may use both the personal selling and advertising strategies to market their goods and draw in as many clients as they can. According to the American Marketing Association, personal selling is the activity of encouraging and supporting potential customers to purchase a product or service or to support a proposition that has economic value for the seller. Salesmanship, according to Haughton, is "personal service provided to the community in connection with the marketing of goods." According to the National Salesman's Training Society of the United States, "Salesmanship is the ability to persuade people to purchase goods or services at a profit to the seller and with a benefit to the buyer.The following stages make up the personal selling procedure:

1) Prospecting

Prospecting is the process of locating and compiling a list of possible customers. In addition to trades, commercially available databases and mail lists, corporate sales records and internal databases, website registrations, public records, referrals, directories, and a broad range of other sources, salespeople may also look for prospects' names in these places. Prospecting efforts should be organized to only target prospective customers who meet the profile and are qualified to purchase the product or service. Today, websites with specifically built pages optimized for keywords make this activity much easier so that prospects may discover you when they search the web for certain key phrases relating to your business.

2) Pre-approach

Sales professionals first evaluate all the information they have access to about a prospect in order to learn as much as they can about the prospect before beginning the real personal selling process. Sales professionals try to comprehend the prospect's current needs, current brand usage, and feelings toward all brands that are available during the Pre-approach phase of the personal selling process. They also try to identify key decision makers, review account histories, evaluate product needs, plan/create a sales presentation to address the identified and likely concerns of the prospect, and set call objectives. During this phase, the salesperson also creates a rough general plan for the sales process, bearing in mind that the approach could need to be adjusted as he or she learns more about the prospect.

3) Approach

The approach is the actual interaction a salesperson has with a potential customer. At this stage of the sales process, the salesperson introduces themselves, introduces the prospect, builds rapport to lay the groundwork for the connection, and asks open-ended questions to find out more about the prospect and his or her requirements.

4) Delivering the Speech

The salesperson tells the product's “Story" during the presentation phase of the sales process in a manner that relates specifically to the prospect's defined requirements and desires. The crucial element of this phase is a presentation that has been extensively tailored. Prospects are often given the opportunity to handle and/or examine the product at this stage of the transaction, and the salesperson may even provide a demonstration of it. At this point, slide shows, audiovisual presentations, or both may be used, and this is often when a prospect is given a sales brochure or booklet.

5) Overcoming Refusals

Professional salespeople look for objections from potential customers to attempt to address and remove them. When prospects raise concerns, it often means that they want and need more information in order to make an educated choice. Sales professionals are unable to successfully address objections if they are not discovered and recognized. Since there will always be objections, identifying them, addressing them, and overcoming them are essential components of professional seller training. This is a talent that needs to be constantly improved. Believe me when I say that as soon as a salesperson discovers a technique to effectively manage "all" of his or her prospects' concerns, some prospects will come up with a new, unexpected objection, if only to test the salesperson's mettle.

6. Finalizing the Sale

The delivery of goods or services to a customer's satisfaction and receipt of money constitute "closing" a deal, however this is technically not the case. Closing doesn't necessarily need the salesperson asking for the purchase outright; it may also involve other questions, such as how many, what color, when they'd like to get the product, etc. When it comes to closing, too many sales professionals are either ineffective or too pushy. Ask for the order when you are concluding the deal. If the potential customer responds "no," it can be a good chance to find fresh objections and carry on the sale.

7) Follow-up

A sometimes forgotten yet crucial step in the selling process is follow-up. It is best for everyone involved if the salesperson follows up with the prospect after receiving an order to ensure that the product was delivered on time, in the right condition, was installed correctly, that the proper training was given, and that the customer was satisfied with the entire process. Building long-term connections with clients and ensuring customer satisfaction both depend on this crucial phase.

The need and value of personal selling

1. Personal Interaction: Personal interaction refers to two-way contact and involves personal selling. By using any other salesmanship technique, human contact cannot be provided.
2. Information in brief: It offers a thorough presentation of the product. Salesmanship enables a detailed product presentation to the consumer, which is not achievable with advertising.
3. Gaining More Sales: The primary goal of personal selling is to increase product sales via successful sales techniques.
4. Personal selling focuses on the individual issues, concerns, and objections of the customers. Salesmanship, rather than methods like publicity and promotion, is thus used to provide personal attention. Because mass communication tactics like advertising and publicity are used.
5. Quick or immediate input from the clients is provided via personal selling. Customers may provide comments on a product, whether they like it or not, to salespeople.
6. It might be difficult for a salesperson to persuade a customer. Every effective salesperson has increased power to persuade customers to purchase a product.
7. Enhance Image: The salesperson can provide specific, accurate information about the organization. Additionally, clear up any client misunderstandings, questions, reservations, or concerns. As a consequence, the product's and its company's reputation will be enhanced.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, The DAGMAR Model offers a method for planning and measuring advertising that is organized and results-driven. Businesses may create targeted advertising campaigns that increase brand exposure, engagement, and conversions by establishing clear goals, selecting the appropriate demographic, and using quantifiable metrics. Adopting the DAGMAR Model's guiding principles enables businesses to make smart advertising choices, maximize resources, and provide measurable results in a cutthroat and changing advertising field. For advertising messages to connect with customers' wants and preferences, effective target audience analysis is essential. Businesses can create persuasive communications that encourage engagement and conversions by having a thorough understanding of customer behavior and preferences. It is essential to compare advertising outcomes to established goals in order to assess campaign performance and maximize marketing spending. Businesses may make wise judgments and improve their advertising strategy thanks to data-driven insights.

REFERENCES:

[1] Y. J. Lee, E. Haley, and K. Yang, "The Role of Organizational Perception, Perceived

Consumer Effectiveness and Self-efficacy in Recycling Advocacy Advertising Effectiveness," *Environ. Commun.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/17524032.2017.1308407.

[2] A. J. Mills, C. Pitt, and S. L. Ferguson, "The relationship between fake news and advertising: Brand management in the era of programmatic advertising and prolific falsehood," *J. Advert. Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.2501/JAR-2019-007.

[3] A. Bilal and W. Ahmad, "Impact of Team Goal Orientation and Information Exchange on Creativity and Innovation in Advertising Creative Teams of Pakistan," *Bus. Econ. Rev.*, 2019, doi: 10.22547/ber/11.1.7.

[4] G. Pedros-Perez, P. Martínez-Jiménez, and P. Aparicio-Martinez, "The potential of car advertising in pursuing transport policy goals: Code of good practices in the Spanish context," *Transp. Res. Part D Transp. Environ.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.trd.2019.05.010.

[5] R. Van Leeckwyck, "The printed (French-speaking) alternative media in Belgium: Journalism or activism?," *J. Altern. Community Media*, 2019, doi: 10.1386/joacm_00048_1.

[6] S. Youn and W. Shin, "Teens' responses to Facebook newsfeed advertising: The effects of cognitive appraisal and social influence on privacy concerns and coping strategies," *Telemat. Informatics*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.tele.2019.02.001.

[7] T. Z. Ramsøy, "Building a foundation for neuromarketing and consumer neuroscience research: How researchers can apply academic rigor to the neuroscientific study of advertising effects," *J. Advert. Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.2501/JAR-2019-034.

[8] N. Gesualdo and I. Yanovitzky, "Advertising Susceptibility and Youth Preference for and Consumption of Sugar-Sweetened Beverages: Findings from a National Survey," *J. Nutr. Educ. Behav.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jneb.2018.10.007.

[9] R. Šomplák, J. Kůdela, V. Smejkalová, V. Nevrlý, M. Pavlas, and D. Hrabec, "Pricing and advertising strategies in conceptual waste management planning," *J. Clean. Prod.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2019.118068.

[10] S. Popovic, "Beliefs about the influence on attitudes of Turkish university students toward advertising through sport," *Sport Mont*, 2019, doi: 10.26773/smj.190602.

CHAPTER 22
ESSENTIAL COMPONENTS OF PUBLIC RELATION AND PUBLICITY

Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhimanyu.upadhyay@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. Abhishek Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhishekkumar@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Public relations (PR) and publicity are essential components of a company's communication strategy, aimed at building positive brand image, fostering strong relationships with stakeholders, and managing public perceptions. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of public relations and publicity in shaping public opinion and enhancing organizational reputation. The abstract explores the role of PR in managing media relations, crisis communication, and brand positioning. It delves into the power of publicity in gaining media coverage and generating buzz around a brand or product. Understanding the synergy between public relations and publicity empowers businesses to effectively communicate their messages, navigate public sentiment, and maintain a favorable image in a dynamic and interconnected world.

KEYWORDS:

Brand Exposure, Media Coverage, Promotional Events, Public Relations Efforts, Publicity Stunts, Viral Marketing.

INTRODUCTION

The primary goal of public relations is to uphold and maintain an organization's desired reputation. Publicity is a component of public relations. Public relations refer to the act of marketing a company and its products via favorable media / press coverage without explicitly paying for it to develop an effective company image[1], [2]. The goal of public relations is to boost sales by building or enhancing a company's and its product's brand. The stakeholders in an organization's connection with public relations include people like the shareholders, workers, rivals, suppliers, general public, media, government, and clients. However, the approach for public relations is continual and long-term. Since there is a lot of overlap, it is indeed difficult to distinguish between marketing communications and public relations. It is thus challenging to understand. Additionally, contrary to what some definitions would have you assume, public relations are often costly. Public relations firms are not inexpensive[3], [4].

Presentation, Speaking, and Writing Speeches

Corporate writings, this includes pricing lists, financial reports, internal periodicals, brochures, catalogs, and any other material produced by the company. All of this falls under public relations.According to Willem Stanton, "Public relation activities typically are designed to build or maintain a favorable image for an organization and a favorable relationship with the organization's various 'public'." These audiences might include consumers, shareholders, employees, unions, environmentalists, the government, members of the local community, or other societal groups[5], [6].A public is any group that has an actual or prospective interest in or effect on a company's capacity to accomplish its goals, according to Philip Kilter. A company's image or a specific product may be promoted and/or protected via public relations initiatives.

Public Relations Has to Offer

Public relations work is ongoing. If the company's product has already established its brand identity and reputation in the market, it may preserve the current image. Public relations for businesses may enhance or strengthen their brand. The media plays a significant role in promoting a product's brand and its company. Misunderstandings and/or negative impressions may be eliminated with well-maintained public relations. Public relations efforts may influence people's attitudes about a firm and its offerings for the better. Public relations include a variety of official and informal groups, including as workers, clients, suppliers, and intermediaries, as well as the media, the government, service providers, and shareholders[7], [8]. Good relationships with these groups maximize collaboration and contribute to the company' success and also help through difficult times. Public relations are beneficial to society. It has a societal purpose. Compared to other forms of commercial communication, it is of more societal relevance. Public relations boost a company's reputation. Many businesses may participate in relief efforts following an earthquake, flood, or drought to promote their brand and social responsibility through the Media [9], [10].

DISCUSSION

Methods of Public Relation

Different strategies are used by businesses to get publicity. Here are some public relations strategies.

During press conferences

The specific firm could wish to introduce a new product, thus in order to support their publishing, they invite journalists to the presentation of the company, where they are provided details about the product. Occasionally, a corporation may give out free goods and services to conference attendees.

News Journal

Positive newspaper stories help to build the company's and its product's reputation. People are more interested in reading news articles since they are relevant and attention-grabbing. In order to get more favorable publicity for the business, public relations officers must build positive relationships with journalists and newspaper editors.

Events

Exhibitions, seminars, workshops, conferences, sponsorships for sporting events, competitions, medical camps, and cultural events are just a few examples of possible events. As an example, the world cup has been sponsored by Pepsi, Sony, DLF, Sahara, and Kingfisher. These events are becoming quite well known among the general population.

Publications

Public relations practitioners often utilize the publications. These publications are primarily intended for shareholders, customers, workers, traders, and the general public to help them form an accurate mental picture of the items. The firm may give information about its goods, associated policies, and services via its publications, which include articles, annual reports, brochures, periodicals, audio-visual materials, pamphlets, and posters, among other things.

Direct Selling

Direct marketing does not use any middlemen, such as retailers, wholesalers, or distributors. The marketing operations in direct marketing are carried out directly between the manufacturer and the consumers. In addition to telemarketing, cable television infomercials, home shopping networks, and TV and radio advertisements with free phone numbers or minute charges, direct mail distribution to customers, door drops, and customer care lines, and direct-response broadcast advertising are all examples of direct marketing techniques. Direct marketing is also ideal for mobile and online marketing.

Direct marketing advantages include:

Direct marketing has several advantages for both customers and vendors.

1. Benefits to the Clients

Customers like direct marketing since it saves them time because they don't have to navigate traffic, look for parking, or visit shops. They often don't even need to leave their homes when they can simply purchase from a catalog over the phone or when browsing online since the products are delivered right to their doors. Direct marketing may also provide a bigger variety of items while making comparison shopping simpler thanks to increased access to alternatives or competing products.

Direct marketing can also be discreet and simple while requiring no face-to-face contact with a salesperson. Direct marketing is quick, and goods may be bought right away in the precise configuration that you want. In conclusion, direct marketing may be enjoyable, time-saving, provide a wider range, enable comparison shopping, and enable the customer to directly buy customized goods.

2. Benefits to the Seller

As it allows for direct client connection, it is an excellent tool for developing customer relationships. Additionally, direct marketers have access to a wealth of data about their clientele that not only helps them to provide new goods and services that add value, but also allows them to target potential clients more accurately. Direct marketing may increase productivity and efficiency while lowering expenses as well. In summary, direct marketing enables businesses to cater to specific consumer needs, establish long-term relationships with clients directly, protect client privacy, and continuously tweak campaigns to increase response rates.

Sales promotions are temporary incentives designed to boost the sale or purchase of an item or service. Numerous communication strategies are used in sales promotion to try to provide incentives or extra value to consumers, wholesalers, retailers, or other clients of the firm in an effort to boost sales right away. In a nutshell, PR is the management of a business's public image, which aids in the general public's understanding of the business and its goods. When seen as a strategic management function that supports the organizational business objectives, public relations are at their most successful. Personal selling enables the marketer or seller to interact directly with the prospect or client and hear out any concerns, respond to particular inquiries, provide extra details, educate, convince, and maybe even suggest other goods or services.

Direct marketing does not use any middlemen, such as retailers, wholesalers, or distributors. The marketing operations in direct marketing are carried out directly between the manufacturer and the consumers. In addition to telemarketing, cable television infomercials,

home shopping networks, and TV and radio advertisements with free phone numbers or minute charges, direct mail distribution to customers, door drops, and customer care lines, and direct-response broadcast advertising are all examples of direct marketing techniques. Direct marketing is also ideal for mobile and online marketing.

Recent Marketing Trends

Technical know-how is becoming a must for anybody doing market research or market intelligence due to the proliferation of Big Data, social media, and Internet usage. Using a variety of interaction tools, such as deeper analytics, co-collaboration and market research online communities, or mobile or social technologies, companies want to better understand their customers and develop new ways of partnering with them. Direct analysis of transactions, click-paths, social networks, applications, traffic analysis, and novel techniques for soliciting customer assistance or feedback are all examples of this. Getting messages in front of prospective customers in attractive ways that have the potential to influence purchase choices is the foundation of effective marketing. Today's information technology tools must be used in order to do this.

Technology Use in Marketing

The following are some examples of technology tools that may be used to marketing:

1. Internet

When it comes to product promotion, websites have become a must for businesses. The platform offers lots of space for sharing information about products, user reviews, photographs, and videos that appeal to prospective buyers. Media reports and internet services are often used to disseminate announcements, while blog entries and word of mouth may increase website traffic. Businesses may sell their goods directly to clients all around the globe in addition to announcing them. That audience is far larger than what a small-town newspaper advertisement can reach.

2. Email Promotion

One of the most inexpensive and possibly interesting methods of product promotion is email marketing. Businesses with big client bases that are already interested in the things they provide have built up opt-in email lists. Email marketing is a great method to communicate information about items, promote coupons or discounts, and make announcements about new services. Digital newsletters, which combine captivating content and product promotion, have replaced many email marketing efforts. To get their job done, marketing professionals often communicate through one-on-one emails. With clients, potential clients, employees, members of the media, and others, email contact is fairly prevalent.

3. Mobile

Mobile marketing is the practice of communicating with consumers using text messages and programs on their smartphones and other mobile devices. Businesses might use text messaging to provide exclusive offers or discounts to customers on a mailing list. Many companies rely on pre-existing programs that provide space for adverts or promotions targeted to local consumers, even if others create their own branded applications for smartphones. As an example, a company may have a profile on a social media smartphone app and offer consumers a 20% discount if they test out a new product in-store.

4. Digital

In-store technology is becoming more visible. The usage of digital signage is a trend that enables companies to draw consumers' attention and promote certain items to them. This is especially useful for restaurants and other organizations that often need to react to inventory changes or offer new goods. Modern point of sale systems may educate staff members in real time about the items that are available or assist them in keeping track of consumer preferences. Offering top-notch customer service is essential for achieving success in sales and marketing.

5. social media

When it comes to product promotion, social media represents both a significant potential and a formidable problem for companies. It may be a fast and simple method to tell a wide number of people about new items, but firms must be cautious to appeal to them rather than speak down to them. Businesses should see social media as technology that supports the time-tested word-of-mouth marketing strategy. Create an engaging social media experience, engage with consumers, and motivate them to spread the word about your offerings.

6. Blogging

For their businesses, establishing up and maintaining blogs involves a lot of marketing expertise.

7. Systems for managing customer relationships

In-depth CRM software programs are often used by businesses to monitor all client interactions, including sales calls, presentations, purchases, grievances, and more. Marketers must have access to the system's data and be able to add new information as it becomes available.

8. Websites

For anyone who wish to work in marketing, having web design, development, and maintenance abilities may surely be advantageous. The amount of web expertise required varies from firm to organization. Marketing professionals may be required to manage all website-related tasks in certain firms, including design, programming, content production, security, and more. In some firms, marketing staff members collaborate closely on the technical parts of site maintenance with internal programmers or a third-party web development company.

9. Graphic design applications

Marketers are required to be proficient users of graphic design software programs like InDesign, Photoshop, and others when creating advertising and promotional materials for their company, such as brochures and newsletters.

10. Marketing using search engines

In order to attempt to acquire high organic search results for the content of your website, search engine marketing comprises both paid search advertisements, like Google AdWords, and search engine optimization. You need to be there when these individuals are looking for what you're offering since the majority of people, especially B2B purchasers of expensive things, utilize search as part of their job. If you integrate your Google AdWords data with your Google Analytics data and CRM, you can test and optimize search ads on keywords, ad copy, offers, the website forms you direct them to, and more. This will allow you to know not only which ads are most frequently clicked, but also which ads generate the most opportunities and revenue. You may use these insights for all of your offline and internet marketing. Technical site improvements are just one aspect of SEO; the most crucial aspect is consistently producing high-quality content, which Google genuinely appreciates and ranks highly.

11. Conversion rate improvement

Conversion optimization is the technique of encouraging visitors to your website to do the desired action as often as possible, which often entails completing a form so that you at the very least have their email address. Normally, just around 3% of visitors from online ads complete out a website form; however, conversion optimization may increase that number to approximately 6%. Some businesses have produced conversion rates that are many times greater than that by using exceptional offers or marketing tools. As many visitors to your website as you can must convert if you are going to the trouble and cost of attracting them.

12. Automation in marketing

Everything is combined via marketing automation. It is an excellent piece of technology that includes analytics, online forms, tracking website visitor behavior, personalizing website content, managing email campaigns, facilitating the alignment of sales and marketing through lead scoring and automated alerts to sales people, informing these activities with data from your CRM and third-party sources, and more. More explanation isn't possible in this space, so just get it.

Corporate Social Responsibility

Societal marketing is another name for social responsibility in marketing. This notion was established in the 1970s on the basis that businesses may market their concepts, ways of behaving, and attitudes in addition to their goods and services. Companies may exhibit socially responsible marketing in a variety of ways, such as by hosting charitable events, implementing safer environmental procedures, and offering assistance in times of need. For a variety of reasons, small businesses are compelled to exercise more social responsibility in their marketing. Being socially responsible implies that a company cares about the community and environment in which it operates. This implies that all members of the organization are aware of these ideals and uphold them. Socially conscious marketing is critical of excessive consumption and corporate environmental harm. It is predicated on the notion that market offers should uphold social and ethical ideals for the benefit of consumers as well as be profit-driven. Some people see corporate social responsibility as extending to the notion of socially responsible marketing. In order to enable businesses, self-regulate and acknowledge that their operations have an influence on a variety of stakeholders, including the general public, CSR is advocated as a business model. Questionable marketing strategies that have a negative impact on society gave rise to socially conscious marketing. The following are the main economic objections of the traditional private marketing system:

1) Generally speaking, mainstream marketing techniques result in high costs. The cost of getting goods to customers is high because of the length of the chain of marketing middlemen. People end up paying more for the products and services they obtain as a consequence.

2) Aggressive advertising and promotion are crucial to modern marketing. Companies raise prices via hefty markups in order to cover the expenses.

3) One of the most often used marketing strategies is product differentiation. However, this not only instills a false psychological worth in more expensive products but also raises

questions about packaging's impact on the environment. Therefore, even if they seem to be legally lawful, misleading marketing methods in price, promotion, and packaging are rejected by socially responsible marketing.

Socially responsible marketing's importance

1. Financial advantages

The government has developed a variety of tax breaks and other perks for businesses across a wide range of sectors as incentives to act in a more socially responsible manner. For instance, corporations that cut their pollution and carbon emissions are often given tax breaks and other benefits in exchange for their support of the nation's environmental awareness and responsibility movement.

2. Observing Laws and Regulations

Similar to this, social responsibility in marketing helps to guarantee that a business is really abiding by the law, which not only inspires confidence in the customer base but also helps to keep the business out of difficulty in terms of legal issues as well as public relations issues.

3. Rise in Patron Loyalty

Customers also value social responsibility, which helps businesses grow their clientele and keep it. For instance, if a business is able to certify its product as "green," they gain a certain amount of competitive advantage over rivals and many customers will be more willing to purchase their product than one that has not received the "green" certification because they believe it has a higher value than competing products. Additionally, these kinds of actions may inspire buyers with a feeling of trust and goodwill, making them feel better about not just their initial purchase of the goods but also future purchases. As a commercial approach, socially conscious marketing makes sense since it not only widens and grows the consumer base but also raises the possibility of gaining the customer's loyalty and persuading them to purchase the company's product again in the future.

4. Exchange of Values

Some small businesses convey their underlying principles via socially conscious marketing. They convey these fundamental principles through radio or television advertisements, for instance, seeking to get the attention of customers who share their beliefs. The primary goal of societal marketing for a business is to establish a connection with certain customers based on shared values or beliefs. This might create a strong relationship with customers who share your views. As a result, the widespread opinion may persuade customers to test the company's goods and services.

5. Increasing brand recognition

Socially responsible marketing is a tool that small company owners may use to increase brand recognition. Customers are more likely to identify a business that supports a certain political cause or causes. For instance, a modest building business may begin using recycled insulation in freshly built houses. Making ensuring the project is reputable and relevant is essential for successful social marketing. Small businesses may feel pressured to employ this kind of marketing to set themselves apart from rivals.

6. Product Promotion

Companies may successfully sell their goods in a distinctive manner thanks to socially conscious marketing. Certain crises may provide the ideal opportunity for product promotion.

For instance, a small manufacturer of consumer goods may provide free merchandise in the wake of an earthquake or tornado. Similar to this, a tiny maker of industrial cleaners may provide its goods to locals in a small town once floodwaters subside. Businesses that employ social marketing for advertising often gain from the press that their efforts get in newspapers and on television.

7. More Profits

Owners of businesses are aware that ethical marketing may increase sales. These gains may not materialize straight soon. Instead, due to social marketing, small businesses may anticipate certain customers becoming more devoted to their brands. These clients then buy additional goods or services from the business. In the end, businesses must generate money for their shareholders and workers. If handled properly, socially conscious marketing may indirectly result in higher profitability. The trick is to show that you really care about the wellbeing of your customers.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Publicity and public relations go hand in hand in effective communication methods. Companies are empowered to maintain a favorable reputation and cultivate solid stakeholder relationships when they have the capacity to handle media relations, crisis communication, and brand positioning. Utilizing the influence of publicity to generate news coverage and discussion about a brand opens up important doors for brand exposure and expansion. Businesses that want to succeed in a cutthroat and interconnected commercial environment must comprehend and maximize the power of public relations and publicity. Adopting these procedures enables businesses to tell their stories successfully, develop brand equity, and keep up a positive public image in a constantly changing environment. Publicity and public relations work well together to magnify a company's messages and spread them to a wider audience. Businesses may increase brand visibility and reputation by carefully combining both methods.

REFERENCES:

[1] S. Afidhan, "Promotional Effectiveness of Indonesia's Ministry of Finance Library," *J. Ilmu Informasi, Perpustakaan, dan Kearsipan*, 2019, doi: 10.7454/jipk.v21i1.139.

[2] B. K. M. Wong, "Tourism Marketing for Small Businesses," *Tour. Manag.*, 2019.

[3] Faustyna, L. K. Erdiana, H. Hafiar, and I. Bakti, "Evening culinary tourism: The publicity of Merdeka Walk medan," *Int. J. Civ. Eng. Technol.*, 2019.

[4] Hadita and D. Adiguna, "The effect of location and the promotion mix on visitors' interest: The case of Muara Beting beach and the forest of Mangrove Muara Gembong Bekasi," *African J. Hosp. Tour. Leis.*, 2019.

[5] I. A. Tsindeliani *et al.*, "Financial law as a public law branch: A fresh look at the signs of publicity," *J. Leg. Ethical Regul. Issues*, 2019.

[6] Nopita Sari, Mila Wahyuni, and Eka M. Taufani, "Strategi Hubungan Masyarakat Lembaga Penyiaran Publik Televisi Republik Indonesia Jambi dalam Mempromosikan Program Acara," *MAUIZOH J. Ilmu Dakwah dan Komun.*, 2019, doi: 10.30631/mauizoh.v4i2.38.

[7] Y. Garkavenko, "Media reception of PR activities in the discourse of British and Ukrainian quality newspapers: comparative analysis," *Commun. Commun. Technol.*, 2019, doi: 10.15421/291904.

[8] Y. Liakh, "Organization and Legal Support of Communication Relations in the Field of Public Administration in Ukraine," *Univ. Sci. Notes*, 2019, doi: 10.37491/unz.72.8.

[9] А. Чесноков and A. Chesnokov, "Publicity of the property register as a guarantee of security of a bona fide purchaser," *Leg. Sci. Pract. J. Nizhny Novgorod Acad. Minist. Intern. Aff. Russ.*, 2019, doi: 10.36511/2078-5356-2019-3-171-176.

[10] P. C. Rubio and J. L. Mico, "Communications Strategies In The New Economy: The Case Studies Of Wallapop, Westing And Fotocasa," *VIVAT Acad.*, 2019.

CHAPTER 23
NEW CONSUMER AND COMPANY CAPABILITIES: A REVIEW STUDY

Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhimanyu.upadhyay@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. Abhishek Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhishekkumar@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The emergence of new consumer and company capabilities has reshaped the business landscape, creating opportunities and challenges for both businesses and consumers. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of these new capabilities and their impact on the market dynamics. The abstract explores how advancements in technology, data analytics, and consumer behavior have transformed consumer expectations and empowered companies to deliver personalized experiences. It delves into the importance of understanding and adapting to these capabilities to remain competitive and relevant in a rapidly evolving market. Embracing these new consumer and company capabilities enables businesses to foster innovation, enhance customer engagement, and achieve sustainable growth in a dynamic and interconnected business environment.

KEYWORDS:

Customer Empowerment, Digital Literacy, Online Shopping, Personalization, Self-Service Options, social media.

INTRODUCTION

New Consumer Capabilities

Consumers and organizations now have access to a whole new set of capabilities thanks to the digital revolution. The next consumer capabilities that businesses will need to support are as follows:

1. A significant gain in purchasing power since consumers can easily compare pricing and product features with competitors now with just one click. In only a few seconds, they can get the answers they need online. They are spared the hassle of driving to shops, parking, standing in line, and interacting with salesmen [1], [2]. Customers may even specify the amount they are ready to pay for a hotel room, an airline ticket, or a mortgage to see if any providers are willing to accept it. Buyers of businesses may conduct a reverse auction in which vendors compete for the buyers' business. Customers may pool their purchases with those of other customers to get greater volume discounts [3], [4].
2. A wider range of products and services are now readily accessible. Nowadays, practically everything can be ordered online. With over 3 million volumes, Amazon.com claims to be the biggest book retailer in the world; no actual storefront can compete. Additionally, purchasers may order these products from anywhere in the globe, which enables residents of nations with a very restricted local market to make significant discounts. Additionally, purchasing from nations with cheaper pricing allows consumers in expensive countries to save expenditures.
3. A wealth of information is available to readers worldwide, and they may read almost any newspaper in any language. In addition to innumerable additional information

sources, they have access to online dictionaries, encyclopedias, medical information, movie reviews, and consumer reports [5], [6].

4. Easier interaction and order placement and delivery: Modern customers may place orders from their homes, offices, or mobile phones. Orders may be placed anytime, day or night, and will be immediately delivered to their house or place of business [7], [8].
5. The capacity to compare notes on goods and services: Today's consumers may join a chat room focused on a topic of interest and share knowledge and viewpoints.
6. Markets, Market Spaces, and Meta Markets: Today, we can tell a market space apart from a market. The market is actual, as when you shop in a real store; the market area is virtual, like when you buy online.

Company's New Capabilities

A corporation must possess a business aptitude in order to carry out its business plan. Another approach to consider capabilities is as a grouping of people, systems, and technology assembled for a certain objective. Performance targets for capabilities based on value are set by capability management using the organization's customer value proposition. It focused on efficiency in areas with strong financial leverage and decreased inefficiencies in capabilities that have little direct influence on customers, while retaining or enhancing capabilities for expansion. Companies may take the following actions to address the issues brought on by rising consumer capabilities[9], [10].

1. Marketers may make effective use of the Internet as a medium for information and commerce. With the use of the Internet, marketers may contact clients globally and increase their geographic reach. A website may include a list of goods and services, background information, company philosophies, employment possibilities, and other relevant data.
2. Marketers may get more comprehensive and detailed data on markets, clients, prospects, and rivals. The Internet may be used by marketers to set up focus groups, distribute surveys, and obtain primary data in a variety of different methods. They may compile data on the purchases, preferences, demographics, and profitability of certain clients.
3. Marketers may use social media to spread the word about their brands. Through blogs and other posts, marketers may provide information and updates to customers. They can also promote online communities and establish their own stations on the Internet superhighway.
4. Marketers may speed up and facilitate client communication outside of the company. Through brand advocates and user communities, marketers may also generate or capitalize on "buzz" in both online and physical spaces.
5. Customers who have asked for them or given the business permission to send them might get advertisements, coupons, samples, and information from marketers. The emergence of specialized periodicals, TV channels, and Internet forums has made micro-target marketing and two-way communication simpler. Businesses may transmit and receive information, place orders, and make payments more quickly thanks to extranets connecting suppliers and distributors. To customize messaging, services, and the connection with each consumer, the business may also communicate with them one-on-one.
6. Mobile marketing enables marketers to connect with customers who are on the go. Marketers may give customers messages in the mall with discounts valid just that day,

a reminder of an item on their wish list, and a useful bonus by using GPS technology to determine the precise position of the consumer.

7. Businesses may produce and market products that are uniquely unique. Customers may now customize their purchases at the factory thanks to advancements in computer technology, database marketing software
8. Businesses may enhance internal and external communications, hiring, training, and buying. Companies may hire new personnel online, and many offer items for educating their employees, dealers, and agents on the internet.
9. Employing the Internet as a private intranet allows businesses to streamline and simplify internal communication among their staff. Employees are able to consult one another, ask for assistance, and download or upload necessary data from and to the main computer of the organization.
10. Businesses may save costs by using the Internet effectively. Corporate purchasers may save a lot of money by posting their own conditions in reverse auctions, utilizing the Internet to compare vendors' pricing, and buying materials at auction. Businesses may enhance their operations and logistics to save a significant amount of money while enhancing accuracy and service quality.

DISCUSSION

Recent Trends in Marketing

"Putting customers before the strategy" has a whole new meaning in the era of personalization. Everywhere you look, brands are stepping up their efforts to structure and advertise to customer life cycles, and many marketers are beginning with the consumer before developing new experiences and activities. What does it mean for a company to have a customer focus in reality?

The drive for placing consumers at the forefront of a marketing plan is a smart place to start. What distinguishes a customer-focused marketing strategy from a conventional customer-centric marketing approach?

Developing Market- and Customer-Focused Businesses

Offering consumers, a consistently fantastic and relevant experience across all contact points is the definition of customer-focused marketing. Although it can seem obvious from a marketing perspective, developing a genuine client focus is no simple task. Every connection a prospective consumer has with your company, from the moment they first learn about you to the last, should be lovely, simple, and successful.The following stages are involved in creating a customer-focused business:

1. Recognizing the motivations that value customers

The business must poll its customers and monitor their behavior. In other words, data collection is necessary to learn what matters to consumers and how the company can best serve them.

2. Knowing the value proposition of the company

Customers obtain value when the expenses of a product or service are subtracted from its advantages. What benefits do they get from the company's product or service? What does it cost themthe purchase price plus any additional expenses related to ownership or use. The company has to do a thorough analysis of this value.

3. Segmenting the Client Base

The company has to pinpoint the consumer groups where it offers more value than its rivals. Based on geographic proximity, for instance, or a product feature that one group may find especially alluring, different consumers may have differing views of value compared to the firm's rivals.

4. Using tools for Customer feedback

Getting the data, you need to understand your consumers' characteristics and points of attraction is one of the key first steps in creating a customer focus. Customer focus research aids in the development of goals and objectives for company executives, much like other types of market research. Utilize the pre- and post-purchase feedback. One significant component of customer attention, according to several marketing professionals, is pre-sale feedback. You may modify those agreements and deals to be more appealing to the individuals you are aiming to target by getting feedback from your clients before the transaction is done. Use questionnaires, surveys, and other consumer focus methods. While you don't want to bombard your consumers with requests for feedback or input, a decent follow-up procedure may be useful when trying to create a successful customer-focused strategy.

5. Establish a price that benefits both parties

Customers that see a lot of value in your providing are often prepared to pay more, whereas dissatisfied customers will leave, even at a cheap price, so set a pricing that makes it apparent that consumers are getting value while also maximizing your "take." When you use "cost-plus" pricing, you often give away margin to certain consumers needlessly while losing additional earnings from others.

6. Concentrating Financial Resources on the Most Valued Clients

Allocate a disproportionate amount of your sales force, marketing budget, and R&D funds to the markets and client groups that you can best service and that will provide the highest returns. Spend your expansion money on new goods and services that benefit your top clients or can draw in additional clients that are a match for your greatest clients. Your firm depends on its consumers to survive. They serve as both the basis for future expansion and the source of present income. By better servicing your most valuable clients, you may expand your company by following these steps.

7. Educating Staff on providing customer focus

Making sure employees are aware of their responsibilities in approaching the company with a customer focus is another important part of having a customer focus for a corporation. Customer focus encompasses aspects of customer service, but at its foundation, it's about paying close attention to the consumers, foreseeing their requirements, and appreciating their opinion.

8. Providing rewards to customers

Whether they take the shape of limited-time sale offers, rebates, or targeted giveaway programs, incentives are often a key component of customer attention. Members of the company leadership team may utilize these things to better connect with their base after they have determined what consumers like.

9. Creating the company's business copy

Making sure that all corporate communications and content have a customer-centric tone and viewpoint is another crucial component of customer focus professionals. After all, the majority of companies' clients are readers who learn about them via printed materials like brochures or literature, websites, or other written sources. Even while some could argue that customer attention begins in the office or the boardroom, your copy department probably plays a role in this approach as well.

Setting Up the Marketing Division

The company's other workers and marketing staff may better comprehend each employee's position inside the marketing department with the use of the marketing organizational chart. Depending on the specific business, a company's marketing department may have a different organizational structure. Small businesses may only have one or two marketing staff members, whereas bigger organizations could have hundreds of marketing staff members. Overall, establishing an organizational structure helps in clarifying roles within the marketing department for both marketing staff members and other corporate personnel.

The function of each individual in a company's marketing division is described:

1. Deputy President

Vice president of marketing is the title often given to the person in command of the whole marketing division. The vice president is responsible in developing and planning the company's marketing strategy for its services, goods, or both. The other marketing staff members ultimately report to the vice president. The vice president of marketing serves as a point of contact between the company's owners or higher management and the marketing division.

2. Marketing Director

In the realm of marketing, the terms marketing manager and marketing director are often used interchangeably. Implementing the company's marketing plan is normally the duty of a marketing manager. This includes developing marketing messaging, deciding on platforms like websites and print media, and executing various marketing efforts and programs to reach the company's target audience. The vice president is supervised by the marketing manager, who also oversees the other marketing personnel. Each product line may have a marketing manager in product-based businesses with several product lines.

3. Market analysts

Additionally, some businesses hire market researchers. As well as learning more about the company's rivals, market researchers also learn more about the target market of the business. To gather data and statistics, market researchers might utilize techniques like surveys and focus groups or rely on sources like the U.S. a census to gather data. The marketing manager develops the campaigns and message using the research, data, and statistics gathered by the market researchers. Instead of employing a full-time market research team, small- to medium-sized businesses often utilize a third-party source. Large companies often have their own market researchers on staff.

4. Public Affairs

The organization's public relations team is in charge of managing all non-commercial types of advertising used to promote the company's products and services. Public relations is a part of marketing, however public relations is often free, while a marketing manager concentrates on managing the marketing budget by selecting the best types of advertising. In an attempt to draw attention to the firm, public relations may create and send news releases to the local or national media. Employees in public relations serve as the firm's media spokesman and conduct interviews with journalists or prepare corporate leaders for media appearances.

5. Services for the Arts

The majority of creative services are graphic and web designers who help communicate the company's image and brand to the public. The marketing manager may get assistance from the creative service team in developing a brochure layout and design that will reflect the corporate message the marketing manager and vice president have decided is best for the organizationthe typical duties of a marketing department

A typical corporate marketing department's organizational structure often consists of the following basic tasks:

1. Advertising

To create and execute advertising campaigns across a variety of media, the advertising group collaborates closely with the programs and campaigns division and the product management group. The marketing research team's data and insights should be reflected in the advertising campaigns. In many instances, an outside advertising firm is hired to handle the advertising duty.

2. Field Assistance

The sales support team collaborates closely with either the inside or outside sales teams to train them on marketing tactics and product offerings, collect information on potential clients' needs, draft sales proposals, schedule meetings, and carry out any other administrative tasks involved in high-value selling activities.

3. Marketing Analysis

The marketing research team is in charge of connecting the company's marketing strategy with the requirements and issues of the customer. They provide the marketing team with reports and insights using data gathered from various sources. Most of the time, the research team is also in charge of studying competitors.

4. Producing a Product

The whole process of introducing a new product or service to the market, including concept creation, product design, intellectual property management, detail engineering, market research, testing, and competition analysis, falls within the purview of the product development function. To guarantee that the product launches with the fewest possible difficulties, they closely collaborate with all organizational departments.

5. Management of Products

The product management team directs marketing strategy, branding, objectives, product modifications, and market positioning in addition to supervising the creation of new goods. Marketing, engineering, research, and sales are just a few of the industries that the organization has deep ties to. They are in charge of overseeing a product's lifespan and making the required alterations to make it profitable or achieve business objectives.Product manager, project manager, and product development manager are typical job titles.

6. Initiatives & Campaigns

The group in charge of programs and campaigns creates and introduces marketing efforts. These efforts, which are in line with corporate objectives and the overall business plan, make use of a variety of media to inform clients about the company's service offerings.

7. Promotional Resources

Any visuals, print materials, films, or other collateral that may be required for marketing initiatives, campaigns, or advertising are produced by the promotional materials division. With guidance from the programs and campaigns team or the advertising team, they are in charge of the layout and content of these materials.

8. Public Affairs

The public relations department handles communications between the business and any media source. They want to manage how the general public views the business and its line of goods. They often give speeches at public gatherings, work with local or national media, and communicate with staff members internally about certain events or programs.

9. Social Media Promotion

The company's online presence is managed by the social media marketing team. They advertise the business's goods and services online using platforms like Facebook, Twitter, and others. To find out what the general public thinks of their goods and services, they also keep an eye on consumer feedback and brand mentions.

Marketing Management

Setting a desirable standard, monitoring deviations from the standard, and taking necessary action are all parts of marketing control. The standard is often described in terms of budgets, and any significant departure from the budget is looked into. Positive and negative variances are both potentially grounds for worry. Sales that are much higher than anticipated levels may put an excessive strain on the company's manufacturing, storage, and distribution capabilities, for instance. At the same time, managers would find it to be an impossible burden to investigate every variance from planned levels. Instead, since not all deviations are statistically significant, limits are defined for "allowable" deviations, and only deviations that surpass these limits are looked at. The yearly plan control, profitability control, efficiency control, and strategic control are the four different forms of marketing controls.

Marketing Control Levels

The many layers of marketing restrictions are as follows:

1. Annual-Plan Management

The foundation of annual-plan control is management objectives, or precise monthly or quarterly targets for things like sales and profitability. Organizations track the effectiveness of their plans using five techniques. The first is sales analysis, which compares sales targets with actual sales and explains or accounts for anomalies. Market-share analysis, which contrasts a company's revenues with those of its rivals, is a second technique. Companies may calculate their market share in a variety of ways, including by comparing their own sales to those of the whole market, sales within a certain market sector, or sales of the segment's leading rivals. Third, a company's expenditure on marketing in relation to sales is measured by this approach. It is common for businesses to set an acceptable range for the ratio of marketing costs to sales since it is anticipated to change over time. Financial analysis, on the other hand, makes such projections from a business viewpoint. The comparisons here include profits to sales, sales to assets, profits to assets, assets to worth, and lastly profits to worth. Finally, businesses assess objective success by measuring customer happiness. These analyses, which are often less quantitative than those above, may include customer satisfaction surveys, complaint and suggestion systems, and rigorous examination of the factors that lead consumers to switch to a competitor's product. Annual marketing objectives are used as performance benchmarks in annual plan control. Some of the common performance benchmarks under this style of supervision are projected figures for sales volume, market share, and profitability. Variance analysis and marketing expense-to-sales analysis are two vital tools for monitoring outcomes and assessing them against benchmarks.

2. Controlling Profitability

An organization may keep a careful eye on its sales, earnings, and expenses with the help of profitability management and efficiency control. The relative ability of the various products and customer segments of a corporation to generate profits is shown by profitability control. Businesses are usually shocked to learn that a tiny portion of their consumers and goods account for a significant portion of their income. A business may better deploy its resources and efforts using this information. Marketing profitability, which is determined by the investment made in these activities, is the profitability attained via the execution of marketing operations. The segment margin report, activity-based costing, and the strategic profit model are a few of the methods used to manage profitability.

3. Efficiency Management

Micro-level examination of the many components of the marketing mix, such as the sales force, advertising, sales promotion, and distribution, is required for efficiency management. For instance, a business may monitor how many sales calls a representative makes each day, how long each contact lasts, how much each call costs, and how much money each call produces in order to determine the effectiveness of its sales team. This kind of research identifies opportunities for businesses to handle their marketing initiatives more successfully and affordably. Efficiency control, which is more of a quantitative control, examines how effectively marketing actions are aimed at achieving the objectives of the marketing function. The controls in this case are primarily concerned with the number of sales, the sales produced by each salesperson, the number of accounts each salesperson manages, etc. On the other hand, effectiveness control is qualitative in nature and tries to increase the success of marketing initiatives. The market share, profitability, customer contentment, etc. of any firm serve as indicators of its marketing efficacy. Auditing, measuring, and controlling are difficult. It relies on qualities like the organization's operational effectiveness, marketing orientation, knowledge of marketing, and customer philosophy.

4. Strategic Management

Strategic control entails monitoring a plan of action while it is carried out. Identifying issues or modifications in the approach and making the appropriate adjustments are also included. As a manager, you often wonder whether the business is headed in the right path or if your presumptions about significant trends and changes in the business environment are accurate. These issues need the implementation of strategic controls.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Businesses have never-before-seen prospects for growth and innovation thanks to the development of new consumer and corporate capabilities. A competitive advantage may be gained by businesses through embracing technology, data analytics, and personalization to offer excellent customer experiences. Businesses may succeed in a dynamic and linked market by comprehending and embracing these new capabilities and being adaptable, relevant, and customer-focused. Both consumers and companies profit from the synergy between emerging consumer and corporate capabilities, which supports a dynamic and customer-driven business environment. Companies now have the ability to simplify operations, improve efficiency, and optimize internal processes thanks to the additional capabilities. By embracing automation and smart technology, businesses may increase efficiency and concentrate on innovative and customer-focused projects. However, increased capabilities often bring new difficulties, such as worries about data privacy, cyberthreats, and moral issues. To keep customers' confidence and safeguard their brand, businesses must place a high priority on data security and ethical behavior.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. C. N. Costa, S. M. Camargo, A. M. M. Toaldo, and S. R. Didonet, "Managers' influence on company capabilities," *Rev. Adm. Mackenzie*, 2019, doi: 10.1590/1678-6971/eramd190061.

[2] J. Gonthier and G. M. Chirita, "The role of corporate incubators as invigorators of innovation capabilities in parent companies," *J. Innov. Entrep.*, 2019, doi: 10.1186/s13731-019-0104-0.

[3] C. C. Hoang and B. H. Ngoc, "The relationship between innovation capability and firm's performance in electronic companies, Vietnam," *J. Asian Financ. Econ. Bus.*, 2019, doi: 10.13106/jafeb.2019.vol6.no3.295.

[4] S. Labunska, R. Karaszewski, O. Prokopishyna, and I. Iermachenko, "Cognitive analytical tools for cost management of innovation activity," *Probl. Perspect. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.21511/ppm.17(1).2019.34.

[5] L. Mastrogiacomo, F. Barravecchia, and F. Franceschini, "A worldwide survey on manufacturing servitization," *Int. J. Adv. Manuf. Technol.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s00170-019-03740-z.

[6] I. Kovac and D. Labaš, "The role of technological capabilities in the internationalization of croatian companies," *InterEULawEast*, 2019, doi: 10.22598/iele.2019.6.1.4.

[7] N. H. N. Abdullah, J. T. Darsono, H. Respati, and J. Said, "Improving accountability and sustainability through value creation and dynamic capabilities: An empirical study in public interest companies," *Polish J. Manag. Stud.*, 2019, doi: 10.17512/pjms.2019.19.2.01.

[8] E. A. Inigo and L. Albareda, "Sustainability oriented innovation dynamics: Levels of dynamic capabilities and their path-dependent and self-reinforcing logics," *Technol. Forecast. Soc. Change*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.techfore.2018.11.023.

[9] A. P. Monteiro, A. M. Soares, and O. L. Rua, "Linking intangible resources and entrepreneurial orientation to export performance: The mediating effect of dynamic capabilities," *J. Innov. Knowl.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jik.2019.04.001.

[10] G. D. Syailendra, "Influence of Information Technology Governance to Company Performance with Mediation of Information Technology Capabilities in Indonesia," *Am. J. Humanit. Soc. Sci. Res.*, 2019.

CHAPTER 24
AN OVERVIEW OF STRATEGIC MARKETING PLANNING

Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhimanyu.upadhyay@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. Abhishek Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhishekkumar@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Strategic marketing planning is a systematic process that guides businesses in setting clear objectives, making informed decisions, and allocating resources to achieve their marketing goals. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of strategic marketing planning and its impact on business success and competitiveness. The abstract explores the key components of strategic marketing planning, such as market analysis, target audience identification, positioning, and marketing mix development. It delves into the importance of aligning marketing strategies with overall business objectives and continuously monitoring and adapting to market dynamics. Understanding the essence of strategic marketing planning empowers businesses to navigate complexities, stay ahead of competitors, and drive sustained growth in a dynamic and customer-driven marketplace.

KEYWORDS:

Marketing Strategy, Market Research, Product Positioning, SWOT Analysis, Target Audience, Value Proposition.

INTRODUCTION

Making ensuring that a company's skills are matched to the competitive market environment in which it works, not only for today but for the foreseeable future, is the heart of designing a marketing plan. This requires a commercial organization to make sure that its competencies and resources align with the demands of the markets in which it competes. Achieving a match between an organization's capacity to serve and the needs of the people or causes it seeks to serve is important for non-profit organizations like charities or public utilities[1], [2]. The core of strategy is the requirement to objectively evaluate the resource profile of the organization (often referred to as its strengths and weaknesses) as well as the external environment it operates in (its opportunities and threats). Instead of focusing on efficiency (doing what you do well), strategy is more concerned with effectiveness (doing the right things).

Day-to-day operations management takes up the great majority of management time, which is a need. Even senior management often spends an excessive amount of time on mundane everyday duties, delegating the more challenging and time-consuming duty of planning farther into the future to a weekend or week-long conference once a year[3], [4]. However, strategic thinking, which involves stepping back from the demands of enhancing what you are doing right now and examining what you are doing, is an ongoing process in the most successful businesses. Any strategy must be well-tuned to the resources and skills of the organization trying to execute it as well as to the demands and expectations of consumers (the market circumstances in which it is implemented). No matter how well written and communicated the plan, it will fail if it is not centered on satisfying the demands of the target audience. Similar to this, success will be elusive if the organizational resources required for its execution are absent or difficult to get.

The adoption of strategic thinking extends beyond the purview of marketing management alone, much as the adoption of a marketing philosophy throughout the organization. The task for creating the firm's strategic profile and providing it a strategic emphasis falls on all top executives in the company or organization. Although strategic planning has a wider scope and encompasses all corporate operations, it shares many activities with strategic marketing planning. The strategic marketing plan is merely one of several functional plans that feed into a company's overall strategy plan, but a marketing orientation must pervade a whole organization[5], [6]. However, marketing management has an increasingly significant role to play in overall strategy formulation due to its special duty for managing the interface between the organization and its environment (both consumers and rivals). The entire company strategy should be considered while establishing the marketing strategy. The marketing strategy must be in line with the overall direction of the organization after feedback from all relevant stakeholders has been considered and considered appropriately.

Defining an organization's goal or purpose may be a helpful place to start when developing a plan. The Eden Project in Cornwall was founded and is run by Tim Smit, who set out to create the largest worldwide eco-brand and transform how people see themselves and their connection to the environment. To "promote the understanding and responsible management of the vital relationship between plants, people, and resources leading to a sustainable future for all," according to the mission statement[7], [8]. This guiding idea enabled the construction of a complex of greenhouse domes covering 37 acres in an abandoned clay pit at St. Austell using £40 million in UK lottery money and £43 million in private investment. Another crucial benefit was that it provided the team members with desirable goals to aim for and be devoted to. Despite its rather awkward placement, Eden has had a ton of visitorsmore than 1 million in the first four monthsand is now planning to expand internationally.

When defining the company's purpose or goal, it is necessary to start by asking the fundamental questions that Levitt initially put forward over 50 years ago. According to marketing mythology, Parker Pens just had a new managing director come in. One of his first moves was to gather the board of directors, address them while holding the most advanced Parker of the time, and inquire as to who their main rival was. Shaeffer was the first response to be read off the board. A pen made by Shaeffer is extremely comparable to the Parker. It was well-known for being high-quality, had a comparable attractive finish, and cost about the same at the top of the market. This response, however, did not please the new managing director. Shaeffer is by no means our main rival, but we do compete with them to some degree[9], [10].

Then, a more recent board member proposed that Biro-Swan, a company that produces and markets a variety of ballpoint pens, could be the main rival. Although they retailed for a lot less than the Parker, he reasoned that because they were used for writing, they directly competed with Parker. Pencils and more recent advances in the industry, such as roller balls and fiber tip pens, might potentially be seen as rivals under the new business definition, which changed from "quality fountain pens" to "writing implements." The doctor said, "Your thinking is improving, but you're still not there.The telephone, which had been used more often recently, was then mentioned by another board member as a potential big rival. According to this understanding of the market, they were in the "communications" sector and competed with other spoken and written modes of communication, maybe with typewriters and more recently, word processors. More innovative thinking, but you still haven't identified the key rival, the MD said.The MD eventually shared his thoughts on the main rival. He said, "Our main rival is the Ronson cigarette lighter," to the board's surprise. When pressed to provide a justification, he referred to the company's business as the "quality gift market."

According to an analysis of Parker pen sales, the bulk of purchases were made by people who were purchasing presents for other people. A decent cigarette lighter was often a top choice when people debated what to purchase, which led to the defining of the market (example provided by Graham Kenwright, Birmingham Chamber of Commerce). This term has broad ramifications for how the product is marketed. A bigger role is played by packaging, as well as the creation and maintenance of a high-quality image. Price may not be as significant as previously believed in terms of alternative market definitions. Distribution (through the locations where prospective consumers purchase presents) also becomes more significance.

DISCUSSION

Mission formulation and statement

A clear and succinct description of the organization's goal that can be shared with everyone in the organization helps foster a feeling of shared purpose and serve as a guide for future decision-making and resource allocation priorities. However, poorly written comments, particularly those that are limited to "motherhood and apple pie," might harm rather than help by inciting jeers from staff members, supervisors, and even clients.An effective mission statement must include the following information:

The strategic purpose, or vision, of where the organization wants to go in the near future (see Hamel and Prahalad, 1989). Examples of strategic aim are given by Hamel and Prahalad for Komatsu (makers of earthmoving equipment) as being to "encircle Caterpillar" and for the American Apollo space program as being to "land- a man on the moon ahead of the Soviets." Unlike these cases, vision need not be as competitive. The accomplishment of a number of deserving societal objectives may serve as the foundation for an organization's mission, such as a university. A charity's aim may be to enhance the standard of living for certain racial or animal populations.To establish the moral and ethical tone that will direct activities, the organization's values should be clearly stated. The multinational corporation with its headquarters in New Zealand, Fletcher Challenge, outlines the following ideals in its Statement of Purpose.

With a focus on transparency, communication, dedication, innovation, and decentralization of power, responsibility, and accountability, Fletcher Challenge will do business with integrity.However, it is obvious that it is crucial to follow through on such declarations after they have been made. Due to its backing for foreign governments that some commentators would consider ethically dubious, the UK government's "ethical foreign policy" has drawn a lot of criticism. The organization's distinguishing skills should be stated, making it apparent what makes the organization stand out from others of its sort and what the organization's unique identity is. Many organizations find it challenging yet essential to communicate this. It aims to define the organization's uniqueness basically, why it exists as a distinct entity and what makes it unique.

Market definition, including the organization's primary client targets, as well as the functions or wants of those consumers. According to its brand name and stated objective of being "a car insurance company designed for the female driver," Sheila's Wheels Insurance has a clear emphasis on the requirements of a well-defined market target (www.sheilaswheels.com). Numerous successful businesspeople, like Richard Branson of Virgin, have built their companies on a precise understanding of their target markets' demands while attempting to cater to them across a variety of product categories. Lastly, the organization's position in the market should be described in the mission statement. This is what happens when you combine market definition with unique talents and abilities.

It is risky to use business definitions that are overly specific. They ought to define the target market and the function provided. Camera manufacturers that limit their devices' capabilities to photochemical picture storage do so at their peril by ignoring digital tools for image storage and manipulation. The key to function-based definition is to not let the company's vision of the function cloud your judgment; instead, let the customer's perspective shine through. There are plenty of instances of firms that have defined their operations from a narrow perspective. The railways neglected to consider other forms of transportation because they felt they were in the train business, not the transportation industry. The oil industry was of the opinion that they were just in the business of producing and selling oil, not energy. It is important to understand the whole product or service that clients are purchasing and the advantages it offers while creating the company. Avoid the trap of focusing just on the physical characteristics provided.

What line of business do we want to be in? was the second question addressed at the beginning of this section. - is often harder to respond to. It necessitates a careful examination of the alternatives available to the organization as well as knowledge of how the world, and the company's markets in particular, are changing. Once the organization's goal has been established, a marketing plan may be developed to support that goal. The formulation of a core strategy, the creation of the company's competitive positioning, and the execution of the plan are the three primary levels at which we may analyze the evolution of marketing strategy. A thorough and innovative analysis of the company's capabilities, including its advantages and disadvantages compared to the competition, as well as the possibilities and risks presented by the environment, is the first step in developing an efficient marketing plan. This study will serve as the foundation for the company's core strategy, which will outline marketing goals and the overall plan for accomplishing them.

Market targets (both clients and rivals) are chosen and/or recognized at the following level. The company's distinct advantage, or competitive edge, in outperforming the competition in providing the client goals is identified at the same time. The establishment of the competitive positioning of the organization and its offers is made up of the identification of targets and the determination of differentiated advantages taken together. A marketing organization that can put the plan into effect must be developed at the implementation level. The marketing organization's design may be essential to the strategy's success. Establishing a combination of goods, prices, promotions, and distribution that can communicate to the target market the positioning as well as the goods and services themselves is another difficulty with implementation. In order to guarantee that the plan execution is effective, mechanisms of control must also be developed. Control pertains to both the success of the approach in the long run and how well it is implemented. The three primary levels of strategy are now examined in further depth.The core strategy outlines the company's goals as well as the general approaches it will take to get there. A thorough review of the resources available and the market in which the organization will operate, both in the context of fulfilling the overarching company purpose or goal, is necessary to define the core strategy.

Resource Analysis for Organizations

Any organization might identify all the resources it has available to it. But not all of those tools will be equally helpful in developing a marketing plan. Similarly, every organization might honestly cite a number of flaws, not all of which would be disastrous. Organizations make an effort to identify the unique resources (assets and competencies) that help to define the organization while creating the core strategy.

This assists in limiting the alternatives available to the organization and identifying how best to use its strengths while minimizing vulnerability to its shortcomings. Any part of the business may provide core competencies or core abilities. They may result from the workforce's ability to assemble the product successfully or efficiently, from management's expertise in marketing or financial planning, or from the R&D department's ability to generate new product ideas or develop new goods based on market research. But from the standpoint of a marketing strategy, what matters is if they can be used in the market to provide better consumer value.

The company's unique skills may be found in its distribution network, after-sales support, or marketing assets such as brand recognition and market presence. The most important factor in determining distinguishing competency is that it must be something that can be used in the marketplace. If there is no market for the goods being produced, unique technical abilities are of limited use. Therefore, evaluating the organization's prospective distinguishing skills in light of market viability is a key responsibility of marketing management.

Weaknesses in comparison to the competition serve as a counterweight to distinguishing capabilities or exploitable assets. The corporation must be completely aware of its constraints and develop tactics to overcome, or bypass, them in situations where, for instance, rivals have a more favorable or protected supply of raw materials, or a greater customer loyalty. It may be difficult or perhaps impossible to eradicate structural vulnerabilities that are intrinsic to the company and caused by the way it operates. To make these elements less crucial to competitive success, strategies should be designed to move the competitors away from them. Once they have been found, further flaws may be more easily avoided or even turned into advantages by being used in a new manner.

The line of products

A portfolio study of the many products and services a firm has on offer on the market is essential to evaluating its resources. The guiding principle of General Electric (GE), an American power station to electric light bulb corporation, is to be "one or two in everything we do." Amazing diversity may be seen within GE's companies. Market leader in America for electric light bulbs, a mature, high-volume, low-priced product, is one of its most successful businesses. Other divisions provide a wide range of household electrical goods, another produces medical devices like body scanners, and one of the most profitable portions of the business is the market leader in the commercial and military aeroengine industries. It is obvious that the various companies inside the organization operate in various markets, face various opportunities and risks, and make use of various corporate capabilities and resources. Therefore, it's crucial to make sure that each business unit has goals and strategies that are suitable for it, and that they complement one another.

Think about the difficulty Virgin would have in managing a collection of businesses that included train and airline travel, music and movies, financial services, beverages, apparel and cosmetics, and other smaller businesses. We'll see that this is an illustration of portfolio management and development via cooperation, including both triumphs and failures. For instance, the majority of the future investments in new sectors to capitalize on the Virgin brand were financed by the sale of Virgin Megastores. The basis for making crucial decisions, including those on investments and strategic direction, is portfolio analysis. These examples highlight the significance of portfolio concerns and the crucial role that marketing variables as opposed to just financial criteria play in the selection of a portfolio. Here are seven company kinds that are still relevant today.

The goods and services that generate strong profits today and have a beneficial impact on both cash flow and earnings are considered to be the breadwinners of the day. Investments in the company's future that will be tomorrow's breadwinners. Products and services that, although they may not yet be significantly contributing to the company's bottom line, are in growing or otherwise attractive areas and are anticipated to ultimately replace today's primary sources of income when they finally lose their effectiveness.

Yesterday's breadwinners: The goods and services that formerly sustained the business but today make up a little portion of cash flow or earnings. This form of company predominates in many corporations, which suggests that they have been hesitant to invest in future improvements.

Developments: Newly created goods and services that could have some future potential but need more funding to realize.

Sleepers: Products and services that have been available for a while but haven't yet managed to dominate their markets or, more specifically, their anticipated markets haven't materialized. These are let to stay in the portfolio in the anticipation that they may one day succeed.

Investments in managerial ego are made in goods and services that have ardent advocates among powerful managers but no evidence of market demand. Due to the engagement of influential management, the corporation keeps investing resources in these goods in the hopes that they would ultimately succeed. Failures are the goods and services that haven't succeeded in filling a significant gap in the company's portfolio and don't have a prospect of doing so. These are generally maintained on the company's books out of inertia. It is simpler to do this than to give up and withdraw or divest.

The relationship between the enterprises that Drucker outlined is provided by the product life cycle or death cycle. The corporation now benefits little from advances, sleepers, or ego excursions, but it is anticipated that they would in the future. Although the markets they are in may be very lucrative, the company's capacity to service them is limited due to underinvestment. The enterprises will go through the death cycle and collapse if left unattended and without further investment.With these enterprises, a corporation is faced with a strategic conundrum. It must be decided whether to invest in them or leave since they won't likely prosper if left alone. Even the biggest businesses cannot explore all lucrative areas, therefore the first portfolio option is to double down or give up. If investing is chosen, the goal is to strengthen the company so that it can support itself as one of tomorrow's primary sources of income. Typically, this entails gaining some kind of market domination in a developing industry. If properly handled, the product will develop into one of today's primary earners and eventually become one of yesterdays. Like everything else, beginning new initiatives is not difficult; the challenge lies in recognizing when to end them and when to focus resources where success is possible.

Portfolio Management

Any organization that has a diverse portfolio of companies must develop procedures for evaluating the balance of those firms and for allocating resources accordingly. Over the last forty years, a variety of portfolio planning models have been created to help with this process. The Growth-Share Matrix, created by the Boston Consulting Group, was the first and most fundamental model. Commercial businesses like Shell and General Electric as well as consultants Arthur D. Little and McKinsey have created more complex models. However, they all share a few important goals.

The creation of company strategy

The distribution of management and financial resources. Investment priorities for certain firms may be determined by evaluating their current position within their sector as well as the outlook for that industry over the medium to long term. Strong companies in desirable markets are more likely to be financially self-sufficient. To ensure they continue to reach their potential, they will need diligent management. Usually, hold or build tactics will be suggested. Weak companies in lucrative areas could need more investment to strengthen their position going forward. Products in failing industries would not be as worthy of resources unless turnaround efforts are likely to change the direction of the market. Products are often handled for cash flow in decreasing markets to free up resources for the portfolio's more promising segments.

Examining the portfolio's balance

Portfolio analysis helps examine the total portfolio balance in terms of cash flow, future prospects, and risk in addition to offering suggestions for specific firms. When investments in enterprises with promise are covered by surpluses from present or former breadwinners, cash flow balance is achieved. The degree to which the cash flow is out of balance may indicate opportunities for growth or acquisition (in the middle of the 1990s, it was reported that Microsoft was sitting on a cash mountain of about $7 billion and searching for new, synergistic businesses to invest in), or it may indicate the need for additional funding from outside investors. Assessing the organization's overall future prospects is a vital component of portfolio planning. A portfolio that relies too heavily on yesterday's goods may have a solid present cash flow, but the longer-term future may be in jeopardy if that money isn't invested in today's items. An overstretched portfolio may indicate too many future investments without a strong adequate present cash flow production. Assuring that not all of a company's initiatives are high risk while enabling certain more hazardous efforts to be balanced by maybe less profitable but more predictable operations allows a corporation to spread its total risk. The only reliable way to identify a company's strengths and weaknesses is via a thorough audit of its resources and how they are used in comparison to the competitors.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Strategic marketing planning is a crucial procedure that equips companies to succeed in a cutthroat commercial environment. Companies may achieve continuous development and a strong brand presence by doing thorough market analyses, defining target consumers, and matching marketing tactics with overarching corporate goals. Adopting the fundamentals of strategic marketing planning gives companies the tools they need to remain adaptable, customer-focused, and creative in a world of commerce that is continually changing. Strategic marketing strategy and business execution work together to create a vibrant, customer-driven market that is advantageous to both companies and customers. Strategic marketing planning requires constant observation and adaptation to market changes. Businesses may take advantage of opportunities and avoid problems if they are flexible and responsive. Additionally, strategic marketing planning promotes a customer-centric mindset, helping organizations to successfully satisfy client demands and forge long-lasting connections.

REFERENCES:

[1] C. McCamley and A. Gilmore, “Strategic marketing planning for heritage tourism: a conceptual model and empirical findings from two emerging heritage regions,” *J. Strateg. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/0965254X.2016.1195859.

[2] Z. Yi, "Strategic Marketing Planning," in *Marketing Services and Resources in Information Organizations*, 2018. doi: 10.1016/b978-0-08-100798-3.00006-4.

[3] A. Ebrahimi and H. Banaeifard, "The influence of internal and external factors on the marketing strategic planning in SNOWA Corporation," *J. Bus. Ind. Mark.*, 2018, doi: 10.1108/JBIM-02-2018-0083.

[4] A. E. Ghahnavieh, "The Influence of Marketing Factors on the Marketing Strategic Planning in SNOWA Corporation," *Bus. Manag. Stud.*, 2018, doi: 10.11114/bms.v4i4.3133.

[5] H. J. HEJASE, Y. SKAFF, D. EL SKAFF, and A. J. HEJASE, "Effect of Education and Emotional Intelligence on Consumers Impulsive Buying Behavior," *Int. Rev. Manag. Bus. Res.*, 2018, doi: 10.30543/7-3(2018)-8.

[6] A. Pomering and L. W. Johnson, "Building Sustainability into Services Marketing: Expanding decision-making from a mix to a matrix," *Sustain.*, 2018, doi: 10.3390/su10092992.

[7] A. Zimmerman and J. Blythe, "Segmentation, targeting, and positioning," in *Business to Business Marketing Management*, 2018. doi: 10.4324/9781315564098-7.

[8] B. Berman and S. Thelen, "Planning and implementing an effective omnichannel marketing program," *International Journal of Retail and Distribution Management*. 2018. doi: 10.1108/IJRDM-08-2016-0131.

[9] S. Noah, L. M., & Were, "Influence of Strategic Management Process on Performance of Oil Marketing Companies in Kenya," *Strateg. J. Bus. Chang. Manag.*, 2018.

[10] G. Lancaster and L. Massingham, "Strategic marketing planning tools," in *Essentials of Marketing Management*, 2018. doi: 10.4324/9781315177014-16.

CHAPTER 25
ANALYSIS OF THE MARKETS SERVED FOR BUSINESS STRATEGY

Dr. Abhimanyu Upadhyay, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies & Entrepreneurship,
Shobhit University, Gangoh, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhimanyu.upadhyay@shobhituniversity.ac.in

Dr. Abhishek Kumar, Associate Professor, Department of Business Studies,
Shobhit Deemed University, Meerut, Uttar Pradesh, India,
Email Id- abhishekkumar@shobhituniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Analysis of the markets served is a critical component of business strategy, enabling companies to identify market opportunities, understand customer needs, and make informed decisions. This abstract provides an overview of the significance of market analysis and its impact on business growth and market competitiveness. The abstract explores various aspects of market analysis, including market segmentation, customer profiling, competitor analysis, and market trends. It delves into the importance of staying updated with market dynamics and continuously adapting to changing customer demands. Understanding the essence of market analysis empowers businesses to optimize marketing efforts, tailor products and services to meet customer needs, and gain a competitive advantage in a dynamic and customer-centric business landscape.

KEYWORDS:

Market Opportunities, Market Research, Niche Markets, Product Differentiation, Psychographics, Target Markets.

INTRODUCTION

The opportunities and risks that the firm faces may be brought into sharper focus by doing a market study of the markets in which it already participates or aspires to operate. Customers (both existing and future) and rivals (again, both current and potential) are the two major sources of these opportunities and threats. Most marketplaces are divided into segments of some kind. They are made up of heterogeneous clients, or people with different requirements and preferences. 'How is the market segmented?' is a question.' may aid in concentrating on certain market goals and provide insightful information about client needs. For instance, there are several methods to divide the whole market for computers[1], [2].

Mainframes, minicomputers, and PCs make up a straightforward, product-based categorization. For years, IBM has controlled the mainframe industry. Competitors wisely concentrated their efforts on the minicomputer industry, for smaller users with different needs, and established supremacy of that sector, realizing the challenges of taking on such a mammoth head-on. Similar to this, Apple was quite successful in dominating the PC market until 'IBM-compatible' devices with later generations of Intel CPUs and Microsoft operating systems took over. While competing in the computer industry, Canon has chosen a different strategy. It acknowledged the fact that computer users do not just need computers. To utilize the computer to its full potential, they also need auxiliary devices. Hewlett-Packard concentrates on laser printers, whereas Canon supplies inkjet color printers, carving out a significant position in the industry.However, there is still market segmentation even within these broad, product-based classifications. Sony has pioneered the trend of "living room entertainment computers," while Toshiba and Compaq (now HP) have concentrated on portable laptop computers[3], [4].

With affordable hardware and compelling software, Sega, Nintendo, and Sony were very successful in growing the computer games sector in the 1990s. With its PlayStations, latecomer Sony overtook the competition. Because of the increasing power, improved accessibility, and decreased cost of Pentium-powered PCs, the industry had been predicted to shrink as the gaming and PC industries converged for a while. Despite this, the market has been remarkably robust and has expanded, with the successful introduction of Microsoft's Xbox in March 2002 and Nintendo's Wii in December 2006.

After examining the market's present and future segmentation, the next stage in evaluating alternatives is to look for untapped or under-tapped market opportunities. For instance, there are now significant changes in eating patterns in the food industry[5], [6]. The trend toward better eating and the growing focus on convenience meals are two of the most significant. Both shifts have created new possibilities for businesses who are ready and equipped to seize them. Van den Bergh, for instance, saw the possibility for margarine spreads that do not lead to unhealthy cholesterol build-up right once[7], [8]. While other spreads raise cholesterol, it's Flora Pro-Active and comparable Benaco products really lower it.

Opportunities are produced when fundamental market shifts occur (such as the influence of growing health consciousness on eating patterns) or when competitors fail to meet market demands. While Compaq and Dell's success was based on IBM's failure to switch distribution channels, Apple's first success in the microcomputer industry was partially due to IBM's initial decision to stay out of the market. Market gaps might occur because organizations are unable to fill them (because they lack the necessary skills and competences to do so) or because they choose not to fill them for a variety of reasons. It has been mentioned how crucial time is in seeing and seizing opportunities. His idea of strategic windows draws attention to the reality that there are only a few times when the match between the market's needs and the firm's capabilities is optimal. When such strategic windows are open, investments should be scheduled to take place at such times, and vice versa, once a good fit has begun to dissolve, disinvestments should be taken into consideration. The ability to schedule their entrance so that their skills and the market needs were tightly in tune was credited with a significant portion of the success of Japanese corporations in the global markets during the last two decades of the twentieth century[9], [10].

It is important to look at the risks the organization faces in addition to the possibilities available to it. These dangers mostly come from two directions: a changing market that the company is unaware of or unable to keep up with, or competitive behavior intended to shift the market's power dynamics. In order for the organization to stay current with client demands in a changing environment, it must constantly acquire information. In various sectors, keeping up with technical advancements might be extremely crucial. In the early 1970s, the pocket calculator decimated the slide rule business, and in the mid-1970s, the digital watch created serious (though temporary) issues for Swiss watch makers. Currently, music downloads are causing the CD to disappear. Customer preferences also change over time. Fashions come and go (many of them driven by marketers), but keeping up is essential in marketplaces where fashion is significant. Customer analysis is covered in further depth.

The competitiveness of an organization is the second main source of danger. In most marketplaces, rising competition from both local and foreign sources is the name of the game. The corporation must enhance its marketing efforts as rivals grow more skilled at identifying market possibilities and developing marketing strategies to take advantage of them. Many sectors in the United Kingdom have failed or been unable to sufficiently adapt to rising global competition, and as a result, have borne the repercussions. It is telling, for instance, that Sony, leveraging their core competency of making things smaller, introduced the first sub-3-pound lightweight computers in the fiercely competitive laptop market, in response to the demands of business users tired of transporting heavier machines around the world. Rough competition study takes up nearly as much time in more advanced marketing firms as customer and self-evaluation. A lot of work is put into figuring out the strengths and weaknesses of rivals as well as their most probable tactics.

SWOT evaluation

A SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats) analysis may be created by combining the aforementioned study of the organization's strengths and weaknesses (basically an internal emphasis) with the analysis of the market (basically an external focus).SWOT has two purposes. It first aims to identify the most important internal and external elements influencing the organization and its markets. It offers a succinct executive overview of the important points. Second, though, it may assist in the design of strategies by examining how strengths and weaknesses connect with opportunities and threats. The company may start to identify the areas where its strengths could be most effectively used, both offensively and defensively, as well as the areas where its shortcomings make it susceptible to changes in the market or rivalry.

Primary Strategy

The firm aims to identify the key success factors (KFS, also known as crucial success factors) in its specific markets based on the study mentioned above. The elements that are essential to doing business are those that are key to success in the sector. The differences between winners and losers, or leaders and also-rans in the sector, are examined in order to identify the KFS. They often stand in for the variables that can be manipulated with the highest leverage, or with the largest impact for a given amount of work.

The KFS may focus on the connections developed between the manufacturer and the retailer, for instance, in the grocery sector. Because of the dominance of the large multiples (fewer than a dozen major food retail chains currently account for over 80% of food sales in the United Kingdom), a new food product will be denied access to a substantial portion of the potential market if distribution is not secured via the main outlets. Pricing is generally seen as the only true method of product differentiation in commodity markets, as manufacturing process efficiency helps to control costs. How the many corporate activities add up, or the place each activity plays in the organization's total business portfolio, is another factor to take into account when developing the core strategy for a multi-product or multi-divisional corporation.

The company establishes its marketing goals after determining its capabilities, market possibilities and threats, critical success elements in the sector it works in, and the place of the specific product or service in the company's broader portfolio. Both long- and short-term goals should be set. The long-term aims of the organization are shown by the long-term objectives. However, in order to accomplish such long-term goals, it is often essential to break them down into more manageable short-term goals. For a business working in the commercial sector, long-term goals are often stated in terms of profit or market dominance. Even non-profit organizations have long- and short-term objectives. For instance, Greenpeace's long-term objective is to protect the environment worldwide. Midway through the 2000s, shorter-term objectives were concentrated on a few, high-profile initiatives, such as making Apple computers greener, as opposed to larger-scale problems, like halting global climate change.

The distinction between short-term and long-term goals is sometimes unclear, and there is always a chance that if they are established separately, their achievement would not advance the long-term aims and may even work against them in certain cases. For instance, a business that sets long-term objectives for market dominance may often discover that they are at conflict with short-term profit maximization. However, a large number of managers will be evaluated on annual success, rather than long-term performance, and will therefore be more inclined to adhere to short-term profit targets at the price of strengthening their market position.

The organization's basic strategy outlines how it plans to accomplish its goals. The core strategy may center on leveraging superior technology to reach this goal, or it may center on cheaper pricing, better service, or higher quality if, for instance, the long-term target is to be the market leader in market X with a share of market at least twice that of the closest rivals. In order to accomplish the corporate goals of the organization, the core strategy will use the firm's core strengths and use them wherever feasible on the KFS. Depending on where the product or service is in its life cycle, a different core approach may be used.

One must fundamentally decide whether to focus on growing sales or enhancing the degree of profitability generated by current sales (or even decreased revenues in a down market). Again, there are two basic approaches that can be used when the goal is to increase sales: either to expand the total market (which is most easily accomplished during the early growth stages of the life cycle, though not exclusively) or to increase share of the existing market (which is most frequently pursued during the late growth/maturity phases).

Increase market size

The market may be expanded by luring new customers to the product or service, discovering new applications for the product, or creating new goods and services to energize the market. The company's activities may be expanded geographically (both locally and globally) in order to attract new consumers. For instance, Asda (now owned by Wal-Mart) moved south from its original base in Yorkshire in search of new clients for its food items, whereas Sainsbury's moved north from the south-east in search of new markets. As an alternative, new segments with a latent or existent demand for the product may be found. When Lucozade was repositioned as a high-energy beverage, a new market for a product that was previously only supplied to parents of ill children was discovered.EasyJet and Ryanair, two "no-frills" airlines, have had extraordinary development because they focus on expanding the market rather than just capturing market share, or "more people flying more often." With its carefully selected routes where it is the only airline operating, Ryanair in particular has sometimes seen a fourfold increase in traffic.

By enticing owners of other kinds of cars to switch, Land-Rover, the company that makes the Freelander, Discovery, and Range Rover models, hoped to boost demand for automobiles. Through pamphlets and direct mail, it initially identified those motorists who were interested in adventure. Following that, a telemarketing, direct mail, and dealer contact campaign was launched, providing lengthier test drives without the dealer in attendance. The campaign created 10,000 test drives, of which 28% resulted in sales, and added 80,000 high-quality prospects to the database over the course of a year. According to business estimations, its expenditure of somewhat less than £1 million has led to an increase in revenues of £100 million.

It may be feasible to find new applications for certain items. As an example, consider the usage of condoms as a preventative measure against HIV/AIDS, which were widely abandoned in favor of the pill and IUD in the 1960s and 1970s. Flash was first advertised as a floor cleaner in home cleansers, but it is now being sold as an all-purpose cleaner for bathtubs and sinks.

Share Increase

Gaining market share often means undercutting the competitors, particularly in established markets. Gaining consumers from competitors, merging with (or purchasing) the competition, or forming strategic partnerships with rivals, suppliers, and/or distributors are the major ways to increase share. The corporation must provide superior customer service to rival businesses in order to win their business. This may be accomplished by identifying the vulnerabilities of rival companies or by more effectively using the company's own strengths and skills. Each of the marketing mix's components products, prices, promotions, and distribution could be utilized to provide the client with additional value or something more in order to persuade them to switch.

Increase in Profitability

Profitability may be raised with current or even lower levels of sales by increasing margins. Usually, this is accomplished by raising the price, cutting expenses, or doing both. It could also be achieved in the multi-product company by "weeding" the product line, getting rid of underperforming items, and focusing on the more profitable ones. However, before swinging the axe, it is important to thoroughly evaluate the positional consequences of this weeding. For instance, it could be necessary for the firm to maintain obviously unprofitable lines in order to continue operating in the market as a whole or in its own carefully selected market niches. They might be seen as the stakes in the strategic game needed to secure a spot in the contest. The company's competitive positioning is a declaration of its market objectives, or the markets in which it will compete, and its competitive advantage. The positioning is created to help accomplish the goals outlined in the core strategy. The competitive positioning will be a declaration of precisely how and where in the market that will be accomplished for a firm whose purpose is to increase market share and the general approach to that is to win rivals' consumers, for example.

Market objectives

Competitive positioning chooses those targets that are most suitable for using the company's strengths and minimizing vulnerability due to deficiencies, while the discussion of core strategy requires an examination of consumers and competitors to discover possible possibilities and threats. When selecting a market target, a variety of things should be taken into account. They may be divided broadly into two categories: determining the market's attractiveness and determining the company's present or future competitive advantages in that market. Numerous, often competing elements contribute to market attractiveness. However, if the following conditions are true, a market will often be more appealing: High contribution margins. Rivalry and competitive ferocity are moderate. Barriers for access and departure are both high. The market is not susceptible to unforeseen circumstances.

Markets with all of these characteristics don't last very long, if at all. They are virtually by definition destined to draw intense competition and thus lose some of their allure over time to new competitors. Small and/or stagnant markets, which do not draw more potent rivals, may be more enticing to small and/or medium-sized businesses. The corporation will be better equipped to maintain its position against competitive assault in a market where high entry barriers (such as proprietary technology, large switching costs, etc.) may be built.

All markets are somewhat susceptible to uncontrolled, external influences like overall economic circumstances, governmental regulations, or political upheaval. But certain markets are more exposed than others. This is particularly true when deciding between options for the global market. Through the Department of Trade and Industry's Export Credit Guarantee Department, UK businesses may evaluate their exposure to global political events. The department manages the official export credit guarantee organization for the UK and assists in setting up financing options and credit insurance. The program offers free counseling on the risks associated with joining a certain industry as well as insurance against payment failure. Recently, the program has supported annual export commerce worth over £2 billion.

When assessing market vulnerability domestically, the corporation must consider the influence of numerous pressure groups. It is important to take into account the company's current and projected strengths in relation to market demands and competition advantages. If all else is equal, the following holds (compared to the competition) will result in the company's current market strength being greater:

1. It has a substantial market share. It is expanding more quickly than the market.
2. It offers exceptional and valuable goods and services. Its items are of exceptional quality.
3. Better margins are present.
4. It has effective marketing resources.
5. It may improve marketing and manufacturing efficiency. Leadership in technology has been safeguarded.

Similar to determining market attractiveness, it is rare that any market will have a firm with all of the aforementioned positive traits. In any circumstance, managers will need to determine the relative significance of each strength when assessing total market strength. The firm develops its distinct advantage, or competitive edge, in serving the market after selecting the market target or targets based on the market's attractiveness and present or projected business strength in serving the market.

DISCUSSION

Differential advantage

Any of the company's strengths or distinctive skills in relation to the competition might be used to establish a differentiating advantage. The most important criteria to consider when deciding how to gain an edge are that it must be based on value to the consumer (for example, cheaper pricing, higher quality, and better service), and it should make use of a corporate capability that rivals would find challenging to imitate.

Cost management

The first kind of advantage is striving for industry cost leadership. The goal of this approach is for the firm to maintain items that are closely related to the offers of rivals while obtaining a cost structure that is much lower than that of the competition. Despite fierce competition, above-average profits are still feasible with a low-cost structure. The pursuit of cost reductions via experience effects, strict cost and overhead management, and cost minimization in R&D, services, salesforce, advertising, etc. are all methods for achieving cost leadership. Ryanair, a low-cost airline, and Seiko, a watchmaker, vigorously pursue the cost leadership strategy. To attain the aforementioned efficiencies, cost leaders often require large market shares and advantageous access to raw resources. If a company's strengths or unique skills, such as effective manufacturing processes or better production technology that enables less expensive production, were discovered, they may be efficiently translated into a competitive advantage via cost leadership. A similar asset might be turned into a competitive advantage if backward integration merger with or purchase of suppliers has guaranteed the availability of a comparatively cheaper supply of raw materials.

This tactic is especially effective in commodities markets because there is little to no distinction between the provided tangible goods. The strategy's primary drawback, however, is that it does not provide customers a reason to purchase the company's product in markets where goods are substantially distinct. Low costs might result in lower prices, but this would essentially be a strategy of differentiation (using price as the foundation for distinction) since it would be a differentiation strategy.

Differentiation

The second strategy for developing a competitive advantage is differentiation, or producing something that stands out from the competition. According to this approach, the company's capabilities and expertise are utilised to set its products apart from those of its rivals along specific consumer-valued characteristics.Differentiation may be accomplished in a number of ways, such as via design, style, attributes of a product or service, pricing, image, etc. In contrast to a cost leadership plan, a differentiation strategy has the significant benefit of creating or emphasizing a reason why the consumer should purchase from the firm as opposed to one of its rivals. Differentiation generates a market-based advantage for the organization, while cost leadership produces an advantage that is primarily financial in nature. Products and services that stand out in a valuable manner may fetch greater pricing and profit margins, avoiding the need to compete only on price. Designer jeans are an illustration of this in the market for blue jeans. The 'Levi' moniker sets Levi Strauss and Co.'s products apart from those of the rivals in the same market.

Uniqueness and Cost Leadership

There are associated hazards with each of the two fundamental strategies for developing a differentiated advantage. Cost leadership is also a risky strategy when there is a high level of differentiation between competitive offerings. This is because cost leadership may be impossible to sustain due to competitor imitation (using, for example, similar technology and processes), technological change that may make it less expensive for newer entrants to produce the goods or services, or alternatively competitors finding and utilizing alternative bases for cost leadership. Cost leadership does not provide reasons for purchase; differentiation does. Additionally, cost leadership often necessitates little investment in R&D, product enhancements, and brand building, all of which might make the product susceptible to competing, better goods. Different hazards might arise when using differentiation as a strategy. It is probable that rivals may copy distinctiveness if it is not built on unique marketing assets. This risk may be reduced by establishing difference based on capabilities or marketing resources that the firm alone has and that cannot be imitated by rivals.

Additionally, the foundation for distinction could lose its importance to consumers or gain importance from new grounds. Constant customer and competitor monitoring should be used to prevent these latter problems. Another risk associated with the differentiation approach is that it may be more expensive to differentiate than consumers value it to be. There is an additional risk that focusers or nichers in the market (competitors who concentrate their efforts on a selected segment) may achieve lower costs or more valuable differentiation in specific segments for both the cost leadership and differentiation approaches that seek to appeal to the industry as a whole. As a result, both fundamental techniques have a significant probability of failing in marketplaces where segmentation is prominent. The job of marketing management is to put those choices into practice via marketing effort after the fundamental strategy and the competitive positioning have been chosen. Next, we'll talk about the marketing mix, organization, and control, which are the three fundamental components of execution.

Advertising Mix

The corporation uses the marketing mix, which consists of goods, prices, promotions, and distribution, to transition its strategy from a declaration of purpose to an actual marketing activity. Each component of the mix should be planned to contribute to the necessary placement. In light of this, it is clear that choices about the mix's components, such as price or advertising campaigns, cannot be taken into account independently of the strategy being followed. Paying too little might ruin a premium positioning, such as separating the company's offers from the competitors in terms of good product quality. In a similar vein, for such a positioning to succeed, both the product's quality and the advertising utilized to advertise it must be met. The physical distribution systems utilized or constructed, together with the distribution routes chosen, must guarantee that the goods or services reach the intended clients.The positioning established will be unclear to clients if pieces of the mix do not work together harmoniously and instead conflict.

Organization

The efficiency with which the plan may be implemented will depend on how the marketing effort and the marketing department are set up. At the most fundamental level, it is crucial that the necessary labor and financial resources be made accessible. However, given the resources, their organizational structure may also have an impact on their capacity to carry out the plan successfully. Functional and product (brand) management are the two main organizational structures seen in marketing.

The marketing department of a functional organization is made up of experts in different marketing activities who report to a marketing coordinator (manager or director). Regular duties include market research, new product creation, advertising and promotions management, and sales management. Geographic organization is an extension of the functional design where managers are in charge of certain geographic markets within the functions (such as sales management). Functional designs promote a high degree of knowledge in each function while offering a simple framework. They often indicate the beginning of a company's adoption of a larger profile for the whole marketing department. They are especially useful in situations when the organization has a small number of sophisticated goods or services available on the market.

The US multinational Procter & Gamble invented product (or brand) management in 1927 for their struggling Camay soap brand. This system gives one product manager control over all of the product's marketing initiatives. The system's main benefit is that it unifies all of the marketing operations under one person, increasing the likelihood that they will all work toward the same goal in diverse businesses with a wide range of goods. Product managers in bigger companies have access to functional experts' skills as and when they are needed. Many companies have recently had to reevaluate the function of the product manager due to recent, significant changes in the marketing landscape. Consumers nowadays are more deal-prone than brand-prone due to the ever-growing number of brands they must choose from. As a consequence, businesses are relying more on price and other point-of-sale incentives and less on national advertising.

The traditional emphasis of brand managers has been on long-term, mass-market brand-building tactics, but current market conditions need shorter-term, local market-focused sales-building techniques. The expanding influence of retailers is a second important factor influencing brand management. In return for their limited shelf space, bigger, stronger, and more knowledgeable merchants are increasingly expecting and receiving more trade promotions. Less money is available for national advertising, the brand manager's main marketing strategy, as a result of the rise in trade promotion expenditure. Campbell Soups developed brand sales managers to address this trend. These combine product management and sales positions with responsibilities for managing brands in the field, collaborating with the trade, and developing more regionalized brand strategies. The managers are out in the field more, interacting with salespeople, seeing what goes on in the shops, and getting to know the customers better. Category management has been used by various businesses, such as Colgate-Palmolive, Procter & Gamble, Kraft, and Lever Brothers.

In this arrangement, category managers, who are in charge of a whole product line, report to brand managers. A manager who oversees Dawn, Ivory, Joy, and all other light-duty liquid detergents, for instance, reports to the brand manager for Dawn liquid dishwashing detergent at Procter & Gamble. The manager of light-duty liquids in turn answers to a manager who is in charge of all packaged soaps and detergents made by Procter & Gamble, including dishwasher detergents, liquid and dry laundry detergents, and liquid laundry detergents. This has a lot of benefits. First, compared to brand managers, category managers have larger planning horizons. They influence the company's whole category offering rather than concentrating on certain brands. Second, it more closely resembles how sellers make purchases. Retailers have recently started assigning individual buyers the task of coordinating with all suppliers for a certain product category. This new retailer's "category buying" method integrates better with a category management system.

Category management has begun to be combined by certain businesses, including Nabisco, with another concept called brand teams or category teams. Instead of having several brand managers, Nabisco has three teams that handle biscuits: one for adult wealthy, one for children's biscuits, and one for nutritious biscuits. Each category team is led by a category manager and consists of a number of brand managers, marketing personnel, a sales planning manager, and a marketing information expert who manages brand strategy, advertising, and sales promotion. A finance manager, an R&D expert, as well as members of the production, engineering, and distribution divisions are also members of each team. Therefore, category managers operate like small businesses, taking full responsibility for the category's success and having a full complement of personnel to assist them in developing and putting into action category marketing plans.

A market management organization may be the ideal option for businesses that offer one product line to a variety of markets with various demands and preferences. Numerous businesses are structured along market lines. An organization that manages markets is comparable to one that manages products. Market managers are in charge of creating yearly and long-term goals for the sales and earnings in their respective markets. The primary benefit of this method is that the business is structured around the requirements of certain client groups. Elida-Gibbs, a part of Unilever that manufactures personal care products, eliminated the positions of brand manager and sales development in 1992. They possessed a number of powerful brands, including as Pears, Fabergé Brut, Signal, and Timotei, but they wished to enhance their service to merchants and give the brands greater focus. They developed the positions of brand development managers and customer development managers to accomplish this.

In addition to working directly with customers, customer development managers now handle many of the former duties of brand management. This offers a chance for better coordinating operations, marketing, and sales efforts. Managers of brand development now have more time to focus on the innovative and strategic development of brands. They are able to assemble management and technical resources to see projects through to completion. The restructuring of Elida-Gibbs extends beyond sales and marketing. The strategy places a strong emphasis on cross-functional collaboration, which also applies to the factory floor. The shift is already paying off for the company. Customer development managers have boosted the proportion of orders that are successfully fulfilled from 72% to 90%. Additionally, brand development managers created Aquatonic (an aerosol deodorant) in only six months, which is much shorter time than is typical.

Organizational alternatives focusing on crucial value generation and delivery processes rather than conventional structures and procedures are also receiving more attention. In order to manage with fast changing markets, new Internet-based competitors, and tactics that rely on partnerships and collaborating, traditional organizational systems are sometimes perceived as being excessively sluggish, unresponsive, and burdensome. One such strategy is venture marketing organizations. This strategy enabled Starbucks to accelerate the development of its Frappucino from a line manager's concept to a full-scale national launch in less than a year. Frappucino contributed 11% of Starbucks' US sales in its first year. In general, there is demand to integrate firm resources more effectively around value creation, sometimes in spite of conventional organizational structures. Individuals with the abilities required to carry out the different marketing responsibilities are required, regardless of the structure or organization the firm chooses. Personnel might come from either inside the organization or from outside sources. Bringing in outside expertise may be a faster route to building the necessary knowledge internally when entering new markets. Through internal firm training programs or external training organizations, skills may be enhanced and expanded.

Control

The marketing department's main responsibility is to oversee and manage the execution of the marketing plan. There are two basic approaches to measure performance: based on market performance and based on financial performance. Sales, market share, consumer attitudes, and loyalty are all indicators of market success, and changes in them over time may be traced back to the strategy's initial goals. However, in order to make sure that the pursuit of those goals has not obscured their broader implications, performance measurements should also take into account variables other than those used to create the goals. The monitoring of product contribution in relation to the resources used to produce it serves as a proxy for financial success. There may sometimes be a fundamental mismatch between marketing and financial performance. Short-term financial performance may suffer when long-term market dominance is the marketing goal. Long-term marketing goals may be neglected in favor of short-term profit when managers are promoted or paid more on the basis of short-term financial success. Japanese companies were found to be more willing to take a longer perspective of market performance than many UK companies to seek short-term profit orientation, according to a comparison of their tactics in a variety of UK markets with those of their UK rivals. As a more effective means of connecting marketing operations and financial returns to the firm, "marketing metrics" have received a lot of attention recently. Ambler lists the major marketing KPIs that businesses use:

1. Relative impression of quality
2. Loyalty/retention
3. Overall number of clients

4. Customer contentment
5. Relative cost (volume/market share)
6. (Value or Volume) market share
7. Recognized excellence or regard
8. Complaints (degree of unhappiness)
9. Awareness
10. Distribution/availability

According to Ambler, in order to connect marketing to company success, such measurements must be given to senior management on a regular basis, compared to projections and rivals, with the drivers of consumer behavior being understood and tracked. Contingency planning, or how you would respond to the question: "Contingency planning requires a degree of forecasting competitive reaction to the plans developed should they be implemented and then estimation of the likely competitive moves," is a last crucial component of execution. Scenario planning is the process of predicting a variety of potential scenarios and developing preparations to handle each one, should it come to pass. Choosing the fundamental strategy, developing the company's and its offers' competitive positioning, and putting that strategy into practice are all parts of strategic marketing planning.

Apple enthusiasts packed the Moscone Convention Center in San Francisco to listen to Steve Jobs deliver his yearly MacWorld keynote talk with high hopes. Their reaction indicated that their expectations had been more than satisfied. The long-awaited release of the iPhone, Apple's debut into the mobile phone industry, was met with thunderous applause from the company's ardent supporters as well as occasional whoops of glee. Apple tried a repeat performance in the market for mobile phones with the iPhone, a compact, stylish device that depends on an avant-garde touch-screen interface, six years after the firm revolutionized the market for digital music players with the launch of the iPod. Van Baker, a Gartner researcher who seen the iPhone firsthand at an Apple investor briefing, declares, "This thing is amazing." Apple is by no means the first business to attempt to dominate the so-called smartphone industry; in fact, I don't think I've seen them hit a bigger home run yet. Since years, Microsoft, Apple's main competitor, has spoken about creating such devices, but its mobile windows initiative has stalled, in part because mobile carriers were suspicious of Microsoft and refused to work with it. Only 6 million smart phones were sold in the US last year, while more than 1 billion mobile devices were sold globally.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, Businesses that want to develop sustainably and succeed in the market must analyze the markets they service. Companies may successfully address client demands by optimizing their marketing initiatives and taking into account customer preferences, market trends, and competitive landscapes. In a business environment that is continually changing, firms may remain inventive, flexible, and customer-focused by embracing the ideas of market analysis. Market analysis and business strategy work together to create a vibrant, customer-driven market that is advantageous to both consumers and enterprises. For one to stay relevant and competitive, one must keep up with changing market trends and conditions. Businesses may proactively take on obstacles and take advantage of opportunities by continuously monitoring market conditions. Additionally, market research helps businesses find untapped market possibilities, create novel goods, and acquire a competitive edge.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. U. Rehman and M. Anwar, “Mediating role of enterprise risk management practices between business strategy and SME performance,” *Small Enterp. Res.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/13215906.2019.1624385.

[2] A. M. Serrano, S. C. Tiuzo, and M. S. Martínez, "Business strategies for a vulnerable population in Colombia," *Inf. Tecnol.*, 2019, doi: 10.4067/S0718-07642019000600147.

[3] J. Ukko, M. Nasiri, M. Saunila, and T. Rantala, "Sustainability strategy as a moderator in the relationship between digital business strategy and financial performance," *J. Clean. Prod.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2019.117626.

[4] P. Wadström, "Aligning corporate and business strategy: managing the balance," *J. Bus. Strategy*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/JBS-06-2018-0099.

[5] M. Vahdani, R. Rashedi, and J. M. Mehr, "Investigating the effect of business strategy and internal control on audit quality," *Humanit. Soc. Sci. Rev.*, 2019, doi: 10.18510/hssr.2019.76119.

[6] H. D. Yi, S. Park, and J. Kim, "The effects of business strategy and inventory on the relationship between sales manipulation and future profitability," *Sustain.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/su11082377.

[7] P. Seifzadeh and W. G. Rowe, "The role of corporate controls and business-level strategy in business unit performance," *J. Strateg. Manag.*, 2019, doi: 10.1108/JSMA-10-2018-0114.

[8] D. Mishra, R. R. K. Sharma, A. Gunasekaran, T. Papadopoulos, and R. Dubey, "Role of decoupling point in examining manufacturing flexibility: an empirical study for different business strategies," *Total Qual. Manag. Bus. Excell.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/14783363.2017.1359527.

[9] I. Zaki, I. Mawardi, T. Widiastuti, A. Hendratmi, and D. F. Anova, "Business network strategy in islamic micro finance institution of islamic boarding school," *Humanit. Soc. Sci. Rev.*, 2019, doi: 10.18510/hssr.2019.7435.

[10] N. Z. M. Sari, A. Susanto, N. N. Afiah, M. Sueb, and H. Suharman, "Supply chain quality accounting information systems with business strategy effective in BUMN Bandung Indonesia," *Int. J. Supply Chain Manag.*, 2019.